

# Contents

- 1 Trip Preparation**
  - 1 Trip Plan
  - 2 Vehicle Presets
- 2 Approaching**
  - 3 Confirm Location
- 3 Unlock**
  - 4 Vehicle Unlock
  - 17 Welcome
- 4 Cargo Loading**
  - 19 Opening the tailgate hands-free
  - 22 Easy cargo loading
  - 33 Convenient ways to Close Tailgate
  - 35 Opening Tailgate when sitting in the car
- 5 Get In**
  - 36 Open Door
  - 42 Courtesy Lighting
  - 47 To Be Seated
- 6 Travel with a Partner**
  - 54 Driver Seated
  - 65 Passenger seated
  - 69 Digital Control
- 7 Travel with Children**
  - 102 Child Safety
- 8 Family Travel**
  - 115 Vehicle Passive Safety
  - 124 Rear Passengers Seated
  - 131 Digital Control
- 9 Driving**
  - 134 Driving out of the garage
  - 144 Driving on Motorways
  - 246 Driving on a slow speed section
  - 249 Driving into the garage
- 10 Parking**
  - 252 Navigating to Destination
  - 264 Parking Setting
- 11 Getting Off**
  - 281 Getting ready to get off
  - 283 After getting off
- 12 Lock**
  - 285 Lock Vehicle
  - 292 Side Mirror Folding
- 13 Leave Vehicle**
  - 294 Charging
  - 304 Leave Vehicle
- 14 Maintenance and Cleaning**
  - 305 Vehicle Maintenance
  - 310 Wiper Blade Replacement
  - 312 Add Fluid
  - 317 Tire Maintenance
  - 320 Brake Pad and Disc Maintenance
  - 321 Air Filter Maintenance
  - 322 Battery Maintenance
  - 325 Fuse Replacement
  - 338 Vehicle Cleaning and Maintaining
- 15 Emergency Rescue**
  - 344 ES8 Information
  - 354 ES8 Technical Parameters
  - 359 Tire Information
  - 365 Emergency Measures
  - 379 Roadside Assistance
  - 391 Accident Rescue





## Trip Plan

### Before Driving

Before driving, you should:

- Check tires
- Check lights
- Ensure that your surroundings is free of obstacles
- Ensure that there is no liquid under the vehicle
- Ensure that there are no warnings or alerts

### Group Travel

You can quickly team up with your travel buddies via the mobile app and the vehicle system to share your real-time locations and start a voice chat during the trip to add to the fun.

- You can also create a travel team on the mobile app to share it with your friends and sync it to your vehicle.
- Or you can create a travel team in the vehicle system and invite travel buddies directly.

In the team, the team lead can set the voice chat mode to "Talkback" or "Chat".

- In the Talkback mode, a team member can speak once they get the chance.
- In the Chat mode, a team member can tap the key to record a voice message and tap a message to listen to the voice message.

You can check the trip summary after the trip is over. The team is automatically exited when the vehicle is put in the "PARK" gear.

## Vehicle Presets

### Remote Settings

You can remotely control and set certain features on NIO app before getting in the vehicle (update the NIO app to the latest version to access the most complete features).

Open **My Car** on the NIO app to access the following features:

- Navigation
- Car locating (Find My Car)
- Climate control
- Doors
- Windows
- Trunk
- High voltage battery pre-conditioning
- Seat heating
- Seat ventilation
- Steering wheel heating

### Caution

This operation is only available when no occupant is in the vehicle and the high voltage battery is no lower than 10%.

## Confirm Location

### Finding My Car in the Distance

After completing the trip preparations, you or an authorized user can conveniently view the vehicle's location on the NIO app.

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, you can view its location in the top-left corner of **My Car** on the NIO app. Click on this information to view the vehicle's location on the map.

### Caution

To use vehicle positioning and network services (such as the remote control features via the NIO app, battery swap, and NFC), enter the settings page from the left side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and select **Connect** to enable vehicle positioning and network services.

### Finding My Car in Close Proximity

When the vehicle is not being driven and the authenticated key fob is within 10 meters to the vehicle, press and hold the car locating button on the smart key fob for more than three seconds (or double-click the button within three seconds). The vehicle's horn will honk and the turn signals will flash to indicate the vehicle's exact location. Press the button again after five seconds to clear the location prompt. Otherwise, the location prompt will turn off automatically after 10 seconds.



When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, you can also locate it using **Find My Car** under **My Car** on the NIO app. The vehicle's horn will honk and the turn signals will flash to indicate its location. Press the car locating button on the smart key fob to clear the location prompt.

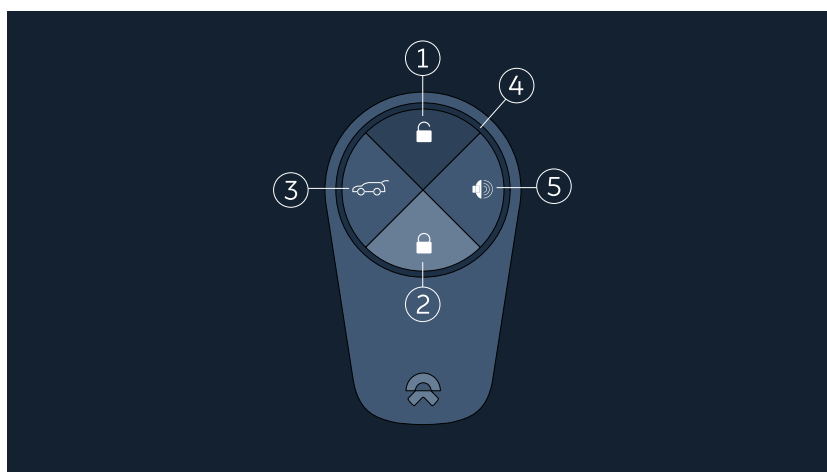
## Vehicle Unlock

### Unlocking From the Outside

#### **Smart Key Fob**

Before entering the vehicle, you need to unlock it with the smart key fob. When the battery indicator on the smart key fob is blue or green (the battery level is over 20%), the effective range of the key fob is 10 meters from the vehicle.

The smart key fob has the following buttons:



#### 1. Unlock

When the vehicle is in PARK, press the button to unlock the vehicle. If successful, the turn signals will flash three times and the exterior door handles will extend automatically.

When all four doors are unlocked with the smart key fob, the liftgate can be opened from the outside without a key.

To open all windows, sunroof and sunshade, press the button once. Then, within three seconds press and hold the button (for 1.5 seconds). The windows, sunroof and sunshade will stop moving after you release the button.

You can set the unlock mode for your key fob on the center display. Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Doors > Windows > Unlock with Key Fob**. Choose “All” to unlock all doors at once by pressing the key fob; choose “Driver” to unlock the driver’s door first by pressing the key fob once, and then the remaining three doors by pressing the key fob again.

#### 2. Lock

When the vehicle is in PARK and all doors (including the hood and the liftgate) are closed, short press the button to lock the vehicle. If successful, the turn signals will flash once and the vehicle's horn will honk once. After this, the

exterior door handles will retract and the side mirrors will fold automatically (to turn on the side mirror auto-fold, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Driving > Side Mirrors > Auto Fold On Lock** ).

After locking, the liftgate can only be opened from the outside using the smart key fob.

To enable/disable the lock confirmation sound, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch Sound > Ringer & Alerts > Lock Sound.

To close all windows, sunroof and sunshade, press the button once. Then, within three seconds press and hold the button (for 1.5 seconds). The windows, sunroof and sunshade will stop moving after you release the button.

### 3. Liftgate

To open the liftgate, press the liftgate button once. Then, within three seconds press and hold the button (for 1.5 seconds); to close the liftgate, repeat the above operations.

### 4. Smart key fob battery indicator

The smart key fob indicator uses different colors to display the battery level. Blue: over 70%; green: 20~70%; red: below 20%.

### 5. Car locating

When the vehicle is not being driven and the authenticated key fob is within 10 meters of the vehicle, press and hold the car locating button for more than three seconds (or double-click the button within three seconds). The vehicle's horn will honk and the turn signals will flash to indicate the vehicle's location. Press the button again after five seconds to clear the location prompt. Otherwise, the location prompt will turn off automatically after 10 seconds.

## Warning

When leaving a person or a pet in the vehicle, you must ensure that you have your smart key fob with you. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.

## Caution

- The smart key fob is an electronic component. Protect it from impact, high temperatures, strong vibration and damage from liquids. Do not disassemble the smart key fob.
- If you leave an authenticated key fob in the vehicle and lock the vehicle with another authenticated key fob, the mobile app or an NFC key, the key fob left in the vehicle will become invalid. To reactivate the key fob in the vehicle, use an authenticated key fob or mobile app to unlock the vehicle.

- If any door or the liftgate is not opened within 30 seconds after unlocking, all of the doors and the liftgate will lock automatically.
- If the key fob is lost or damaged, please contact NIO immediately and take all of your keys to NIO for de-authentication and re-authentication, or apply for new key fobs.
- If the smart key fob is not used for a long period of time, please charge it once in a while (ideally every two months) to maintain its optimal performance.

### Note

To prevent kids from mistakenly locking or unlocking the vehicle, if the lock or unlock button on the smart key fob is pressed nine times in 10 seconds, the smart key fob will only be able to unlock the vehicle once for a period of 15 seconds, and will not be able to lock the vehicle.

### ***Linking an Account to the Smart Key Fob***

When the vehicle is activated and verified for the first time, the owner's account is linked to the key fob by default. When the vehicle is unlocked with one of the key fobs, the vehicle logs into the owner's account automatically.

Owner can also link an authorized user account to a smart key fob by managing the key fob in the NIO app. When an authorized user unlocks the vehicle using a key fob, the vehicle will log into the linked user's account automatically. You can view and delete accounts linked to the key fobs on the NIO app. After linking or unlinking a account successfully, the vehicle owner and the account owner will receive a message and an app notification.

### Note

- Only the vehicle's owner can manage key fobs linked to the owner's account. Other users must be authorized by the vehicle owner before linking the corresponding account to the key fob.
- If the vehicle's owner terminates the authorization, the user account will be unlinked from the smart key fob automatically.
- Guest Mode only applies to the smart key fobs linked with the owner's account. If you unlock the vehicle using a key fob linked with an authorized user account, the vehicle will automatically load the information of the authorized user.

## ***Charging the Smart Key Fob***

The smart key fob uses a ring indicator to display its battery level. When the battery level is low (indicated by a red light), you can charge the key fob using the wireless charging pad in the vehicle or an equivalent device at home.



To view the charging status, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, touch **Connect > Wireless Charging**, and turn on the feature.

The wireless charging pad in the vehicle cannot be used when:

1. A vehicle software update is in progress.
2. The Anti-Theft Alarm System is active (which means the vehicle is locked from outside).
3. A charging fault occurs or the charging voltage is too low.

### **Caution**

When the key fob battery is low, its remote unlock feature may be affected. In this case, you can try to unlock the vehicle from a shorter distance. If it still doesn't work, please use other methods (e.g. the mobile app or emergency key) to unlock the vehicle.

### **Caution**

Radio waves may affect the performance of the key fob. Keep other electronic devices (e.g. phones, laptops and tablets) at least 30 cm away from the key fob.

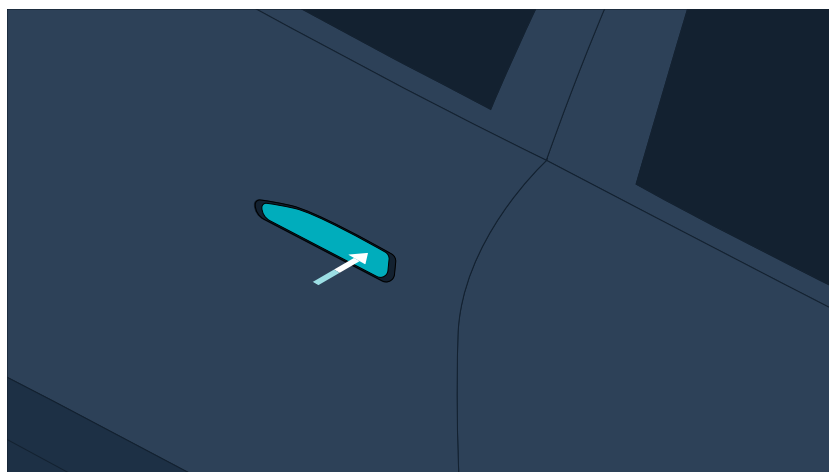
### **Note**

- When wireless charging is enabled, any metal object (such as a metal key or coin) placed on the wireless charging pad may affect its charging efficiency or even lead to a burn.

- It is normal for the key fob or phone to become hot after being charged for a long period of time. Do not place a fully charged device on the charging pad. Doing so can cause overheating.
- Do not charge two or more devices wirelessly at the same time.

## Keyless Unlocking

When you carry an authenticated smart key fob (in your pocket or bag), you can unlock the vehicle by pressing the rear end of any exterior door handle.



### Note

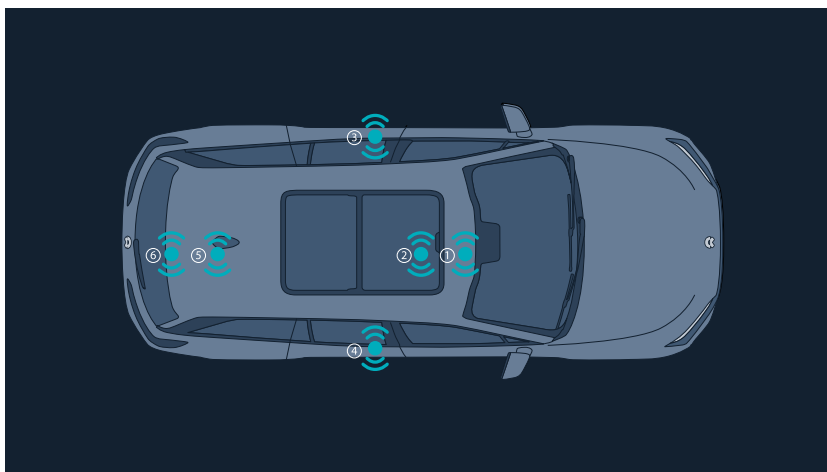
To unlock the vehicle without using a key, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK and that all doors, hood and liftgate are closed.

### Warning

Patients who are dependent on pacemakers should stay at least 22 centimeters away from the interior antennas, to avoid their cardiac pacemakers from being interfered by the keyless unlocking system's antenna.

Locations of the interior antennas are as follows:





1. Under the center armrest cup holder
2. Behind the safe box
3. Under the left floor
4. Under the right floor
5. At the rear
6. Under the trunk

### **Walk-Up Unlocking**

The vehicle automatically unlocks when you are within 1.4 meters of the B pillar and carrying an authenticated key fob.

To enable/disable Walk-Up Unlocking, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Doors and Windows > Walk-Up Unlocking**.

### **Unlocking With the NIO App**

You can remotely unlock the doors when you are still away from the vehicle by tapping **Doors** in **My Car** on the NIO app.

To unlock the doors on the NIO app, ensure that the following conditions are met:

1. The user must be the vehicle's owner or a user authorized by the owner.
2. The vehicle is in PARK and all doors are closed.
3. The vehicle is connected to the Internet.

**Note**

If you or an authorized user cannot unlock the vehicle using the NIO app, please contact NIO for assistance.

**Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth**

The Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature enables you to easily and quickly unlock/lock the vehicle without a smart key fob.

First, open the NIO app. Tap **My Vehicle > Settings > Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth** to create an Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service. Then enable this service and Bluetooth on your phone, and keep your phone close to an unlocked vehicle to pair the vehicle with your phone and activate this service. After successful activation, the top of the My Vehicle page will show that your phone has been connected to the vehicle via the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature, and then you can use the feature to replace the smart key fob for unlocking and locking your vehicle. Then your phone will be automatically connected to your vehicle when approaching. You can also go to the Key Management page to manage the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service or delete it as needed.

If the vehicle is in PARK, when you approach it (about 30-70 meters) with your phone's Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth enabled, you can perform the following operations:

- Tap the Unlock/Lock button on the My Vehicle page of the NIO app to unlock/lock the vehicle, with the door handles extending automatically.
- After unlocking your vehicle successfully with the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature, you just need to get seated and close the driver's door and then press the brake pedal to start the vehicle.
- You can press the trunk switch or go to the My Vehicle page of the NIO app to open/close the truck.

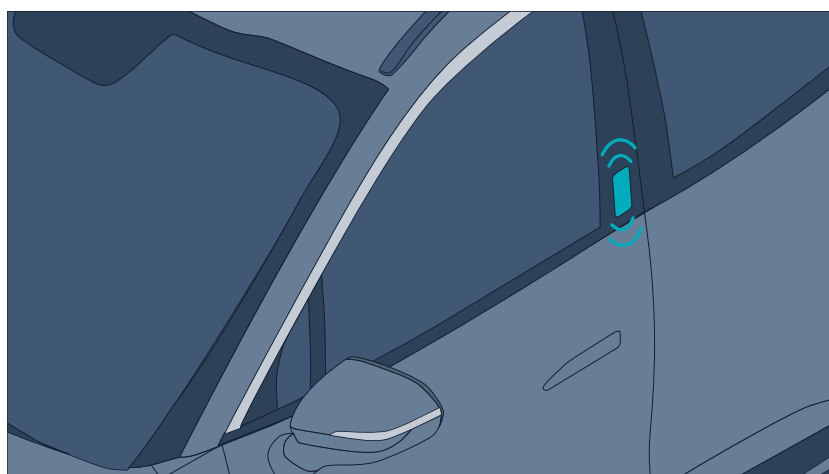
**Caution**

- If you fail to lock or unlock the vehicle via Bluetooth due to a Bluetooth connection error, fix the error and try again.
- If the Bluetooth connection between your phone and the vehicle fails when you try to start the vehicle by using the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature, please reconnect via Bluetooth and try again.

- The Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth feature is only available for a paired phone. If you use a new phone, create a new Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service, and the service on the previous phone will be disabled automatically. To log in to the account, you need to reactivate the Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service.
- Both the vehicle owner and authorized users can create a Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth service, but the number of Unlocking and Starting via Bluetooth services that can be paired with the vehicle is limited.

## Unlocking With NFC

You or an authorized user can unlock the vehicle using or NFC card. In this case, the liftgate can be opened from the outside.



Place the NFC card close to the NFC detection zone on the driver's side B pillar and hold it for 10 seconds to unlock the vehicle automatically. If successful, the door handles will extend automatically.

### Caution

- The NFC's detection range is less than 10 millimeters. It is recommended to place your mobile phone or NFC card near the NFC detection area for a short period of time to unlock the vehicle.
- After unlocking the vehicle via NFC, you can still lock it using other methods (e.g. your smart key fob or emergency key). We recommend carrying your smart key fob with you.
- Please keep your NFC card safe. Protect it from impact, bending, high temperatures, strong vibration and damage from liquids.

- You cannot use the NFC feature during vehicle updates. Please carry the smart key fob with you to unlock the vehicle.

## Unlocking From the Inside

### **Central Lock**

You can lock or unlock the vehicle by pressing the central lock button.



When the vehicle is unlocked and all doors are closed, you can lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central lock. After locking, a **Vehicle Locked** icon appear on the center display and the button LED light turns green.

When the vehicle is locked from the inside or only the driver's door is unlocked, you can unlock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central lock. After unlocking, a **Vehicle Unlocked** icon appears on the center display and the button LED light turns off.

### **Auto Unlock in PARK**

The vehicle automatically unlocks in PARK.

If the vehicle is locked automatically while driving (at a speed over 15 km/h), the vehicle will unlock the doors automatically when you stop the vehicle by pressing the brake pedal and shifting into PARK. After unlocking, the liftgate can be opened from the outside without a key.

To set which door(s) can be automatically unlocked in PARK, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Doors and Windows > Auto Unlock in PARK**.

- Choose **All** to allow all doors to unlock automatically in PARK. In this setting, the liftgate can be opened from the outside.

- Choose **Driver** to allow only the driver's door to unlock automatically in PARK.
- Choose **Off** to turn off the feature.

## **Authorized Unlocking**

If you want to lend your vehicle to others, you can authorize users registered on the NIO app. An authorized user can access authorized features by using their NFC key or verified NIO app.

### ***Owner Authorization***

To manage authorization, go to the settings page on the NIO app

You can authorize a user and set authorization by entering his/her user name on the NIO app. Up to nine users can be authorized. After setting the user's authorization, tap the profile photo or user name to view the user's information and authorization details (e.g. media, video, safe box). If the current authorization is active, you can also edit the scope of authorized access or disable the user's authorization. An authorized user can only access authorized features, and cannot manage authorization or set Guest Mode.

If you unlock the vehicle using your smart key fob, the vehicle will automatically log into the owner's account.

### **Note**

For safety reasons, if you cancel authorization when an authorized user is driving the vehicle, it won't take effect until the authorized user stops and locks the vehicle.

### **Note**

If the authorized user has a NIO account, the authorization will take effect immediately after it is completed. If the authorized user doesn't have a NIO account, the authorization will become effective only after the user registers a NIO account.

### ***Unlocking by An Authorized User***

An authorized user can unlock the vehicle using their NFC key or remote control on the NIO app.

- NFC unlocking: Open the NFC app on your phone and place it close to the B pillar on the driver's side.

- NIO app remote unlocking: Choose **My Car > Doors** on the NIO app.

## **Guest Mode**

If you want to lend the vehicle to others by giving them a smart key fob, tap your profile photo on the center display and choose Guest Mode to protect your privacy (e.g. navigation history, contacts, videos, photos). Only default features such as climate controls, weather and navigation (with no access to History or Favorites) are available to guests.

If Guest Mode is set, the vehicle will automatically switch to Guest Mode when it is unlocked with a smart key fob. To exit Guest Mode, you need to enter your vehicle gesture password.

### **Caution**

1. You can only set Guest Mode when the vehicle is not being driven.
2. If a smart key fob is linked to the owner's account and your vehicle is not in Guest Mode, the vehicle will automatically log into the owner's account when a user unlocks the vehicle using a smart key fob.

## **Service Authorization**

You or an authorized user can send a service request to NIO on the NIO app. NIO manages and authorizes service specialists to temporarily access the vehicle and conduct the requested service (e.g. One Click for Power). NIO retrieves the authorization after the service is completed.

After obtaining authorization, service specialists can unlock the vehicle using an NFC key within a specified time frame and use authorized features. The center display shows the account information of the authorized service specialist and the authorized features available to them. Authorized service specialists cannot manage authorization, set Guest Mode, link the vehicle to a key fob, or switch accounts.

### **Caution**

After the service is completed, all doors and the liftgate should be locked. If a door or the liftgate is not locked, you will be notified on the NIO app.

## Emergency Unlocking

### *Unlocking From the Outside*

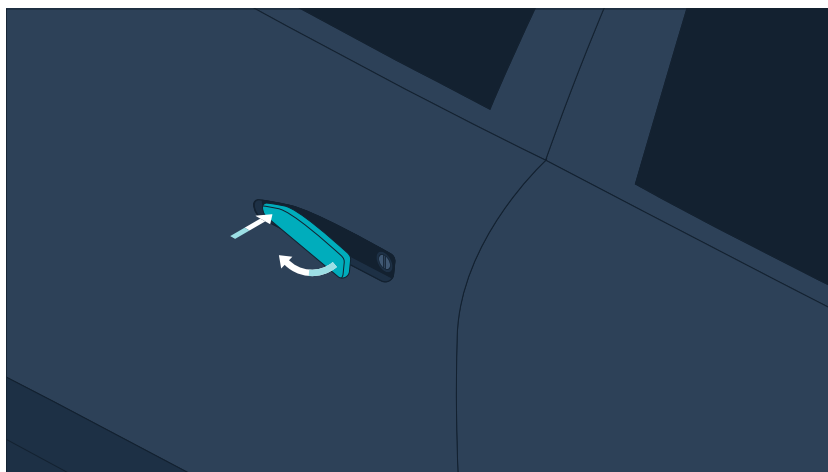
When you are unable to unlock the vehicle from the outside with one of the aforementioned methods, you can use the emergency key to unlock the driver's door. All other doors will be unlocked at the same time.

### Caution

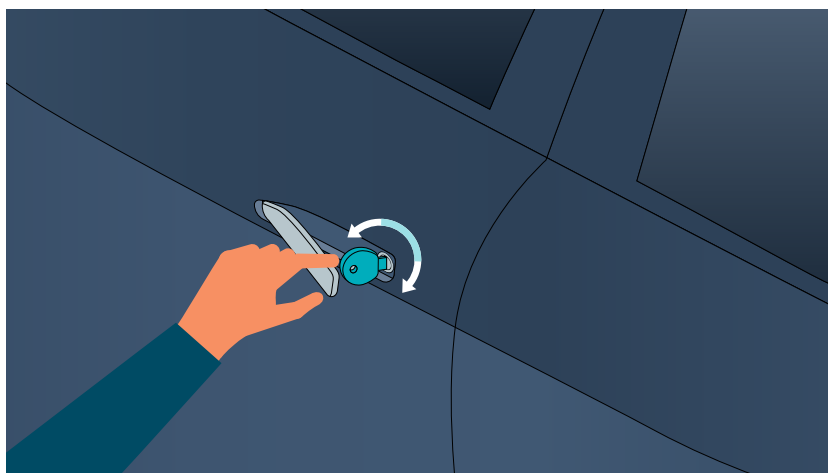
Do not leave the emergency key in your vehicle. Please keep it safe in case of emergency.

To use the emergency key:

1. Push the front end of the exterior handle on the driver's door.



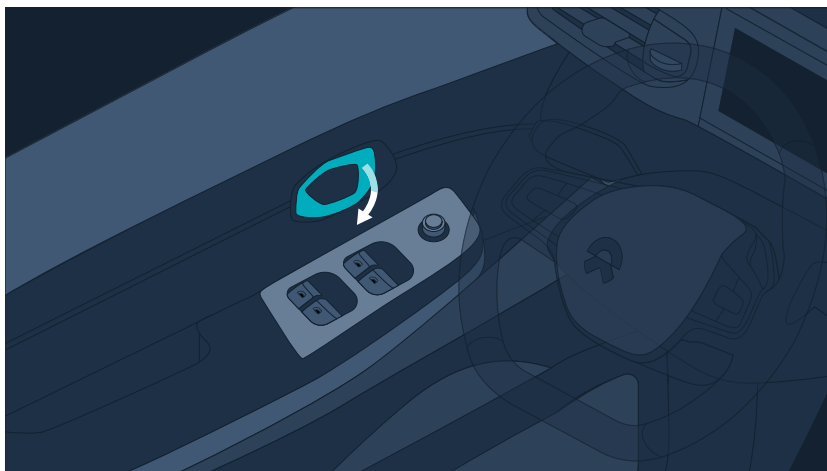
2. Pull the door handle and insert the emergency key into the lock. Rotate the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



3. To lock the driver's door, rotate the key counterclockwise.

### ***Unlocking from the Inside***

In case of emergency, you can pull the interior door handle twice to open the corresponding door if the central lock is engaged.



### **Caution**

- If the low voltage battery is drained, you can only unlock the driver's door using the emergency key. Other doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the corresponding interior door handle twice.
- When Child Lock is on, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside and can only be opened from the outside when the vehicle is unlocked.



## Welcome

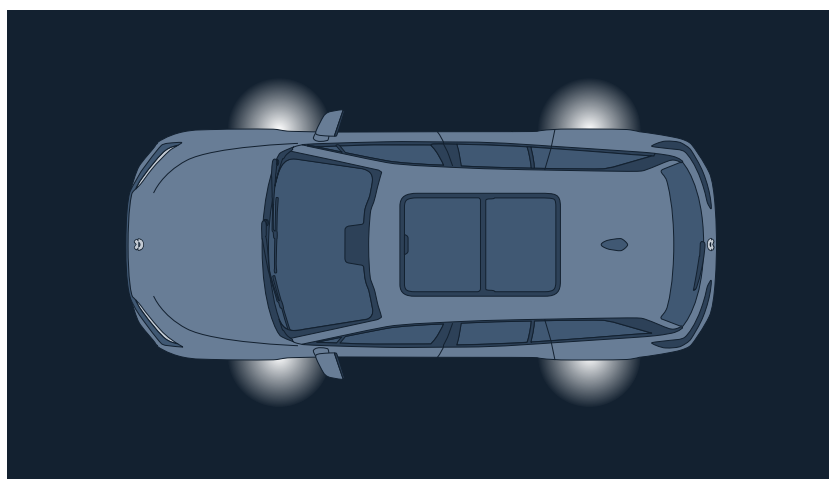
### Headlights

After locating your vehicle, the headlights will automatically light up to illuminate objects and the road in the front when you approach it.

Headlights switch to auto mode every time you start a new trip. If you unlock the vehicle or come within 5.5 meters of it while carrying an authenticated key fob, the vehicle will turn on the position lights in bright environments, or the low beams and position lights in dark environments. The headlights will turn off automatically when you open any door, or after 30 seconds.

### Smart Wheel Arch Lights

When the vehicle is unlocked, the wheel arch lights turn on automatically. The white breathing lights illuminate the environment around the wheels.



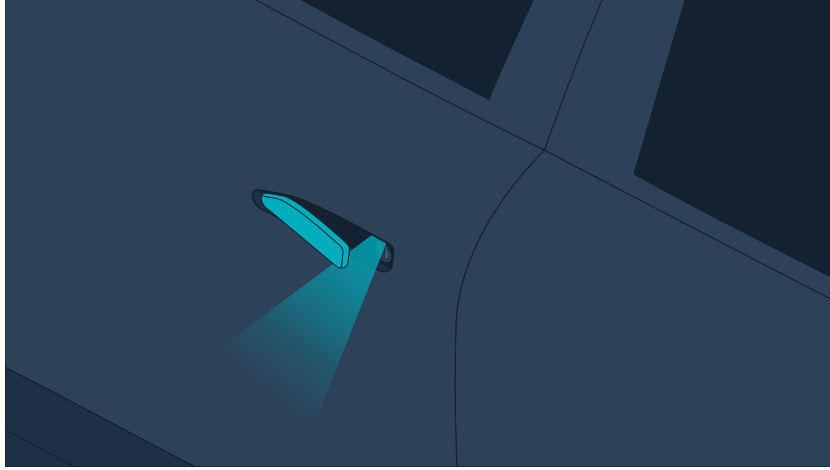
To turn on/off the wheel arch lights, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Wheel Arch Lights**.

The wheel arch lights also function as:

- Software update indicators  
The blue breathing lights indicate that an update is in progress.
- Follow Me Home Lighting  
When the Follow Me Home feature is on, the white breathing lights also light up.

## Exterior Door Handle Lights

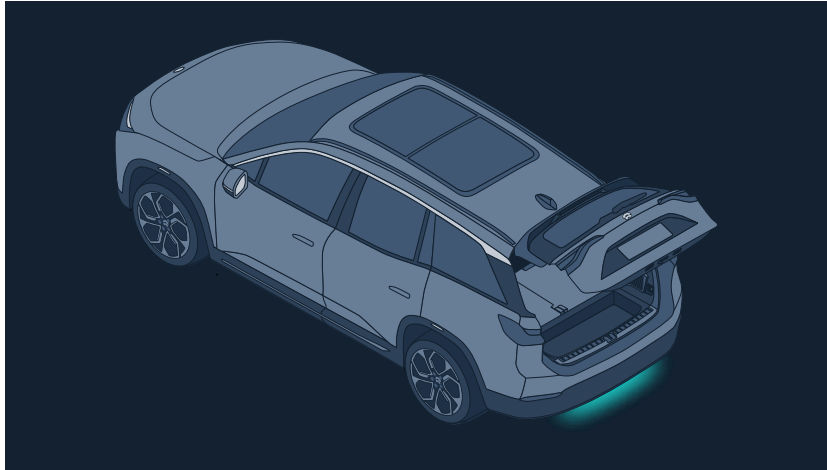
Each exterior door handle is equipped with a light. When the vehicle is unlocked, the door handles automatically extend and the lights turn on to illuminate the surrounding environment.



## Opening the tailgate hands-free

### Opening the Liftgate Hands-Free

When your hands are occupied, or it's inconvenient to use a key fob, the kick-activated liftgate can assist you.



To open the liftgate with a kicking motion, stand within a range of 1.5 meters behind the rear bumper and quickly move your foot back and forth (at least 10 centimeters) one time under the center of the rear bumper.

You must carry a key fob to use this feature.

#### Note

- Do not sweep your foot from side to side.
- Do not keep your foot under the bumper. Otherwise, the liftgate will not open.
- Do not touch the liftgate before it stops moving.

The feature may be temporarily disabled for reasons including but not limited to:

- The liftgate is frequently opened or closed
- The foot is not taken back in time
- The kicking motion is not in the effective detection range

If the liftgate is unresponsive, you can try again after several seconds, or use another approach to open or close the liftgate.

#### Caution

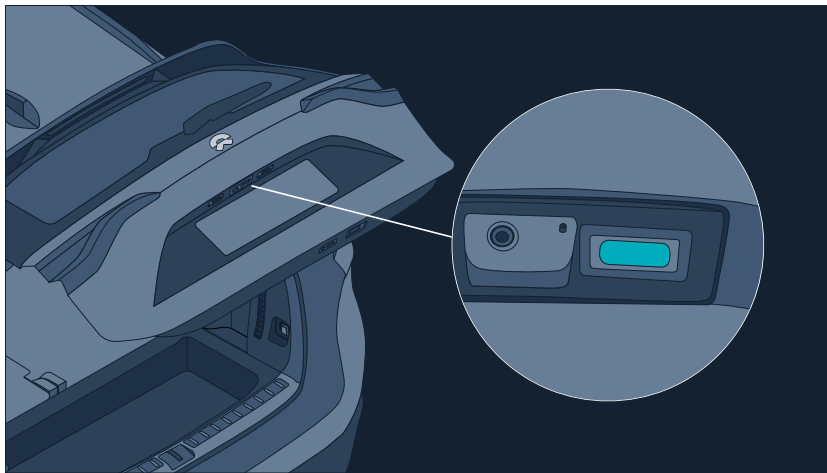
- Ensure that the vehicle is stationary.

- Ensure that the range of the kicking motion is less than 0.5 meters from the center of the rear bumper.

### Warning

- Do not drive the vehicle when the liftgate is open.
- To reduce the risk of being pinched, ensure that no one is near the liftgate operating area when opening or closing the liftgate.

### Liftgate Button



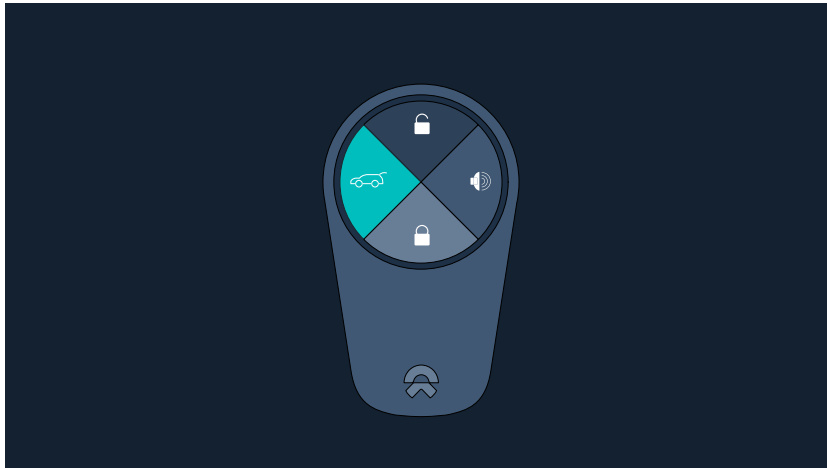
When you are carrying a smart key fob, you can open the liftgate by gently pressing the button on the liftgate handle.


While the liftgate is opening, press and hold the button to automatically save the current liftgate height.

### Caution

Before opening the liftgate, ensure that it is clear of objects such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the liftgate may suddenly close on its own.

## Opening the Liftgate With a Smart Key Fob



To open the liftgate using a smart key fob, short press the liftgate button once. Then, within three seconds long press the button  on the left side of the smart key fob for 1.5 seconds.

### Caution

Before opening the liftgate, ensure that it is clear of objects such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the liftgate may suddenly close on its own.

## Opening the Liftgate With NFC

You or an authorized user can unlock the vehicle using an NFC-enabled phone without having to carry a key fob. In this case, the liftgate can be opened from the outside.

First, unlock the vehicle with the NFC key. Then, tap and hold the liftgate icon on the center display, or press and hold the button on the liftgate to open it.

## Easy cargo loading

### Roof load and loading on load holder

When loading onto the roof of the car, a load holder recommended by Polestar should be used.

The aim of this is to reduce the risk of damage to the car, and to maintain safety while travelling.

Carefully follow the mounting instruction supplied with the load holder.

- Distribute the load evenly over the load holders. Place the heaviest load at the bottom.
- Check regularly to ensure that the load holders and load are secured properly. Lash the load securely using bungees.
- If the load extends beyond the front of the car a canoe or kayak, for example - fit the towing eye in its front socket and use that to attach a bungee to.
- The larger the load, the more the car is exposed to the wind, thereby increasing its energy consumption.
- Drive gently. Avoid violent acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

Related information

- Recommendations for loading (p.487)
- Weights(p.544)

### Warning

The centre of gravity and driving characteristics of the car change when carrying a load on the roof.

Comply with the car's specifications with regard to weight and maximum permitted load.

### Warning

- The car's driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.
- A loose object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

- Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.
- Always secure the load. Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing personal injury to the car's occupants. Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft. Use the parking brake when loading/unloading long objects.

### Lowering Ride Height

You can lower the vehicle's ride height to make cargo loading/unloading easier.

Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving > Easy Loading** to enable or disable the feature.

### Caution

- The ride height cannot be lowered further if it is already set to Very Low.
- The ride height can only be lowered to Very Low when you are driving below 5 km/h.

### Warning

When lowering the ride height, ensure that the area underneath your vehicle is clear of people, animals or any objects. Failure to do so may result in injury or damage to the vehicle or other objects.

### Trunk Lighting

When you open the liftgate, the trunk lighting automatically lights up.



The trunk lighting automatically turns off when closing the liftgate or after 10 minutes.

## **Trunk Storage**

### ***Carrying Accessories***

The ES8 towing package has a hitch receiver that can support an accessory carrier.

The hitch receiver is designed to support vertical loads of up to 75 kg. When carrying bicycles or other items on the ES8 hitch, always check to ensure that the maximum weight is not exceeded. When calculating weight, remember to include the weight of the accessory carrier.

When towing, keep the rear tire pressure at 2.8 bar and the driving speed under 100 km/h. When towing, the maximum uphill gradient allowed is 12%.

Towing a trailer and carrying accessories increases vehicle weight and drag. As a result, driving range can decrease significantly. Plan trip length and charging destinations accordingly.

Please pay attention to the followings when towing:

Before towing:

- Please change the suspension setting into Normal before use this Trailer mode
- Please make sure the trailer lights can work properly
- Please make sure vehicle and trailer combination mass and front/rear axle load are not exceeding maximum permissible value specified in Weights information table
- Please Make sure the trailer is attached securely (not to attach trailer on slope) and get harness connected
- Please do not use the Trailer mode when there is no trailer is attached

During towing:

- Please pay attention to the driving speed and follow the regulation requirement
- Please Keep proper following distance
- Please Do not turn sharply
- Please note that Suspension level control is disable during Trailer mode on
- Please note that the tailgate only can open by manual operation or pressing the button in centre screen



- Please note that Some function performance is disabled/reduced due to additional loads (rear sensor and lateral intervention related)

After towing:

- Please make sure the vehicle is parked in level ground when vehicle is with trailer attached
- If parked on slope, please make sure the trailer is blocked by chocks by someone and driver keep pressing the brake pedal in this phrase
- When fitted,the hitch receiver must always be removed or repositioned when it is not in use.

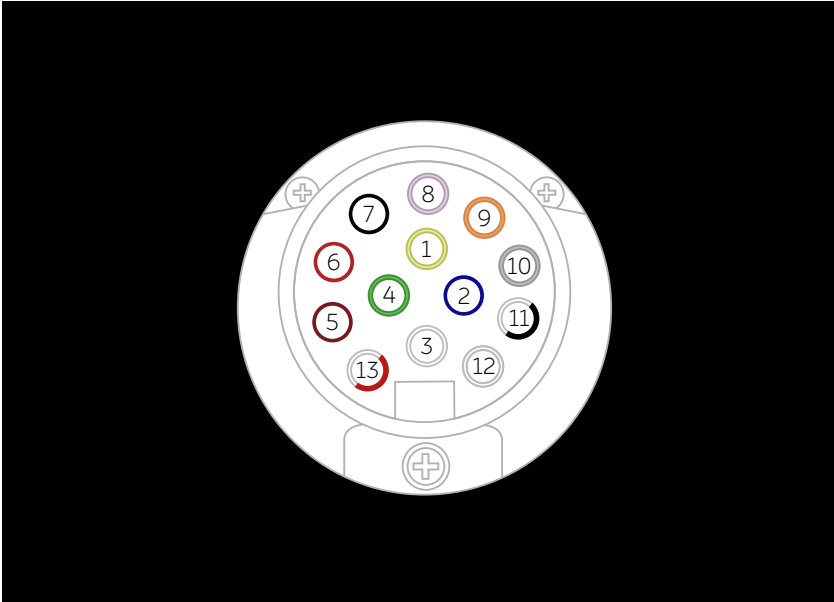
### Caution

- Do not attempt to install a carrier on a ES8 that is not equipped with the towing package.Doing so can cause significant damage.
- Do not exceed the legally prescribed maximum speed for vehicle/trailer combinations in relevant country.

### Caution

- Make sure that the wires are correctly connected to avoid safety issues.
- When a trailer is hitched, the LED taillight of the trailer might flash very slightly. This is a normal situation.

To provide power for trailer, a built-in wiring connector is attached to the tow bar near the hitch housing.The wiring plugs on most types of trailers can be attached to this connector.



1. Left Turn Signal(Yellow)
2. Rear Fog(Blue)
3. Ground for Pins 1-8(White)
4. Right Turn Signal(Green)
5. Right Tail Lamp(Brown)
6. Stop Lamps(Red)
7. Left Tail Lamp(Black)
8. Reverse Lamps(Pink)
9. 12V Power-Permanent (Orange)
10. 12V Power-Switched/Ignition(Grey)
11. Ground for Pin 10(Black/White)
12. Trailer Brake Control Output(Light Grey)
13. Ground for Pin 9(Red/White)

### Warning

Use only the electrical connection designed by NIO. Do not attempt to directly splice or attempt to connect a trailer's electrical wiring using any other method. Doing so can damage the vehicle electrical system and cause malfunctions.

### Note

- Some pins have 12V power.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that all electrical connections are working and all trailer lights are operating before and during towing. You must perform manual checks.
- Loss of trailer lights when towing may be the result of a blown fuse. ES8 does not provide a warning if the fuse is blown.



### Caution

Always ensure that the trailer electrical cable does not contact or drag on the ground and there is enough slack in the cable to allow for turns.

#### Trailer Mode

Make sure to enable the Trailer mode when towing a trailer. When you connect a trailer electrically, the Trailer mode is automatically enabled. When you disconnect a trailer electrically, the Trailer mode is disabled. To enable/disable

the Trailer mode manually, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Trailer Mode**. One of the following indicators will be displayed on the instrument cluster:

Icon	Description
	<p>Car detects a connection for trailer lights but Trailer Mode is disabled. It is likely that a carrying accessory has been connected.</p>
	<p>Car detects a faulty electrical connection for the trailer lights. Some, or all, trailer lights may not be functioning. Pull over as soon as safety permits and inspect the trailer lights for faulty cabling or connections. If the issues are resolved and the red icon still persists, turn Trailer Mode off and on again.</p>

### Warning

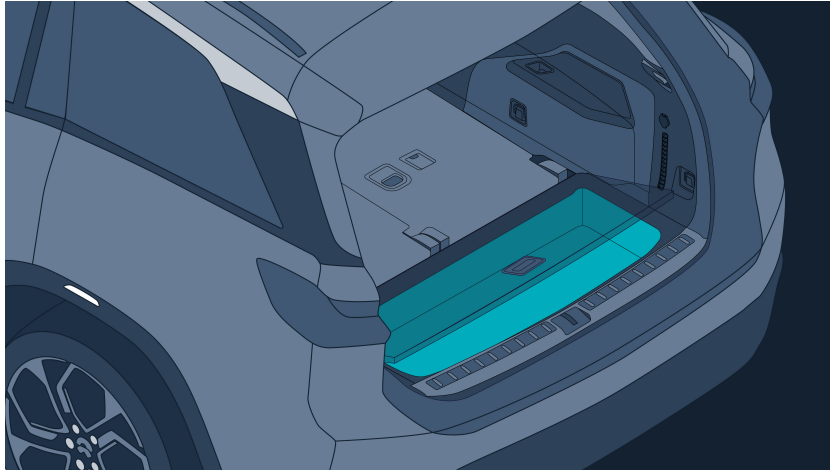
- Do not rely on Car to detect the trailer and automatically engage Trailer Mode. Always check that Trailer Mode is engaged before towing a trailer.
- Under no circumstances should you exit Trailer Mode when towing a trailer. Doing so can cause serious injury and/or death.
- Do not use the suspension setting to appropriately match the height of the hitch with the height of the trailer.

### Caution

- Please connect the trailer when the ride height is "Normal". Otherwise, the ride height will switch to "Normal" automatically.
- Some ADAS features, as well as kick sensor\easy entry\ultrasonic sensor functionality, may not be available when Trailer Mode is enabled.

### ***Trunk Storage***

You can store your objects and luggages in the trunk.



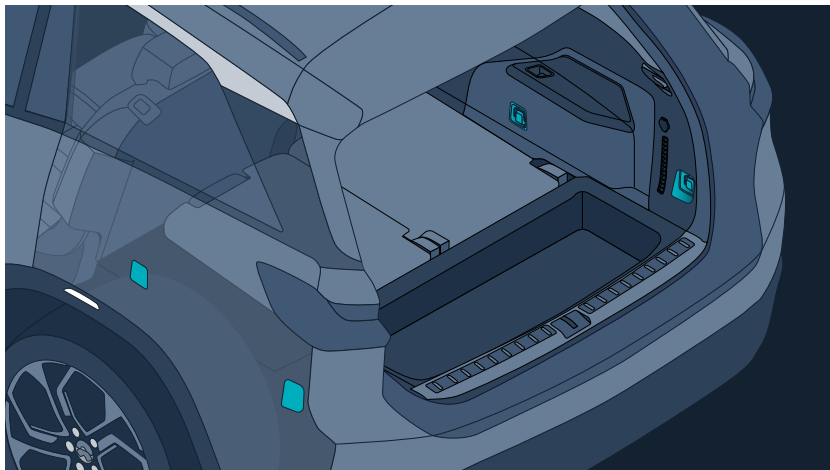
The trunk has two compartments:

- Storage above the trunk floor
- Storage under the trunk floor

### Caution

When storing liquids in the vehicle, ensure that the container is sealed. Spills or leakages may damage the vehicle. If a spill or leakage occurs, please clean up the liquid as soon as possible.

### Load Anchoring Eyelets



The load anchoring eyelets are used to attach a net or ropes to secure cargo in the trunk. There are four eyelets in the trunk, with two on each side.

### Note

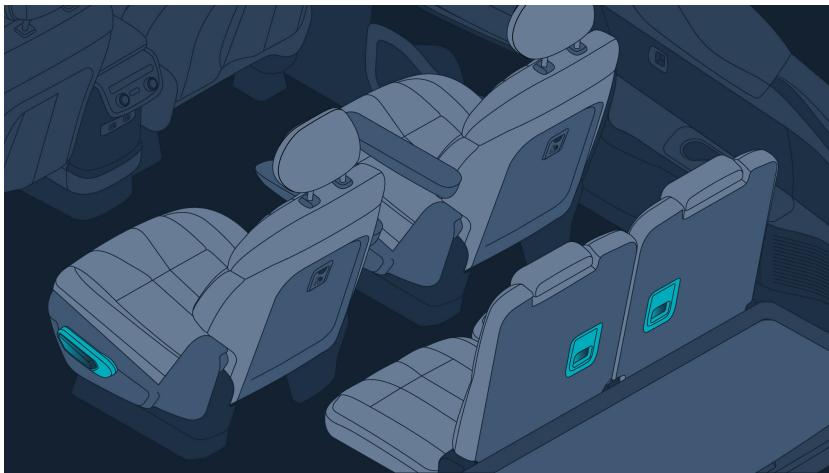
The maximum load capacity of a load anchoring eyelet is approximately 450 kilograms.

**Caution**

- Objects that are not secured or improperly secured may slide around, turn over or be thrown around in the cabin, which may result in injury to occupants. Sudden braking or turns may increase the risk of injury.
- Ensure that all objects are properly stored in the vehicle to avoid them being thrown around. Ensure that all objects are securely fastened before driving to avoid objects sliding around or turning over. Ensure that large or heavy objects are properly secured with belts or straps.

**Folding Rear Row Backrests**

When you need to store a large object in the trunk, you can increase the trunk storage by folding the rear row backrests.



Folding the second row: press the button on the backrest to unlock it, and push forward to fold the backrest.

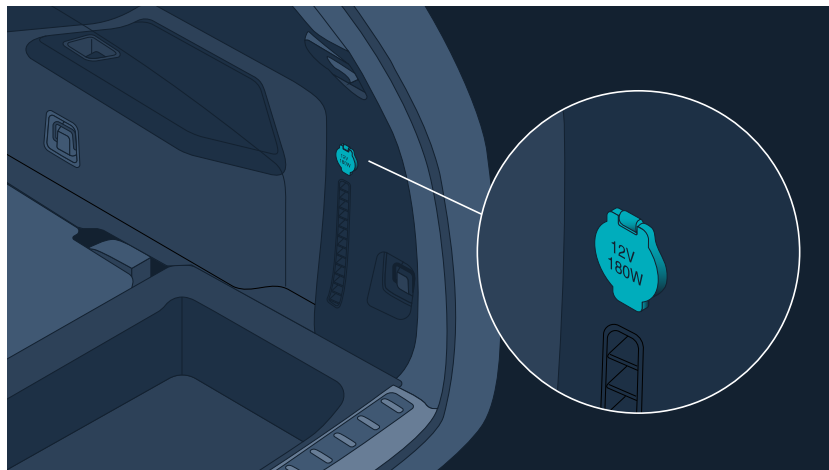
Folding the second row: pull the handle located on the seat's exterior and push forward to fold the backrest.

Folding the third row: pull the release ring on the backrest and push forward to fold the backrest.

### Caution

- To fold the third row backrests flat, you need to adjust the position and backrests of the second row seats first.
- When folding a backrest forward, ensure that no objects are on the seat and the seat belt is not fastened. Failure to do so may result in damage to the third row seats.

## Trunk Power Socket



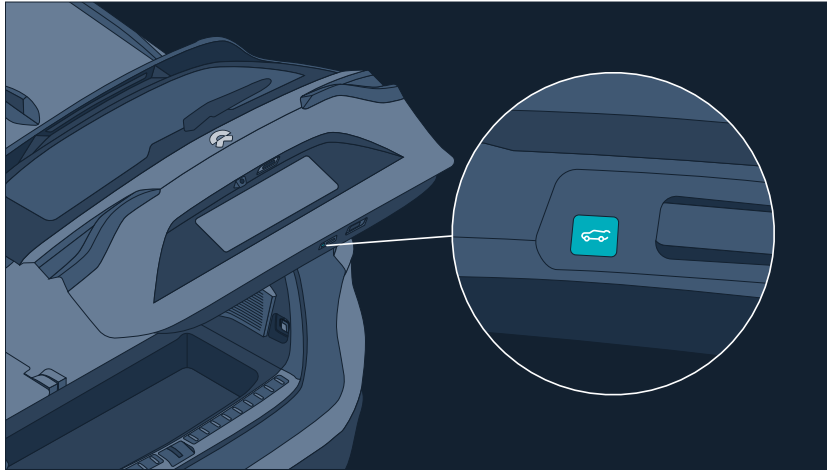
A 12V power socket is located on the right side of the trunk. It can supply power to accessories.



## Convenient ways to Close Tailgate

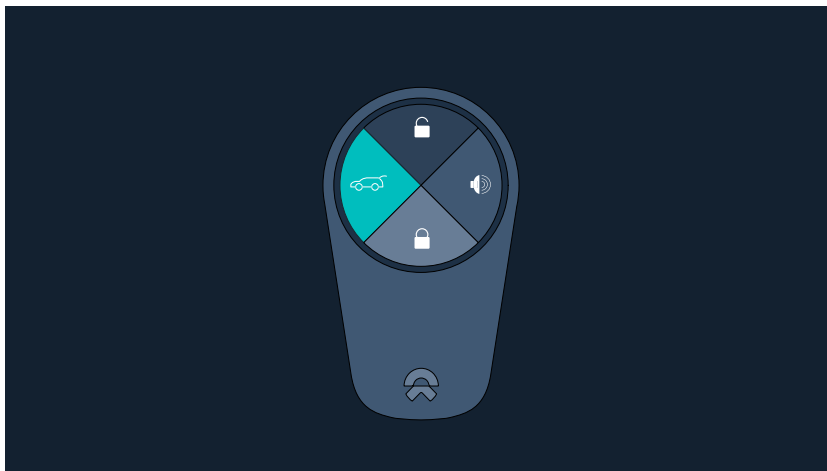
### Closing the Liftgate With One Tap


You can close the liftgate with one tap.



Press the button on the liftgate to automatically close and lock it.

### Closing the Liftgate With a Smart Key Fob



To close the liftgate, short press the liftgate button once. Then, within three seconds long press the button  on the left side of the smart key fob for 1.5 seconds until the liftgate is closed.

### Caution

This feature is unavailable when the smart key fob battery is low. Please charge the key fob first.

## Closing the Liftgate With the NIO App

To close the liftgate on the NIO app, make sure the vehicle is in PARK with four doors closed and tap **My Car > Liftgate**. You will be notified if the liftgate is closed successfully. If the liftgate is obstructed while closing, you will be notified that the liftgate has not closed successfully.

### Caution

This operation is only available when the vehicle is connected to the Internet.

## Liftgate Anti-Pinch

The liftgate has the anti-pinch feature.

If a solid object prevents the liftgate from opening or closing, the liftgate will stop its upward or downward motion and anti-pinch will be engaged.

- If the liftgate is obstructed when opening, it will stop and sound a long alert.
- If the liftgate is obstructed when closing, it will stop, sound a long alert, and move in the opposite direction for a short distance.


### Warning


To reduce the risk of being pinched, ensure that no one is near the liftgate operating area before opening or closing the liftgate.

## Opening Tailgate when sitting in the car

### Opening the Liftgate on the Center Display

When arriving at the destination, swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and tap the **liftgate** icon to open the liftgate.

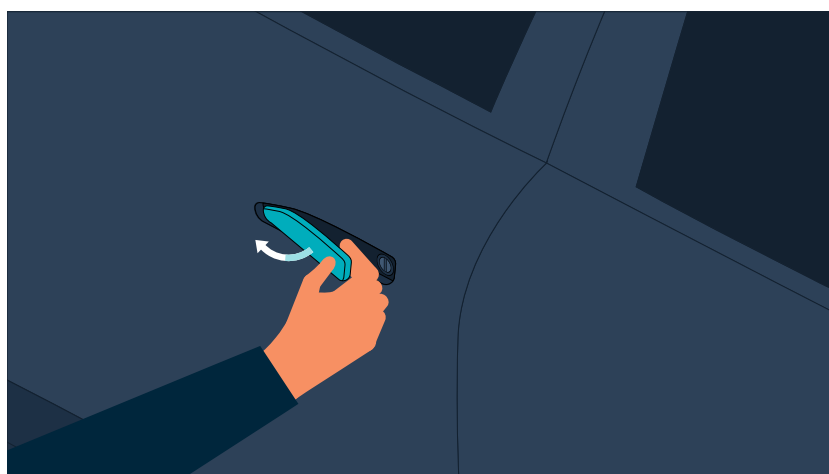
When the liftgate is closed, press and hold , and the liftgate will open automatically.

When the liftgate is open, press and hold , again, and the liftgate will close automatically.

## Open Door

### Exterior Door Handles

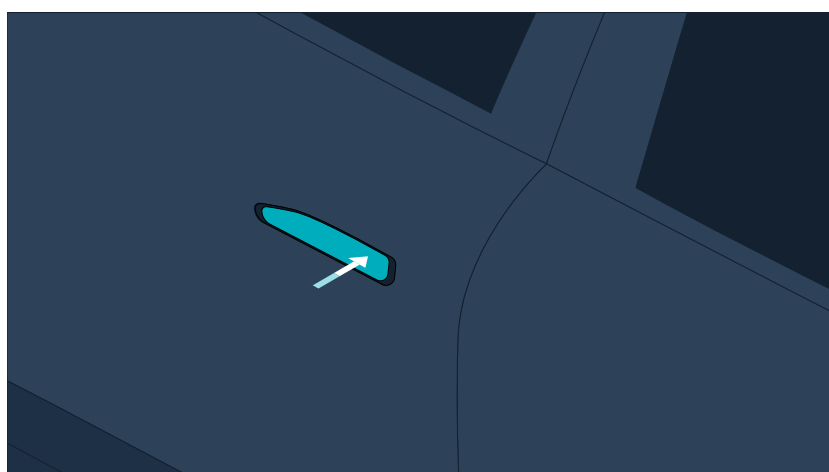
When the vehicle is unlocked, the exterior door handles extend automatically. You can open the door by pulling the corresponding door handle. The exterior door handles retract automatically when the vehicle is locked, driving over 3 km/h, or the door handles have been extended for over 20 seconds. If a door (or liftgate) is open, the exterior door handles will not retract automatically, but will retract 20 seconds after all doors are closed.



### Caution

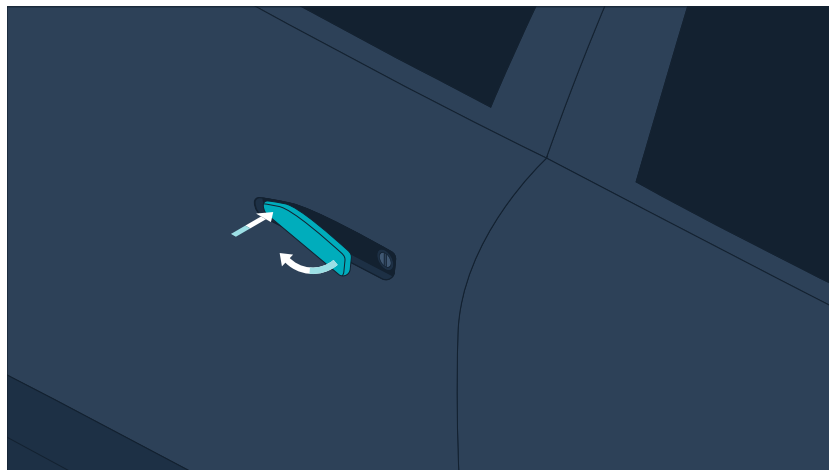
When the exterior door handles automatically retract, ensure that occupants (especially children) keep their hands away from the door handles. Failure to do so may result in injury.

If the vehicle is unlocked and the door handles are retracted, you can press the rear end of any door handle to extend all door handles.

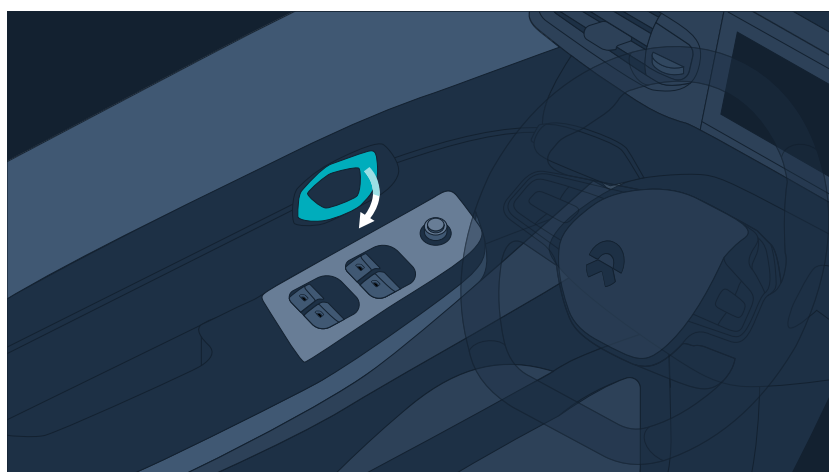


**Caution**

If the exterior door handles cannot extend automatically, push the front end of the exterior door handle to deploy the corresponding handle.



You can also pull the interior door handle twice to open the corresponding door.

**Note**

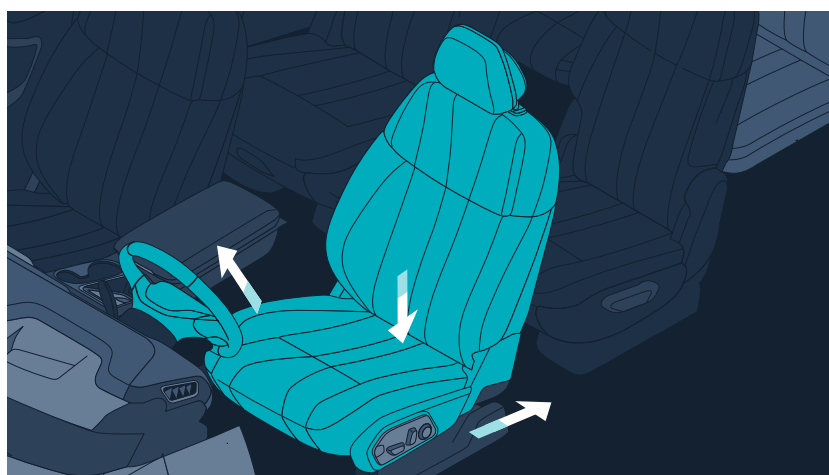
- If a door is opened when you are driving over 5 km/h, the vehicle will sound a chime to remind you to close the door as soon as possible and be mindful of your safety.
- If any door, the liftgate, or the hood is opened when the vehicle is in DRIVE, the vehicle will sound a chime to remind you of opened doors. Close all doors, the liftgate and the hood, or shift to a non-DRIVE gear to stop the chime. No chime will be sounded when the charge port is opened and the vehicle is in DRIVE.

## Easy Entry

Easy Entry offers the driver and passengers multiple options and settings to make entering and exiting the vehicle more convenient.

### ***Driver Easy Entry***

After initializing the driver's seat on the center display, you can set the most convenient exit position for you to get out of the vehicle. With the vehicle stopped and in PARK, the driver's seat will move to the preset exit position when you open the driver's door, (including the seat cushion position and backrest inclination), and the steering wheel will move to the uppermost position. This will provide you with a larger space to get in and out of the vehicle conveniently.



To enable/disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Easy Entry**. You or an authorized user can personalize the exit position for the corresponding account. After manually adjusting the driver's seat to your desired exit position, tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Seat Memory** and select **Exit Position** to save the current settings. Every time you open the driver's door to get out of the vehicle, the driver's seat will move to the corresponding exit position.

### **Caution**

When setting the exit position, do not move the seat to the rearmost position or recline the backrest to the lowest position. Doing so may adversely affect the rear passengers. You can set the recommended optimal exit position on the center display.

**Note**

After turning on Driver Seat Easy Entry, when you sit in the driver's seat and close the door (or press the brake pedal), the driver's seat, steering wheel, side mirrors and HUD height will automatically adjust to the settings saved in the system.

***Front Passenger Easy Entry***

If a passenger opens the front passenger door when the vehicle is stopped and in PARK, the front passenger seat will move to the preset exit position (the position of the seat cushion and inclination of the backrest will move to the rear, and the leg support will automatically move to its lowest position) to make entering and exiting the vehicle more convenient.



To enable/disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat Comfort > Front Passenger Easy Entry**. Front Passenger Easy Entry has two setting options:

- **Exit Only:** when the passenger unfastens the seat belt and opens the passenger door, the seat will move to the default position; when the passenger gets into the vehicle and closes the passenger door, the seat will remain unchanged from the default exit position.
- **Exit + Entry:** when the passenger unfastens the seat belt and opens the passenger door, the seat will move to the default position; when the passenger gets into the vehicle and closes the passenger door, the seat will automatically move to the default position saved in the corresponding account (which can be edited from the center display).

### Caution

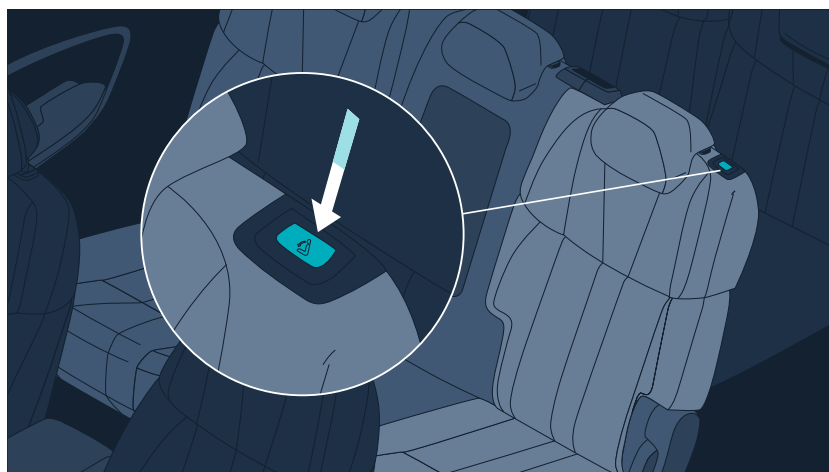
When using Front Passenger Easy Entry, it is recommended that you set the default position appropriately, and pay attention to the surrounding environment and the safety of any passengers in the second row.

### Caution

- To use this feature, ensure that the front passenger seat is in the foremost position.
- When moving the seat, please pay attention to the position of the footrest and leg support to avoid injury.

### ***Third Row Easy Entry***

Pull the handle on the backrest of the second row seat to fold the backrest slightly forward. Next, release the handle and push the second row seat forward to allow for convenient entry and exit to the third row.



Once the passengers are seated in the third row, recline the second row backrest until you hear a click to restore the seat to its original position.

### Caution

If necessary, you can also adjust the front seats, so that the second row seats can be moved forward further.

In case of emergency, passengers in the third row can pull the strap on the back of the second row seat to fold the backrest forward and exit the vehicle immediately.





### ***Third Row Easy Entry***

Passengers can conveniently reach the third row via the aisle between the second row seats. When seated, passengers can also move the second row seats forward or backward for a more comfortable experience.

### **Ride Height Easy Entry**

When the vehicle is locked, the suspension automatically adjusts to the lowest setting for more convenient loading/unloading of cargo and passengers. When the vehicle is being driven, the suspension automatically raise to the height corresponding to the current drive mode.

To enable/disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Ride Height Easy Entry**.

### **Warning**

Before turning on Ride Height Easy Entry, ensure that the area underneath the vehicle is clear of people and any objects, and is on a flat road. Failure to do so may result in injury to people or damage to the vehicle.

## Courtesy Lighting

### Auto Reading Lights

When you unlock the vehicle or open any door (or liftgate), the reading lights turn on automatically to illuminate the cabin. The reading lights turn off automatically if any of the following conditions are met. In this case, you can turn on the reading lights by touching the switch on the headliner.

- The vehicle is being driven
- The vehicle is locked from the outside
- A door is open for over 10 minutes
- All doors are closed for over 15 seconds

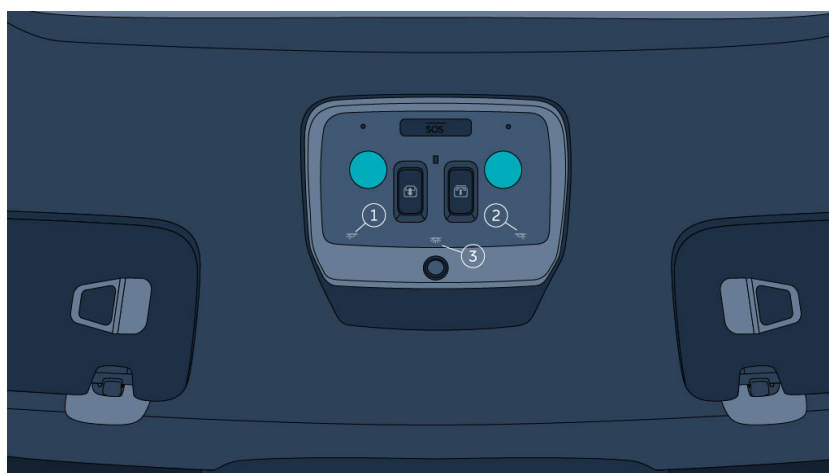
### Note

When the vehicle is not locked from the outside and you turn on a front reading light by touching the switch on the headliner, the reading light can only be turned off manually.

To turn on/off the reading lights, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Auto Reading Lights**.

### Controlling the Front Reading Lights

You can manually turn on the reading lights to illuminate the cabin when placing objects, viewing a map, or reading documents. Two touch switches controlling the front reading lights are located on the front headliner. To turn a reading light on/off, touch the corresponding switch; to turn all of the reading lights on/off, touch the master switch in the center.



1. Driver's side reading light switch
2. Passenger side reading light switch
3. Reading light master switch

When the vehicle is locked from the outside (with a smart key fob or NIO app), all reading lights will be turned off.

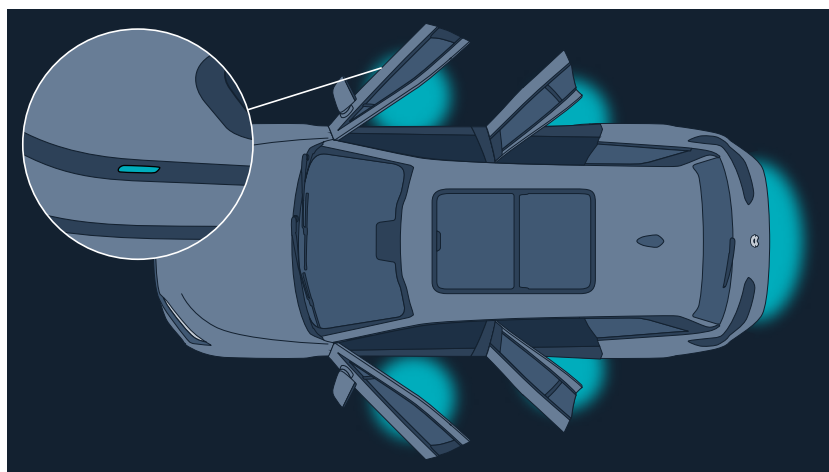
### Note

If a front reading light is turned on via the touch switch on the headliner, the reading light cannot be controlled by the master switch and will need to be turned off manually; if the front reading lights are off, you can control both front and rear reading lights using the master switch.

### Puddle Lights

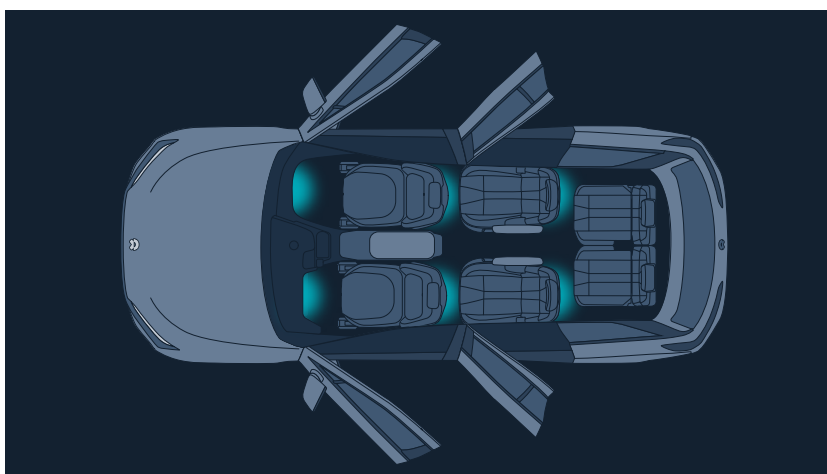
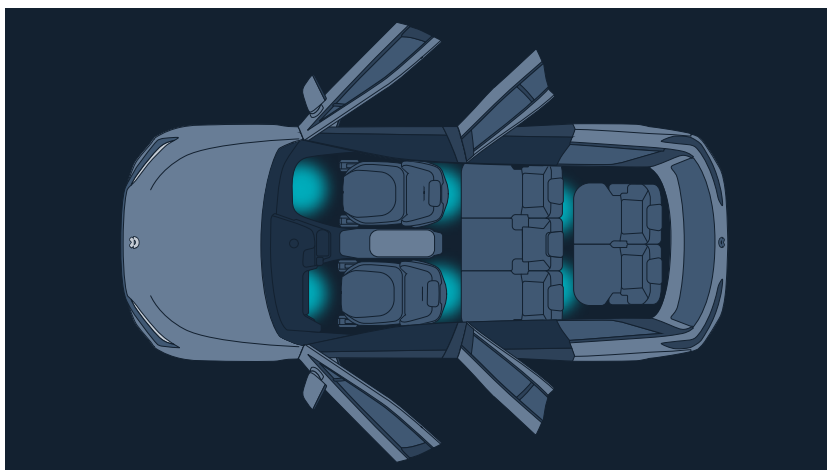
Each door is equipped with a puddle light and the liftgate features two puddle lights. The puddle lights illuminate the ground at night to prevent you and passengers from stepping into a puddle.

The puddle light turns on when a corresponding door or the liftgate is opened, and turns off after it remains open for 10 minutes or is closed.



### Footwell Lights

The footwell lights illuminate the footwell for you and passengers to enter and exit the vehicle.



When the vehicle is stopped, all footwell lights automatically turn on if any door is opened and will turn off in any of the following conditions:

- The vehicle is in DRIVE or REVERSE.
- The vehicle is locked from the outside (with a smart key fob, keyless locking, NFC, NIO app, etc.).
- A door is opened for 10 minutes.
- All doors are closed for three minutes.

### **Smart Ambient Lighting**

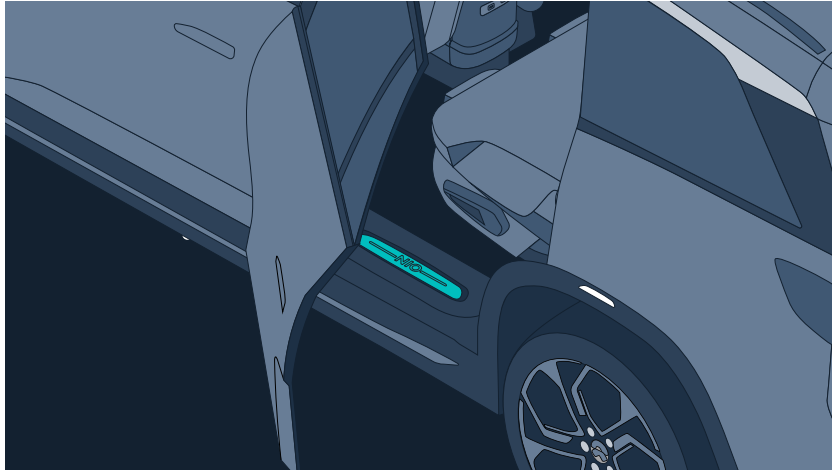
The smart ambient lights are located on the instrument panel, doors and headliner. You can set your preferred ambient lighting and enjoy the delightful atmosphere it creates.



You can turn on ambient lighting on the center display. In this case, the default ambient lighting effect for the current drive mode will be turned on. Swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access, tap **Ambient Lighting** to choose you desired color and brightness for the current drive mode and save it to your settings.

### **Door Sill Inlay Lighting**

In order to provide a delightful entry and exit, when you or a passenger opens any door, the door sill inlay lighting for the corresponding door will light up to illuminate the cabin and surrounding environment.



## To Be Seated

### Driver's Seat Memory

When you or an authorized user unlocks the vehicle and takes the driver's seat (with the driver's door closed), the driver's seat, steering wheel, side mirrors and HUD height will automatically adjust to your or the authorized user's preferred settings saved to the corresponding account.

Shift into PARK, go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Seat Memory** to customize your settings. After adjusting the steering wheel, driver's seat, side mirrors and HUD height, go to **Driver Seat Memory** and select **Drive, Alternate, Relaxor Other** to customize and save the new settings to the corresponding user account.

After unlocking the vehicle and sitting in the driver's seat (with the driver's door closed), retrieve the latest driver's seat settings by swiping right on the home page to visit **Quick Access**, or going to **Driver Seat Memory** and selecting **Drive, Alternate, Relaxor Other**.

If you or an authorized user manually adjusts the settings (e.g. driver's seat position) while using the vehicle, press and hold the corresponding seat icon on the center display to update the settings, which will overwrite the existing settings saved to the corresponding account.

### Caution

- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not short press any buttons on the memory page on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.
- While driving, you cannot save the current position of the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors to a corresponding account by long pressing any buttons on the memory page on the center display.

## Note

After turning on Driver Seat Easy Entry, when you sit in the driver's seat and close the door (or press the brake pedal), the driver's seat, steering wheel, side mirrors and HUD height will automatically adjust to the settings saved in the system.

You or an authorized user can switch user accounts on the center display to load the corresponding settings. Tap the profile photo or user name on the center display to view valid accounts (including the owner's account and all authorized user accounts). Tap the profile photo or user name you want to switch to, and log into the account after completing verification (by scanning the QR code with the NIO app, gesture, and email password).

## Caution

- You can only switch accounts when the vehicle is not being driven.
- In Guest Mode, the vehicle will not save any customized settings (such as the driver's seat position).

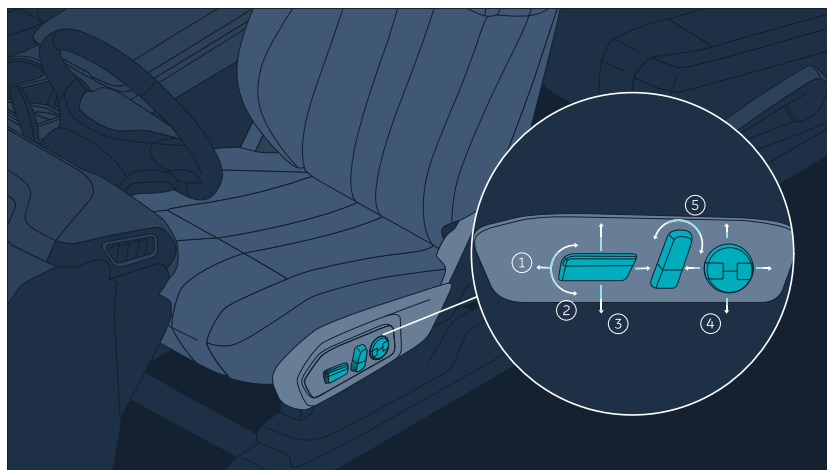
## Driver's Seat Memory

To set the driver's seat memory for the first time, shift into PARK and follow the initialization instructions on the center display to operate the driver's seat and the buttons on the steering wheel. After completing the initialization settings, go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Seat Memory** to customize your settings. After adjusting the seat position and backrest, go to **Driver Seat Memory** and choose **Drive, Alternate, Relax or Other** to customize and save the settings to the corresponding user account.

After unlocking the vehicle and sitting in the driver's seat (with the driver's door closed), retrieve the latest driver's seat settings by swiping right on the home page to visit **Quick Access**, or going to **Driver Seat Memory** and selecting **Drive, Alternate, Relax or Other**.

If you or an authorized user manually adjusts the settings (e.g. driver's seat position) while using the vehicle, press and hold the corresponding seat icon on the center display to update the settings, which will overwrite the existing settings to the corresponding account.





1. Adjusting seat position  
To move the seat forward or backward, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
2. Cushion tilt  
To tilt the seat cushion up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
3. Seat height  
To move the seat up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
4. Lumbar support  
To adjust the lumbar support, press the corresponding position on the switch.
5. Backrest inclination  
To adjust the backrest, move the switch forward or backward. The backrest can be reclined up to 73 degrees and is set to 20 degrees by default.

### Warning

Do not adjust the seat's position while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.

### Caution

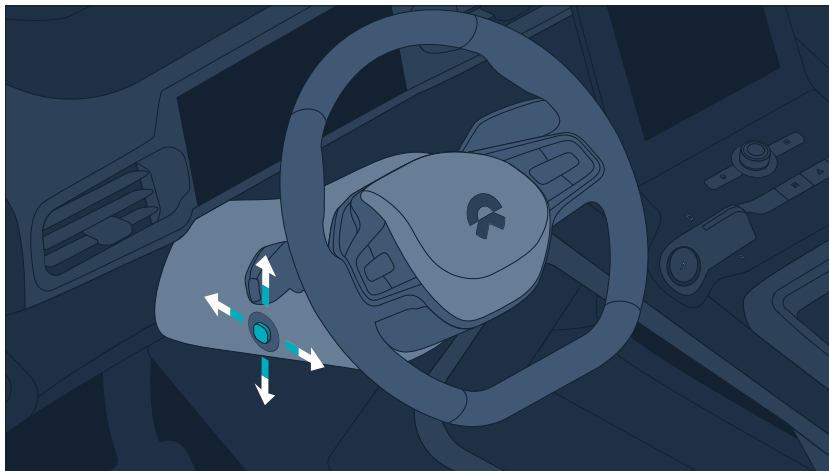
- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

## Steering Wheel Memory

To set the driver's seat memory for the first time, shift into PARK and follow the initialization instructions on the center display to operate the driver's seat and the buttons on the steering wheel. After completing the initialization settings, go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Seat Memory** to customize your settings. After adjusting the steering wheel, go to **Driver Seat Memory** and choose **Drive**, **Alternate**, **Relax** or **Other** to customize and save the settings to the corresponding user account.

After sitting in the driver's seat (with the driver's door closed), go to **Driver Seat Memory** and choose **Drive**, **Alternate**, **Relax** or **Other**, after which the steering wheel will automatically adjust to the latest settings saved in the corresponding account.

If you or an authorized user manually adjusts the settings (e.g. steering wheel position) while using the vehicle, press and hold the corresponding position icon on the center display to update the settings, which will overwrite the existing settings saved to the corresponding account.



### Warning

- Do not adjust the steering wheel position while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- An improper steering wheel position or seating position may result in injury. Make sure your chest is at least 25 centimeters from the steering wheel.

## Caution

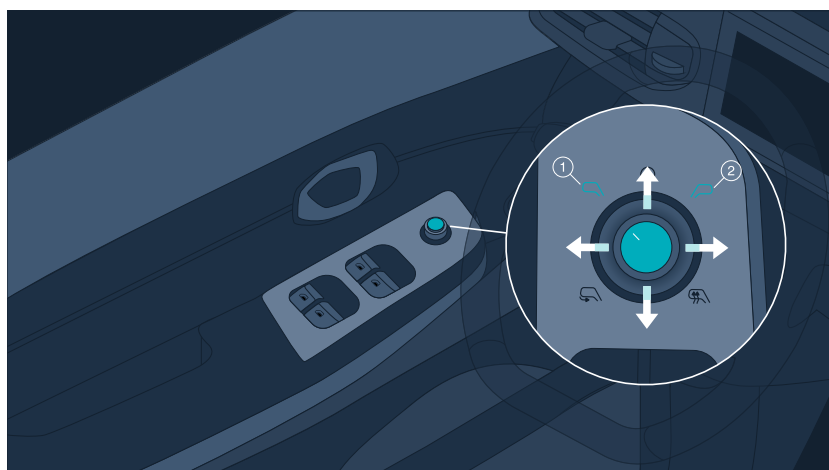
- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

## Side Mirror Memory

To set the driver's seat memory for the first time, shift into PARK and follow the initialization instructions on the center display to operate the driver's seat and buttons on the steering wheel. After completing the initialization settings, go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Seat Comfort > Driver Seat Memory** to customize your settings. After adjusting the driver's side or passenger side mirror, go to **Driver Seat Memory** and choose **Drive, Alternate, Relax** or **Other** to customize and save the settings to the corresponding user account.

After sitting in the driver's seat (with the driver's door closed), go to **Driver Seat Memory** and choose **Drive, Alternate, Relax** or **Other**, after which the side mirrors will automatically adjust to the most recent settings saved in the corresponding account.

If you or an authorized user manually adjusts the settings (e.g. side mirror position) when using the vehicle, press and hold the corresponding position icon on the center display to update the settings, which will overwrite the existing settings saved to the corresponding account.



1. Driver's side mirror  
Turn the side mirror knob to the driver's side and press it to adjust the side mirror's position. Upon releasing the knob, the side mirror will stop at its current position.
2. Passenger side mirror  
Turn the side mirror knob to the driver's side and press it to adjust the side mirror's position. Upon releasing the knob, the side mirror will stop at its current position.

### Warning

Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.

### Caution

- Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat and steering wheel are clear of obstacles, and the rear seats are unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.
- While driving, do not operate any buttons on the memory interface on the center display to adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel or side mirrors and be mindful of your safety.

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the side mirrors will automatically tilt down to provide a better view during reverse parking. You can go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving > Auto-Tilt In Reverse** to enable this feature. When the side mirrors tilt down, you can use the knob to adjust their positions. The new positions will be automatically saved to the corresponding account (this means that you don't have to manually save the settings on the center display). The side mirrors will automatically tilt down to the saved positions the next time the vehicle is in REVERSE. The side mirrors will revert back to Drive Position when the vehicle is not in REVERSE.

### Note

When the side mirrors are automatically tilting to a saved position, if you adjust a side mirror using the side mirror knob, the side mirrors will stop tilting and save the new position to the corresponding account.

## Passenger Seat Memory

To set the front passenger seat memory, shift into PARK, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat Comfort > Passenger Seat Memory** (default position cannot be customized). After adjusting the seat position and backrest, go to **Passenger Seat Memory** and choose **Frequent**, **Alternate**, or **Rest** to customize and save the settings to the corresponding user account.

To retrieve the latest passenger seat settings after sitting in the front passenger seat, press the corresponding seat icon on the center display.

If you or an authorized user manually adjusts the front passenger seat while using the vehicle, press and hold the corresponding seat icon on the center display to update the settings, which will overwrite the existing settings to the corresponding account.

### Caution

Before initializing the driver's seat memory, ensure that the vehicle is in PARK in a safe environment, the seat is clear of obstacles, the footrest is stowed, and the rear seat is unoccupied. Please also lower the seat height, and adjust the headrest to the lowest position to avoid damaging the headliner.

### Caution

- When moving the seat, please pay attention to the position of the footrest and leg support to avoid injury.

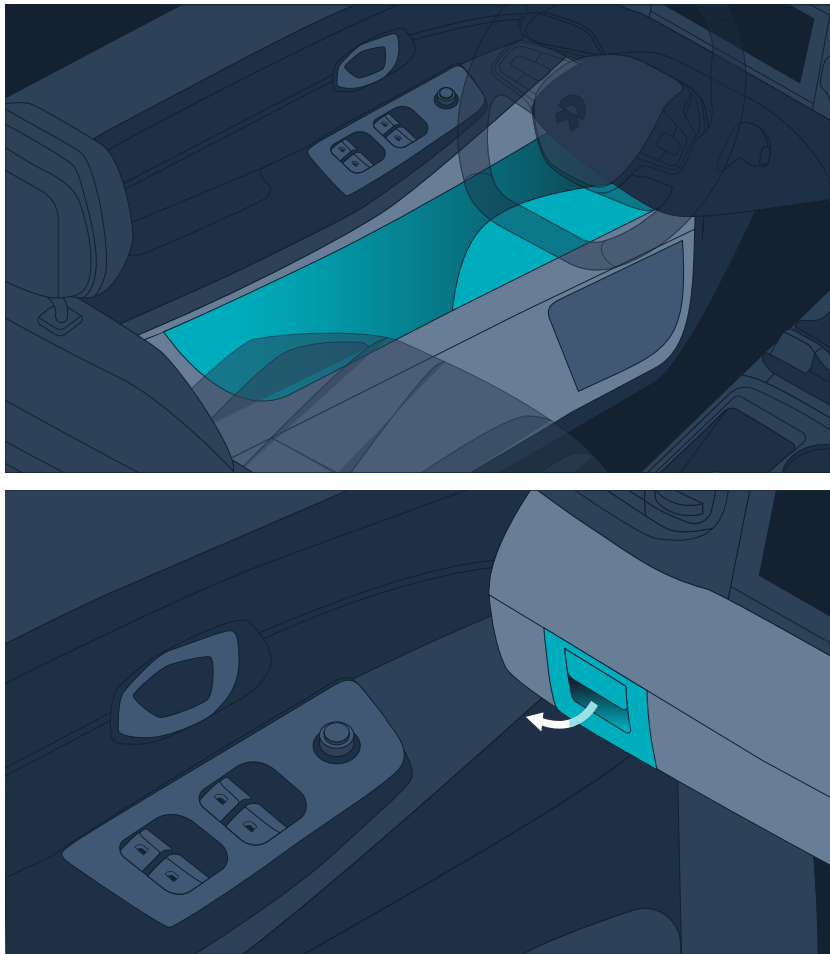
## Driver Seated

### Front Storage

The vehicle comes with a variety of convenient storage areas.

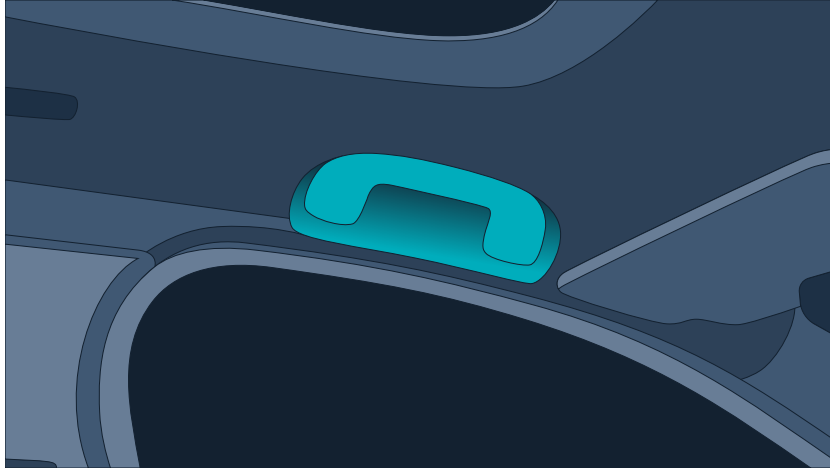
### *Door Side Storage*

Each door has a storage area to place beverages or other objects. It is also equipped with a storage light to illuminate the corresponding door in dark environments or when the position lights are on. On the driver's side, the instrument panel has a storage space for ID cards (e.g. driving license).



### *Assist Grips*

Each door has an assist grip above the door frame for occupants to grab when the vehicle is driven at high speeds or bouncing.



***Card Holders***

Each sun visor has a card holder for you to store cards such as name cards or toll cards.



***Cup Holders***

Your vehicle has two cup holders in the center console.

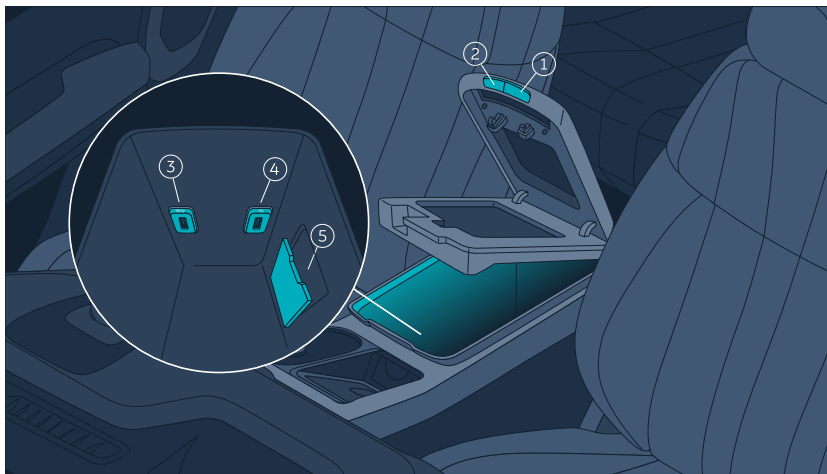


## Warning

- Do not put any hot beverages in an open container. A spill can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not place any fragile items, or they may cause injury when broken.

## Center Storage Box

The center storage box comes with two compartments, namely upper storage and a safe box. You can open the compartments by pressing the corresponding button on the center armrest.



1. Upper storage  
To open the upper storage, press the button and lift up the armrest cover. The upper storage is used to store smaller objects like phones.
2. Safe box  
To open the safe box, press the button and lift up the armrest cover. When the safe box is locked, you need to enter your gesture password on the center display to open the safe box. The storage keeps your objects safe and organized.
3. Safe box USB 3.0 port  
Able to transfer data at high speeds and charge mobile devices.
4. Safe box USB 2.0 port  
Able to transfer data and charge mobile devices.
5. Storage box  
Able to keep small objects organized and prevent them from moving around.

The safe box password is turned off by default, and can only be turned on under the owner's account. To turn on the safe box password, swipe right on the home



page to visit **Quick Access**, and choose **Safe Box**. Next, you will need to enter your vehicle gesture password. The safe box password will be turned on when you enter the correct password.

The vehicle's owner or an authorized user can use gesture password to unlock the safe box.

- **Owner's account**  
The owner can tap the **Safe Box** icon on the center display and enter their gesture password to unlock it. The safe box locks automatically when closed. To turn off the safe box password, tap **Safe Box** and choose **Turn Off Password**. The safe box password will be turned off after you enter the correct gesture password.
- **Authorized users**  
After logging in, an authorized user can tap the **Safe Box** icon on the center display and set a gesture password (which will be saved to the authorized user's account). After this, the authorized user can unlock the safe box by entering their gesture password. The safe box will lock automatically when it is closed.

### Note

- If an authorized user is not authorized to access the safe box feature, the safe box will be disabled.
- When an authorized service specialist or guest enters the vehicle, the safe box will be disabled.
- The safe box will automatically lock if it is not opened for 30 seconds after unlocking.

## Connecting to Mobile Devices

You can connect the vehicle to a mobile device (e.g. phone, laptop) via Bluetooth, and sync your mobile device (e.g. phone contacts, music) to the vehicle on the center display for an optimal infotainment experience. The mobile device will be automatically synced to your vehicle the next time it is connected. You don't need to re-allow the connection.

To connect to your mobile device via Bluetooth, tap the Bluetooth icon at the top of the center display:

1. Turn on Bluetooth on your mobile device (e.g. phone, laptop).

2. To enable Bluetooth, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Connect**.
3. Choose the mobile device you want to connect to on the center display to pair the device manually.

Alternatively, you can connect a mobile device via Bluetooth with one tap by placing it on the wireless charging pad and following the instruction below (this approach is only available for certain phones):

1. Turn on NFC and Bluetooth on your phone.
2. Place the phone on the wireless charging pad on the center console.



3. Enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Connect**, select Bluetooth, then **NFC Quick Connect**.

**Note**

Do not remove your phone from the charging pad when it is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth.

**Wireless Charging**

You can charge your device by placing it on the wireless charging pad on the center console.



Wireless charging is enabled by default. To disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Connect > Wireless Charging**. The current setting will be saved in the corresponding account. The current charging status is shown on the center display.

When the wireless charging pad is occupied by a mobile device connected via the Bluetooth NFC quick connect, charging will stop.

Under the following conditions, charging will stop and the center display will display a status notification:

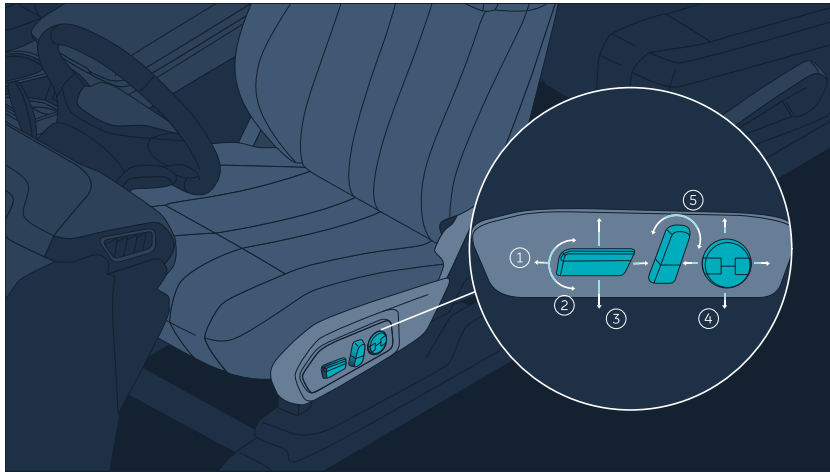
- Charging is complete.
- A fault occurs during charging. For example the charging voltage is too high or too low.

### Note

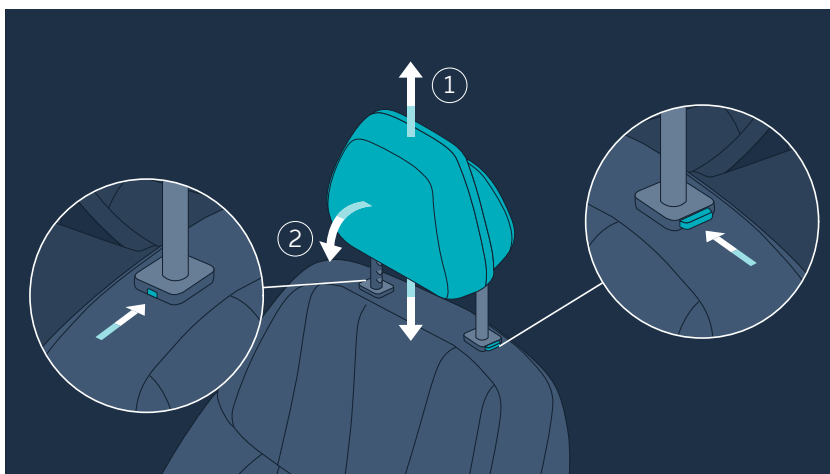
- When wireless charging is enabled, any metal object (such as a metal key or coin) placed on the wireless charging pad may affect its charging efficiency or even lead to a burn.
- It is normal for the key fob or phone to become hot after being charged for a long period of time. Do not place a fully charged device on the charging pad. Doing so can cause overheating.
- Do not charge two or more devices wirelessly at the same time.

### Driver's Seat

The power driver's seat is an 8-way adjustable seat, with 4-way power lumbar support and a 4-way power headrest.



1. **Seat position**  
To move the seat forward or backward, push the switch in the corresponding direction. The driver's seat can be moved forward up to 190 millimeters and backward up to 60 millimeters.
2. **Cushion tilt**  
To tilt the seat cushion up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
3. **Seat height**  
To move the seat up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
4. **Lumber support**  
To adjust the lumbar support, press the corresponding position on the switch.
5. **Backrest inclination**  
To adjust the backrest, push the switch forward or backward. The backrest can be reclined up to 73 degrees and is set to 20 degrees by default.



1. **Headrest**

To adjust the headrest, press the left button under the headrest. The headrest is 5-way adjustable along a vertical axis. When the headrest is adjusted and fixed at a set height, you will hear a “click”.

To remove the headrest, gently tilt the seat back, press the buttons on the both sides of the headrest, and pull out the headrest.

## 2. Headrest inclination

You can adjust the inclination of the headrest by pulling it forward. To reset the headrest to an upright position, pull the headrest to the foremost position and release it.

Please adjust the driver’s seat according to your height and seating position. While driving, make sure that the backrest is upright and the highest point of the headrest is in the center of your head so that your body and head are sufficiently supported, and the seat belt and airbag may function correctly.

### **Warning**

- When driving, your safety belt should be worn correctly. An improper seating position may result in severe injury.
- Do not drive with the backrest reclined to an extreme degree. Doing so may impair the protective function of the seat belt and air bags.
- To provide the best protection, make sure the headrest is set to an appropriate height according to the occupant’s height.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving. Doing so may result in injury.
- Make sure your chest is at least 25 centimeters from the steering wheel. Failure to do so can impair the protective function of the air bags and result in severe injury.
- Do not place any objects under the seat.

### **Steering Wheel**

When seated in the driver’s seat, you can adjust the 4-way power steering wheel by pushing the button.



### Warning

- Do not adjust the steering wheel position while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- An improper steering wheel position or seating position may result in injury. Make sure your chest is at least 25 centimeters from the steering wheel.

### CDC Dual-Button Restart



If the central display runs into screen freezes, unresponsiveness, or other exceptions, you can quickly restart the vehicle system to resolve the issue.

### How to Use Dual-Button Restart

1. Turn on the hazard warning light;
2. Park your vehicle into a safe place and shift into PARK;
3. Press and hold the distance increase button ① on the left side of the steering wheel and the volume down button ② on the right side simultaneously for about 8 seconds;

4. After approximately 30 seconds, all screens will turn back on and the system will resume operation.

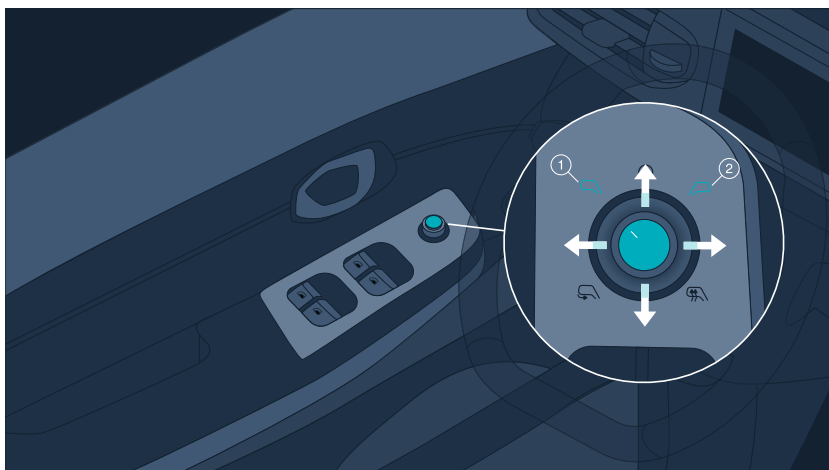
If the problem persists, please contact NIO.

### Caution

- The vehicle must be in PARK to use Dual-Button Restart. Please ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe area;
- It is strictly forbidden to perform Dual-Button Restart while the vehicle is moving;
- Keep the hazard warning light on while the vehicle is in the system restart process;
- Do not perform Dual-Button Restart when the vehicle software is being upgraded;
- During the restart process, the vehicle status display, safety warning, surround view image, map interface, and other information cannot be seen;
- If the screen fails to resume normal operation after Dual-Button Restart, you can try to lock the vehicle and put the vehicle to sleep. If the problem persists, please contact NIO.

### Side Mirrors

When seated (with the doors closed or the brake pedal pressed once), you can adjust the side mirrors by using the knob on the driver's door. Turn the side mirror knob to the driver's side or passenger side, and press the knob to adjust the corresponding side mirror. Release the knob to stop the side mirror at their current position.



1. Driver's side mirror
2. Passenger side mirror

**Warning**

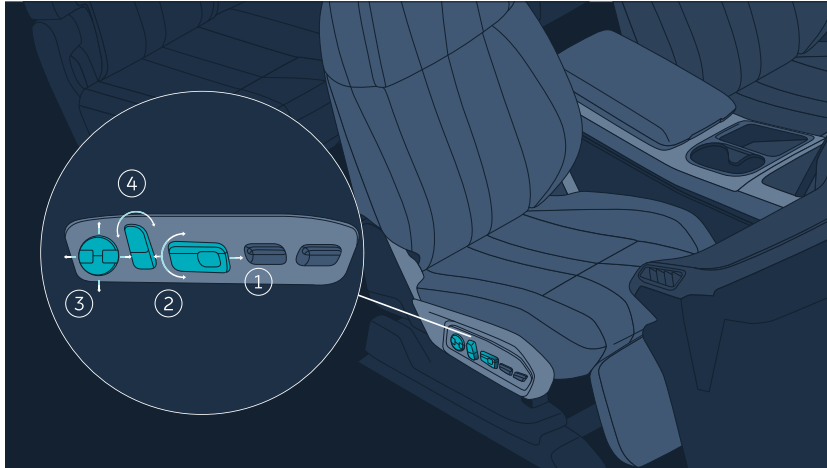
Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.



## Passenger seated

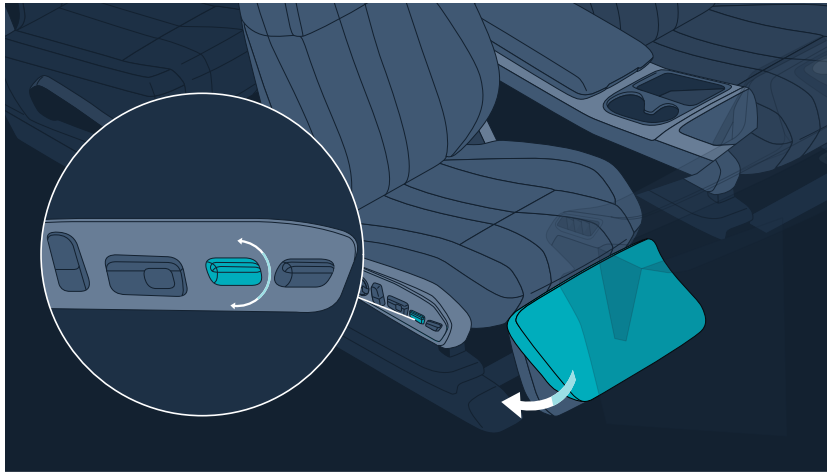
### Front Passenger Seat

The passenger in the front can adjust the passenger seat. The power passenger seat is a 6-way adjustable seat, with 4-way power lumbar support and 5-way power headrest.



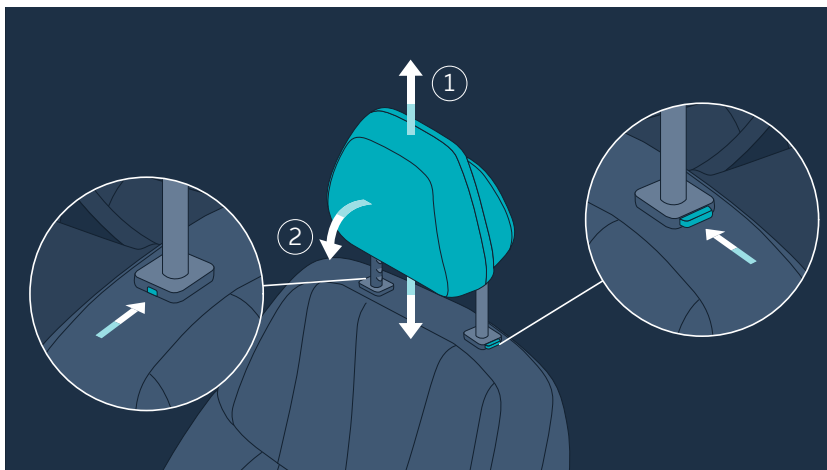
1. **Seat position**  
To move the seat forward or backward, push the switch in the corresponding direction. The passenger seat can be moved forward up to 190 millimeters and backward up to 60 millimeters when in normal mode.
2. **Seat height**  
To move the seat up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.
3. **Lumber support**  
To adjust the lumbar support, press the corresponding position on the switch.
4. **Backrest inclination**  
To adjust the backrest, move the switch forward or backward. The backrest can be reclined up to 73 degrees and is set to 25 degrees by default.

The front passenger seat also features leather-wrapped power leg support, providing your passenger with a relaxing experience on par with first class. To move the leg support up or down, push the switch in the corresponding direction.



To adjust the front passenger seat, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat Comfort > Passenger Seat Memory**. Press and hold an icon to adjust the corresponding seat section. Release the icon and the seat will stop moving.

Please adjust the passenger seat according to the passenger's height and seating position. While driving, make sure that the backrest is upright and the highest point of the headrest is in the center of the passenger's head so that the body and head are sufficiently supported, and the seat belt and airbag may function correctly.



#### 1. Headrest

To adjust the headrest, press the left button under the headrest. The headrest is 5-way adjustable along a vertical axis. When the headrest is adjusted and fixed at a set height, you will hear a “click”.

To remove the headrest, gently tilt the seat back, press the buttons on the both sides of the headrest, and pull out the headrest.

#### 2. Headrest inclination

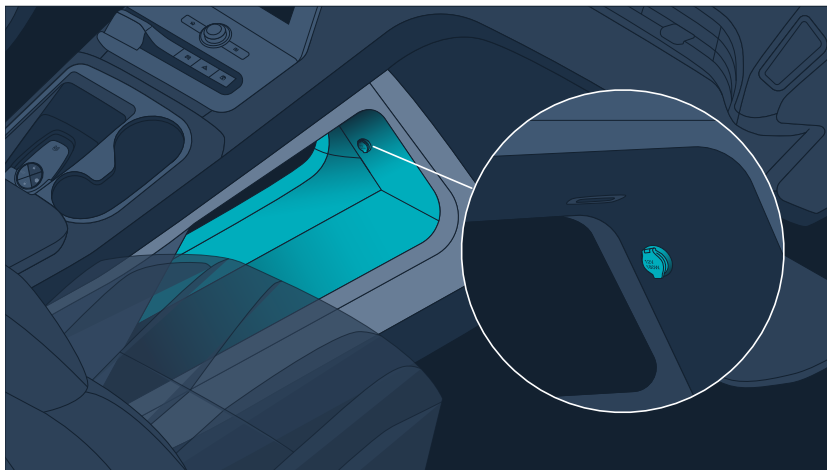
You can adjust the inclination of the headrest by pulling it forward. To reset the headrest to an upright position, pull the headrest to the foremost position and release it.

### Warning

- When driving, your safety belt should be worn correctly. An improper seating position may result in severe injury.
- Do not drive with the backrest reclined to an extreme degree. Doing so may impair the protective function of the seat belt and air bags.
- To provide the best protection, make sure the headrest is set to an appropriate height according to the occupant's height.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving. Doing so may result in injury.
- Do not place any objects under the seat.

### Seat Comfort

When seated, the front passenger can store high heels or a handbag in the storage under the center console, which features two hidden utility hooks (holding up to five kilograms) and a 12V power socket for your convenience.



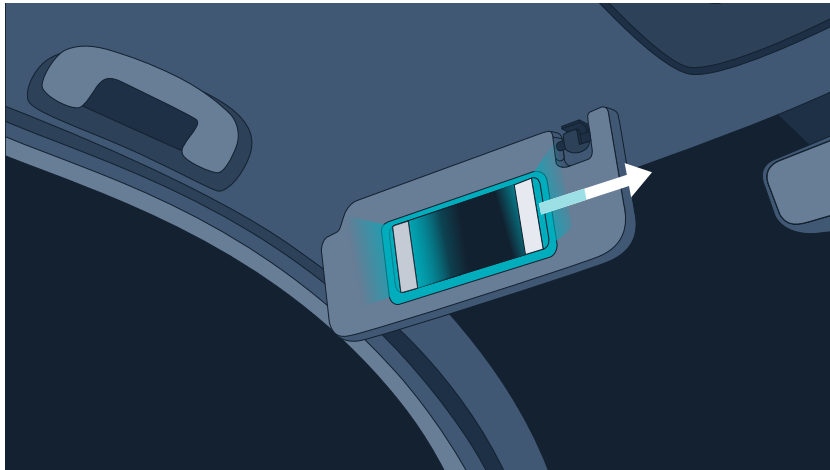
After taking off shoes (especially high heels), the passenger can place their feet on the foot rest. You can adjust the foot rest by pushing the switch in the corresponding direction. When stowed, the foot rest can be used to store documents and newspapers.

To adjust the foot rest, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat Comfort > Passenger Seat Memory**. Press and hold the footrest icon to adjust the footrest. Release the icon and the footrest will stop moving.



### Vanity Mirrors

The vehicle has illuminated vanity mirrors on the sun visors. The mirror automatically lights up when you open the sun visor.



## Digital Control

### Seat Massage

The vehicle offers a variety of features right at your fingertips to provide you, your family and friends with a joyful and comfortable experience.

Lumbar massage is available for the front seats and is set to off by default. Enter the settings page from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat > Massage** to select the desired massage mode (rolling, tapping, or gentle) for the driver or the front passenger.




With this feature on, the current heating level will be saved and the feature will turn off when the driver or front passenger leaves the seat for over 30 seconds; if someone is seated again after 30 seconds to 15 minutes, the feature will turn on automatically and resume the previously saved heating level; if someone is seated after 15 minutes, the feature will not turn on automatically.

### Front Climate Control

#### *Climate Bar*

You can adjust the cabin temperature and air distribution using the climate bar at the bottom of the center display.



1. Vehicle Settings  
To edit vehicle settings including doors, windows and locks, tap to enter Settings.
2. Air circulation  
Displays the current air circulation mode. Tap to switch between Recirculation Mode , Auto Circulation Mode , and Fresh Air Mode .  
With Auto Circulation Mode on, when the outside air is heavily polluted, the vehicle automatically switches from Fresh Air Mode to Recirculation Mode to ensure optimal cabin air quality.
3. Driver's side temperature  
Displays the current temperature on the driver's side. Tap the icon to access the climate control panel.  
Swipe left or right to adjust the driver's side temperature between 15-31 degrees Celsius.

Tap the arrow to adjust the temperature in 0.5-degree increments/decrements.

Tap Sync to apply the driver's side temperature settings to the front passenger and rear seats. To stop temperature sync, manually adjust the temperature of the front passenger or rear seats on the center display.

#### 4. Climate controls

To display the current mode, tap to access the climate control panel.

#### 5. Passenger side temperature

To display the current temperature on the driver's side, tap the icon to access the climate control panel.

Swipe left or right, or up or down to adjust the passenger side temperature between 15-31 degrees Celsius.

Tap the arrow to adjust the temperature in 0.5-degree increments/decrements.

#### 6. Front windshield defrosting/defogging

When in operation, the vehicle will turn on Manual Mode (A/C) for air conditioning, Air on Windshield for air distribution, and Auto Circulation Mode for air circulation to clear up frost and fog as quickly as possible.

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch Cabin Comfort > Auto Defogging, to automatically defog the front windshield when it fogs up.

#### 7. Rear windshield heating

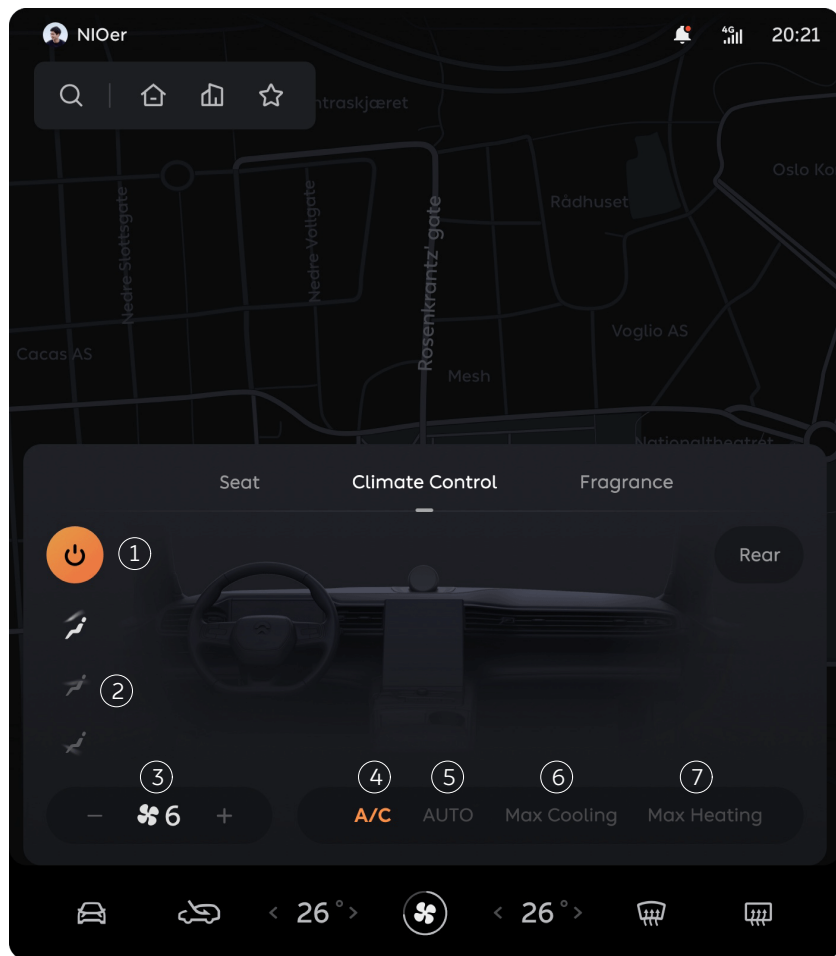
Tap to warm up the rear windshield. This feature automatically turns off after 15 minutes.

You can view the current cabin air quality in the top right corner of the center display, and choose an air purification mode:

- Choose Off to turn air purification off;
- choose Auto to allow the vehicle to automatically adjust the fan speed according to the concentration of PM2.5 in the cabin;
- choose Silent to purify the air in the cabin at a low fan speed.
- To further improve the air quality in the cabin through ionization, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Cabin Comfort > Ionizer**.

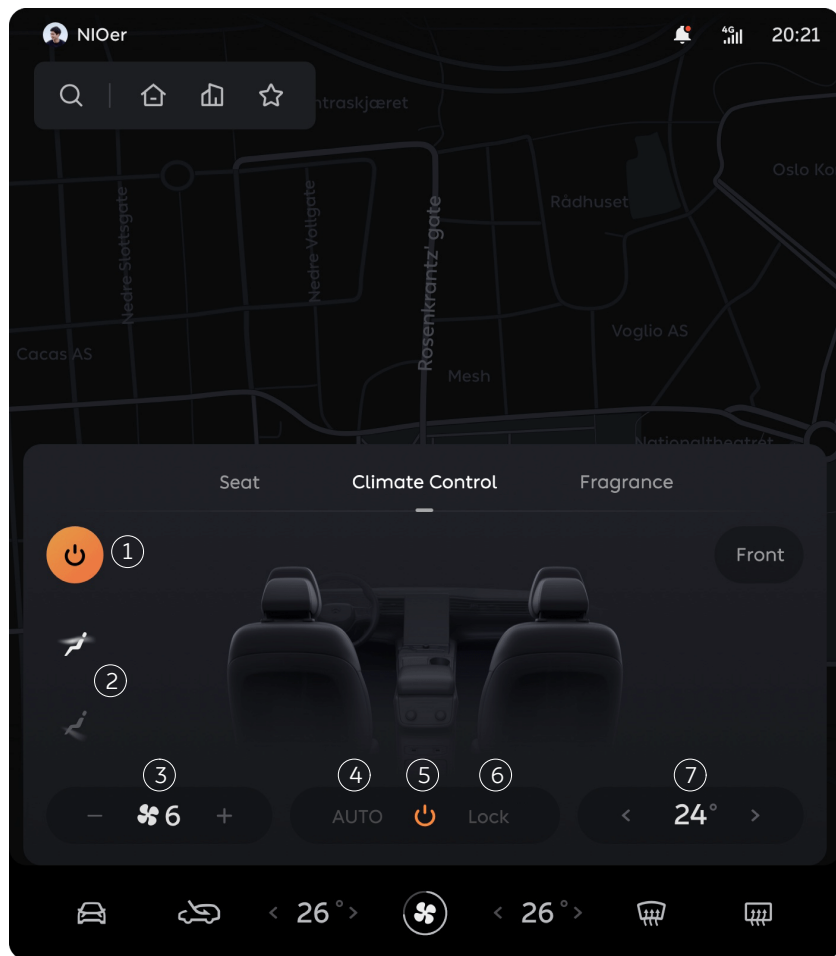
***Climate Control Panel***

To adjust the front and rear temperatures, tap the temperature or climate control icon in the climate bar to access the climate control panel.





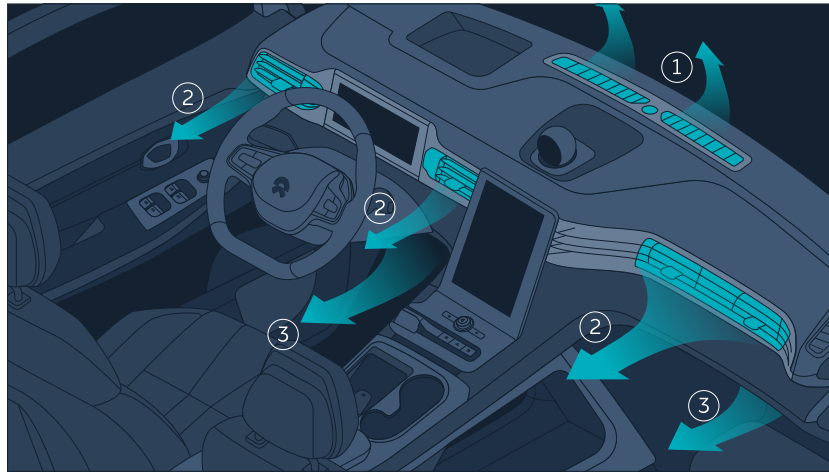
1. Turning the front climate control on and off  
Tap the power button to turn the front climate control on.  
Tap a second time to turn the front climate control off. In this case, the rear climate control will also be turned off.
2. Air distribution  
If AUTO is off, tap the corresponding area to manually control the direction of the air flow.
3. Front fan speed  
Tap the “+” or “-” icon to adjust the front fan speed. The front vents operate at eight speed levels.
4. Manual Mode (A/C)  
Tap to turn on Manual Mode (A/C). In this case, you can manually adjust the fan speed and temperature for cooling or heating.  
If you turn it off, the vehicle switches to Fresh Air Mode.
5. AUTO Mode  
Tap to turn on AUTO Mode. This automatically adjusts the temperature, fan speed, air distribution and air circulation of the front and rear seats according to the temperature you set.  
Tap a second time to turn off AUTO Mode. The air conditioning status will remain unchanged.
6. Max Cooling Mode  
Tap to turn on the max setting for cooling. If Manual Mode (A/C) is also on, the vehicle will automatically switch to Recirculation Mode with the fan speed set to the highest level and face-level vents on in order to cool the cabin more rapidly in hot weather.  
Tap a second time to turn Max Cooling Mode off and restore the air conditioning to the previous settings.
7. Max Heating Mode  
Tap to turn on the max setting for heating. If Manual Mode (A/C) is also on, the vehicle will automatically switch to Recirculation Mode with the fan speed set to the highest level and foot-level vents on in order to warm up the cabin more rapidly in cold weather.  
Tap a second time to turn Max Heating Mode off and restore the air conditioning to the previous settings.



1. Turning the climate control on and off  
Tap to turn on or off both front and rear climate control.
2. Air distribution  
If AUTO is off, tap the corresponding area to manually control the direction of the air flow.
3. Rear fan speed  
Tap the “+” or “-” icon to adjust the rear fan speed. The rear vents operate at six speed levels.
4. AUTO Mode  
Press to turn on AUTO Mode. This automatically adjusts the temperature, fan speed, and air distribution of the rear cabin according to the temperature you set.  
Press a second time to turn off AUTO Mode and the air conditioning status will remain unchanged.
5. Turning on and off rear climate control  
Tap to turn on or off rear climate control.
6. Panel lock  
Tap to turn on the panel lock. In this case, the rear climate control settings can only be adjusted on the center display.
7. Adjusting rear temperature  
Swipe left or right to adjust the rear temperature between 15-31 degrees Celsius.  
Tap the arrow to adjust the temperature in 0.5-degree increments/decrements.





### ***Adjusting Air Vents***



The front air vents are located below the windshield, and both on and underneath the instrument panel.



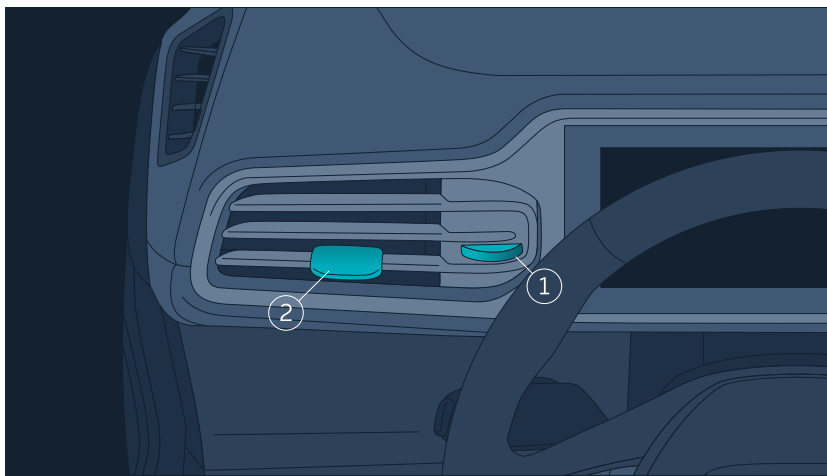
1. Front windshield vents
2. Face-level vents
3. Foot-level vents

The following is a list of air distribution modes available at present:

Icon	Mode
	<p style="text-align: center;">Air on windshield</p> <p>If used together with a high fan speed, it quickly defogs and defrosts the front windshield in cold and humid weather conditions.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Air on face</p> <p>Heats or cools the front cabin.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Air on feet</p> <p>Heats or cools the footwell areas.</p>
	<p style="text-align: center;">Air on windshield and feet</p>

	Defrosts the front windshield while heating or cooling the footwell areas.
	Air on face and feet Conditions the front cabin including the footwell areas to a comfortable temperature.
	Air on windshield, face and feet Defrosts the front windshield while conditioning the front cabin including the footwell areas to a comfortable temperature.

The front air vents can be adjusted individually as follows:



1. Fan speed  
Roll the thumbwheel away from the air vent to turn the vent off. Roll the thumbwheel towards the air vent to increase the fan speed.
2. Air flow direction  
Move the control from side to side or up and down to change the direction of the airflow. Direct the air vent on the instrument panel towards the side window to remove fog; direct the air vent towards the passenger seat to cool the cabin in hot weather.

### ***Tips for Using Air Conditioning***

- Maintain and replace the air filter according to the specified service intervals to keep the air in the cabin fresh. After replacement, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Cabin Comfort > Air Filter Reminder** to reset the reminder.
- Keep the grille clear of any obstructions (e.g. leaves, snow).

- If the vehicle is parked in extremely hot weather conditions, turn the air conditioning on and open the windows simultaneously to rapidly cool the cabin.
- In hot weather conditions, when the vehicle is in PARK and the air conditioning is operating, it is normal for condensation from the cooling system to drip and form a puddle of water under the front of your vehicle. Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Cabin Comfort > Auto Moist Removal**. When you leave and lock the vehicle, if residual water is detected in the AC system, the blower will automatically turn on to maximum speed to get rid of moist in the evaporator and air duct, and limit the bacteria growth in moist environment. You can choose from two modes, Standard (the blower continues to operate for three minutes) and Strong (the blower continues to operate for 20 minutes).

### Note

- MicroAir pro Tect line/ microAir blue with surface disinfection properties by means of a functional filter layer based on fruit extract( active ingredient CAS-Nr. 77-92-9 and/ or 5949-29-1) for use in air handling/ air conditioning systems: Bacteriostatic and fungistatic surface disinfection properties against a multitude of gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria, yeast and fungi as well as viral surface disinfection properties( excellent antiviral efficacy for influenza virus H1N1 and corona virus HCoV 229E according to ISO 18184:2019) to prevent virus shedding/ viral re-aerosolization.No additional precautions to be taken when placing the filter on the market.
- URD Coating is a hydrophilic chemical which contains biocidal products. The evaporator could be protected by the hydrophilic coating, with surface disinfection properties by means of a functional layer based on active substances TBZ(CAS:148-79-8), SPT(CAS:3811-73-2), ZPT(Cas:13463-41-7) and/or OIT(Cas:26530-20-1). The coating also shows great antimildew properties for Aspergillus Niger, Penicillium sp. and antimicrobial properties for Escherichia coli and Staphylococcus aureus.No additional precautions to be taken when placing the evaporator on the market.

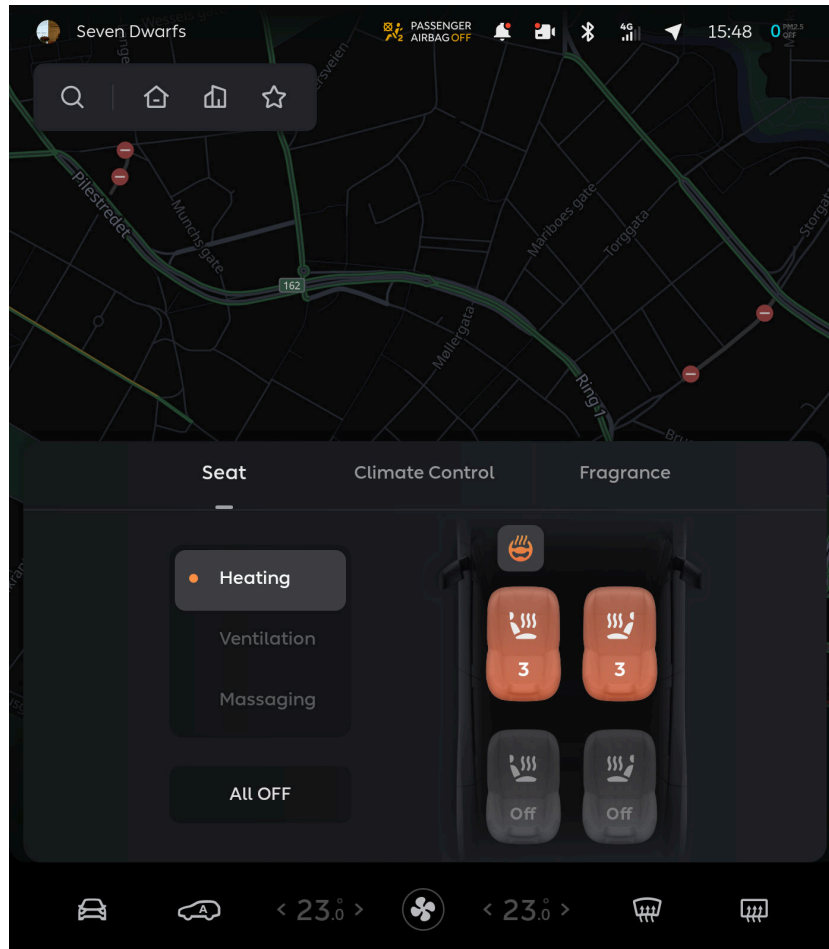
### Seat Heating

Turn seat heating on in cold weather to enjoy a cozy and warm seating experience.

The seat heating is set to off by default. To turn it on, visit Quick Access from the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat**. You can choose to heat the driver's

seat or front passenger seat on this page. When the weather is hot, the vehicle will suggest you to “switch to seat ventilation with one tap” on the center display, after which you can choose to accept or decline by tapping the button.

For rear seats, you can choose to warm up the left or right seat in the second row.



Seat heating operates at three levels. It can reach the preconditioned level within 10 minutes and then maintain the same temperature.

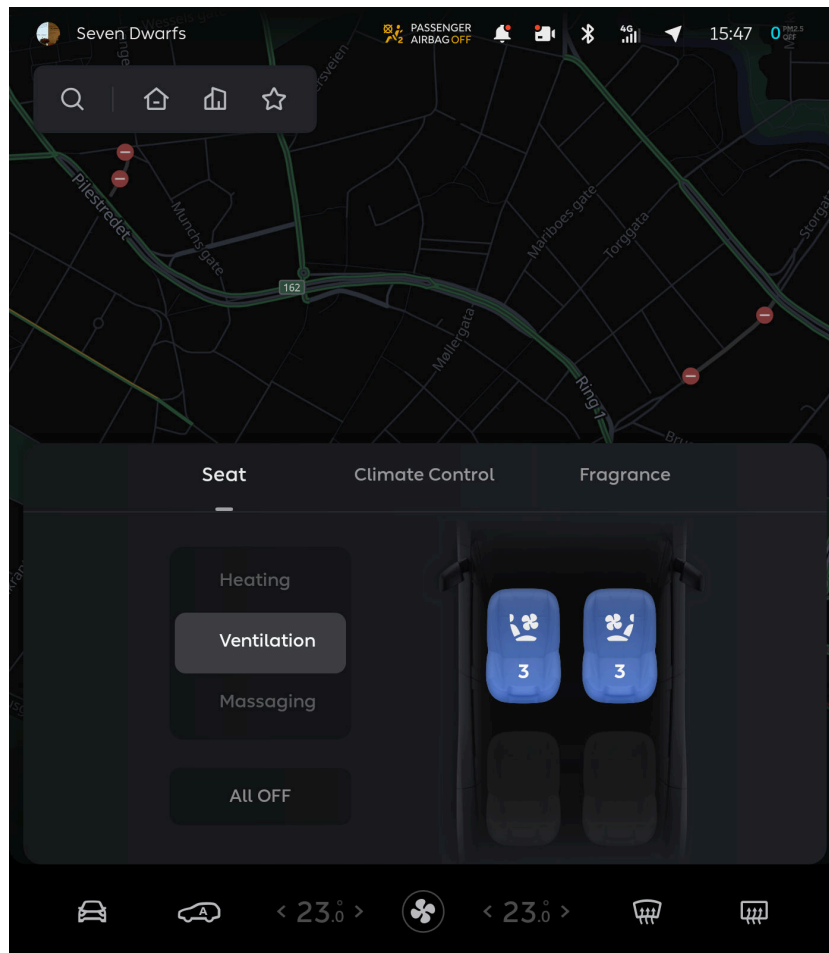
With this feature on, the current heating level will be saved and the feature will turn off when the driver or front passenger leaves the seat for over 30 seconds; if someone is seated again after 30 seconds to 15 minutes, the feature will turn on automatically and resume the previously saved heating level; if someone is seated after 15 minutes, the feature will not turn on automatically.

### Seat Ventilation

Turn on seat ventilation in hot weather to enjoy a cool and refreshing experience.

The seat ventilation is set to off by default. To turn it on, visit Quick Access from the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat**. Seat ventilation is available for both the driver's seat and front passenger seat and operates at three levels. When the

weather is cold, the vehicle will suggest to “switch to seat heating with one tap” on the center display, after which you can choose to turn seat heating on or off by tapping the button.



With this feature on, the current heating level will be saved and the feature will turn off when the driver or front passenger leaves the seat for over 30 seconds; if someone is seated again after 30 seconds to 15 minutes, the feature will turn on automatically and resume the previously saved heating level; if someone is seated after 15 minutes, the feature will not turn on automatically.

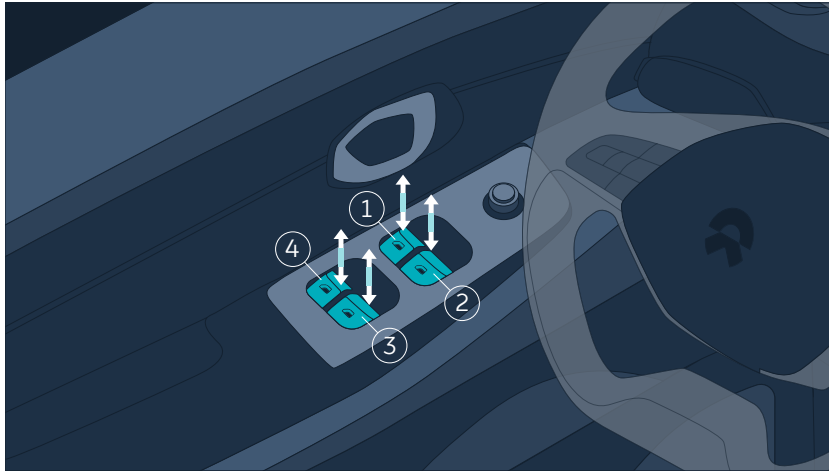
### Steering Wheel Heating

Turn steering wheel heating on in cold weather to enjoy a comfortable driving experience. To turn it on, enter the Quick Access interface from the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Seat > Heating > Steering Wheel Heating**. The steering wheel gradually warms up to a comfortable level within 10 minutes and then maintains that level.



## Window Controls

Use the window switches on the four doors to open or close windows. The driver's door has switches to control all of the windows.



1. Driver's side window
2. Passenger side window
3. Second row window – right
4. Second row window – left

Each of the other three doors also has a switch on the armrest to control the corresponding window.



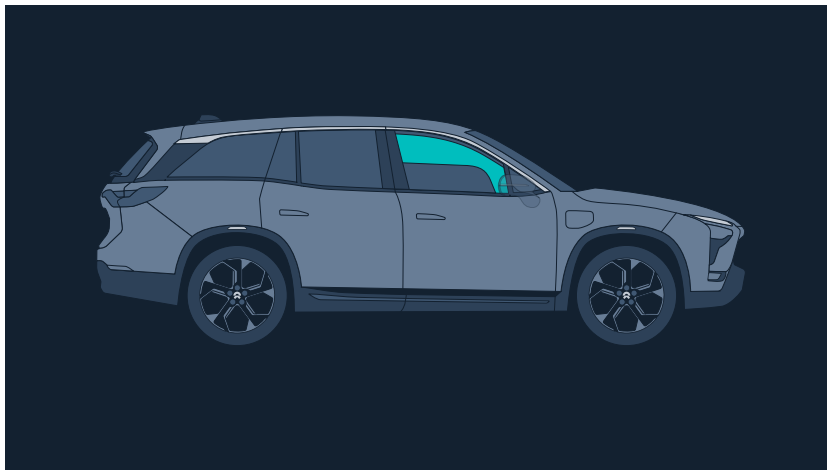
To partially lower a window, gently press the switch and release it once the window reaches the intended position; to lower a window fully, press the switch all the way down and immediately release it (Quick Window Opening). To partially raise a window, gently pull the switch and release it once the window reaches the intended position; to raise a window fully, pull the switch all the way up and

immediately release it (Quick Window Closing). To stop the window from moving at any time, press or pull the switch again.

When the vehicle is in PARK and the driver's seat is unoccupied (with the doors, hood and liftgate closed), you can use the smart key fob to control the windows. To fully open all windows, press the unlock button and then within three seconds press and hold the button again (for 1.5 seconds); to fully close all windows, press the lock button, and then within three seconds press and hold the button again (for 1.5 seconds); if you release the unlock or lock button, the windows will stop at their current position.

All four windows feature anti-pinch protection. When an obstruction prevents the window from closing, the window will stop closing and move down slightly.

The window's anti-pinch detection area is as follows:



### **Warning**

Before closing a window, ensure that all occupants, especially children, keep their heads and hands away from the window's opening. Although the windows feature anti-pinch protection, they may cause injury if you do not pay attention or close the windows in a reckless manner.

Under the following conditions, anti-pinch protection for the corresponding window will be temporarily disabled and Quick Window Closing won't be available (but will automatically be restored after 10 seconds):

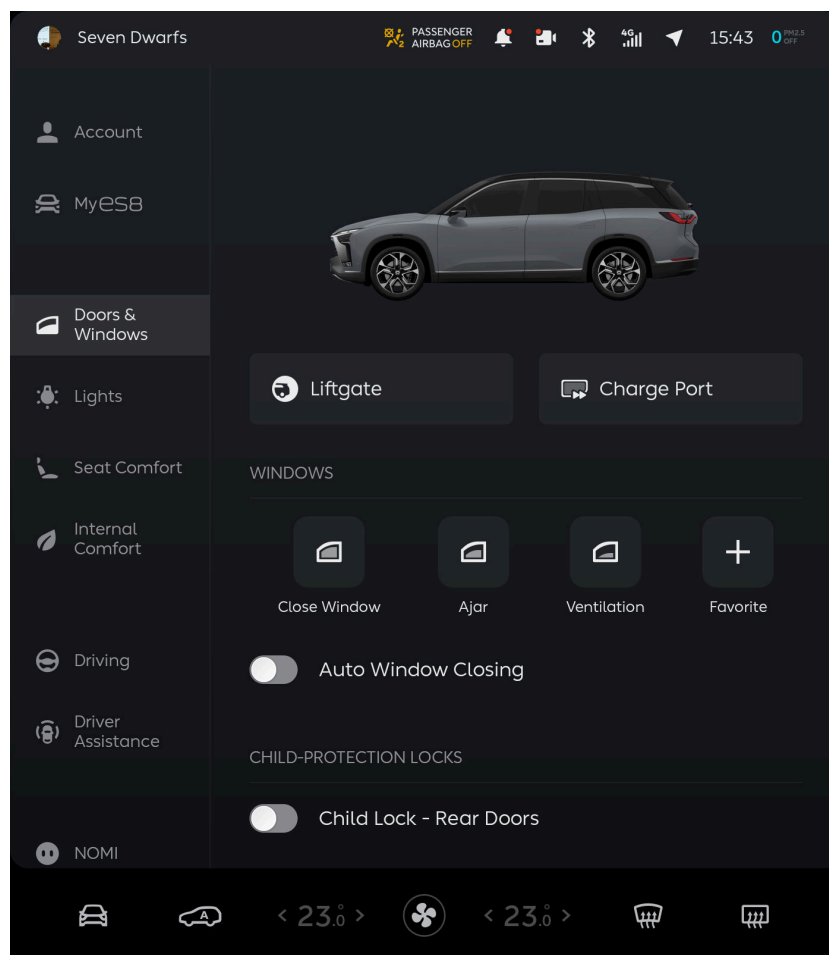
1. The window is frozen, which stops the window from moving up.
2. Anti-pinch protection is activated three times within 15 seconds, which stops the window from moving up.

If a power window does not function and anti-pinch protection fails (e.g. due to restarting the low voltage battery after a power failure), you can initialize it as follows:

1. Pull the corresponding switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the switch, after which the window will move down slightly. In this case, pull the switch again until the window is fully closed.
3. Press the switch to lower the window until it is fully open.

## Controlling Windows on the Center Display

To control all windows, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch Windows.

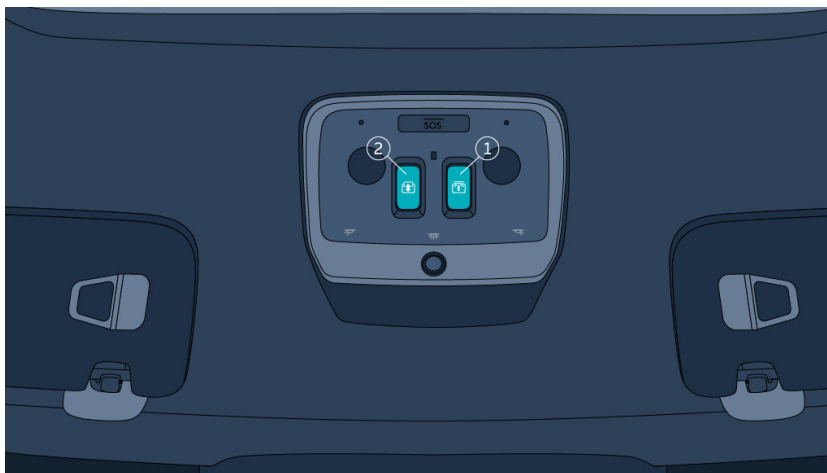


- Close  
Tap to close all windows.
- Ajar  
When turned on, the left front and right rear windows are 10% open, while the right front and left rear windows are closed.

- Ventilation  
When turned on, all windows are fully open.
- Favorite  
Press and hold to save the current positions of all four windows. Next time you tap Memory again, the vehicle will automatically adjust the windows to the saved positions.

### Sunroof and Sunshade Controls

The vehicle features a panoramic sunroof, with switches located on the headliner for front occupants to conveniently control the sunroof and sunshade.



1. Sunshade switch  
Press the front or rear part of the switch to fully open or close the sunshade respectively. Press the switch to stop the sunshade from moving at any time.
2. Sunroof switch  
Press the rear part of the switch to flip up the sunroof. Press a second time to fully open the sunroof. To fully close the sunroof, press the front part of the switch. Press the switch to stop the sunroof from moving at any time.

### Note

- The vehicle opens the sunshade simultaneously when opening the sunroof. However, it does not open the sunshade when tilting the sunroof.
- If the sunroof is partially opened, the sunshade will move to the same position when it is closed.

When the vehicle is in PARK and the driver's seat is unoccupied (with the doors, hood and liftgate closed), you can use the smart key fob to control the sunroof

and sunshade. To fully open them, press the unlock button and then within three seconds press and hold the button again (for 1.5 seconds); to fully close them, press the lock button and then within three seconds press and hold the button again (for 1.5 seconds). If you release the unlock or lock button, both the sunroof and sunshade will stop moving.

The sunroof features anti-pinch protection. When there is an obstruction preventing the sunroof from closing, the sunroof will stop closing and move backwards slightly.

If a power failure occurs when the sunroof is moving, you can initialize the sunroof as follows after powering on your vehicle:

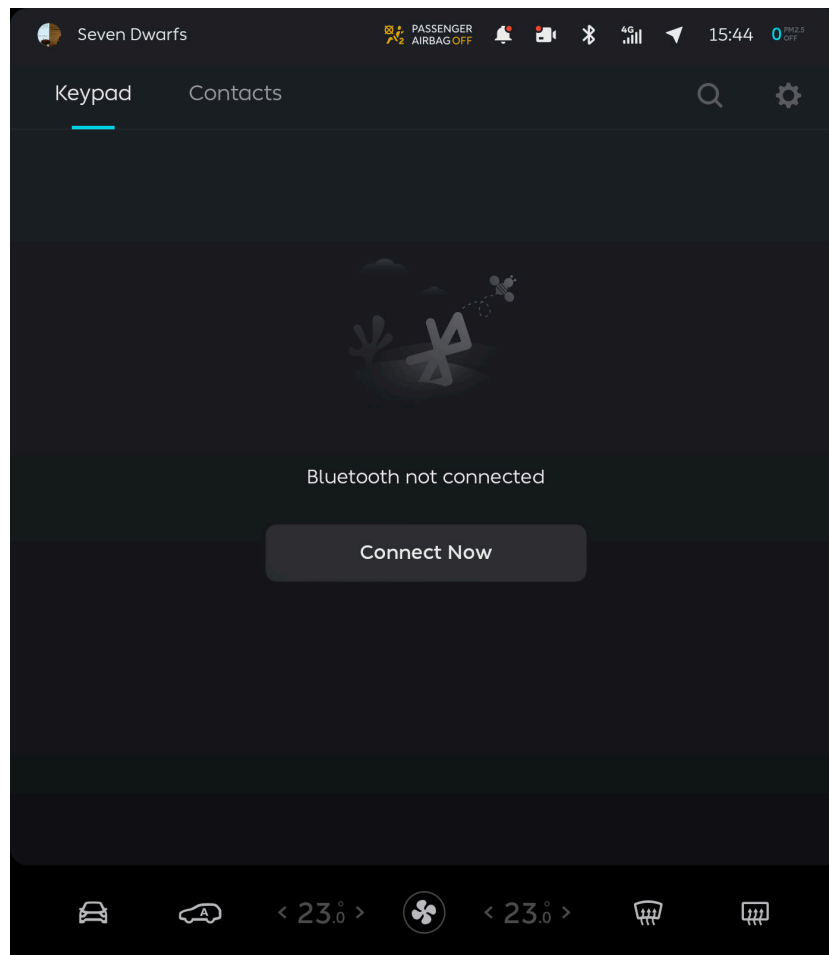
1. Press the front part of the switch forward to fully close both the sunroof and sunshade (the sunshade moves simultaneously with the sunroof during initialization). Then, press and hold the switch until the sunroof and sunshade move forward to the furthest possible position and then move back a little.
2. Release the switch, and then press and hold the front part of the switch again within six seconds. The sunroof and sunshade will move back to the edge of the anti-pinch area, and then move forward until fully closed.

### **Warning**

- When closing the sunroof, all occupants must keep their heads and hands away from the sunroof's opening. Although the sunroof features anti-pinch protection, it may cause injury if you do not pay attention or close it in a reckless manner.
- Do not place any objects on the sunroof. Doing so may result in injury if an object falls when you open or close the sunroof.

### **Making a Phone Call**

Once your phone is paired with the vehicle via Bluetooth, you can make calls after allowing the vehicle to access your phone's contacts and recent calls. You can access Phone from the home page or application launcher.



After syncing your phone's contacts and recent calls to the vehicle, you can select a contact or recent call, or directly dial a number to make a call. During the call, you can switch between Private Mode and Hands-Free Mode.

On the Phone page, you can view recent calls, switch to other Bluetooth phones, or hide recent calls.

### Switching Call Modes

The vehicle can automatically switch between call modes according to the current call status and Bluetooth connection:

- During a phone call, you can switch between Private Mode and Hands-Free Mode either on your phone or the center display.
- If you park and leave the vehicle with a phone call still in progress, Hands-Free Mode will automatically switch to Private Mode.

### Steering Wheel Controls

You can use the buttons on the right side of the steering wheel to easily control media, drive mode, vehicle status and other features.

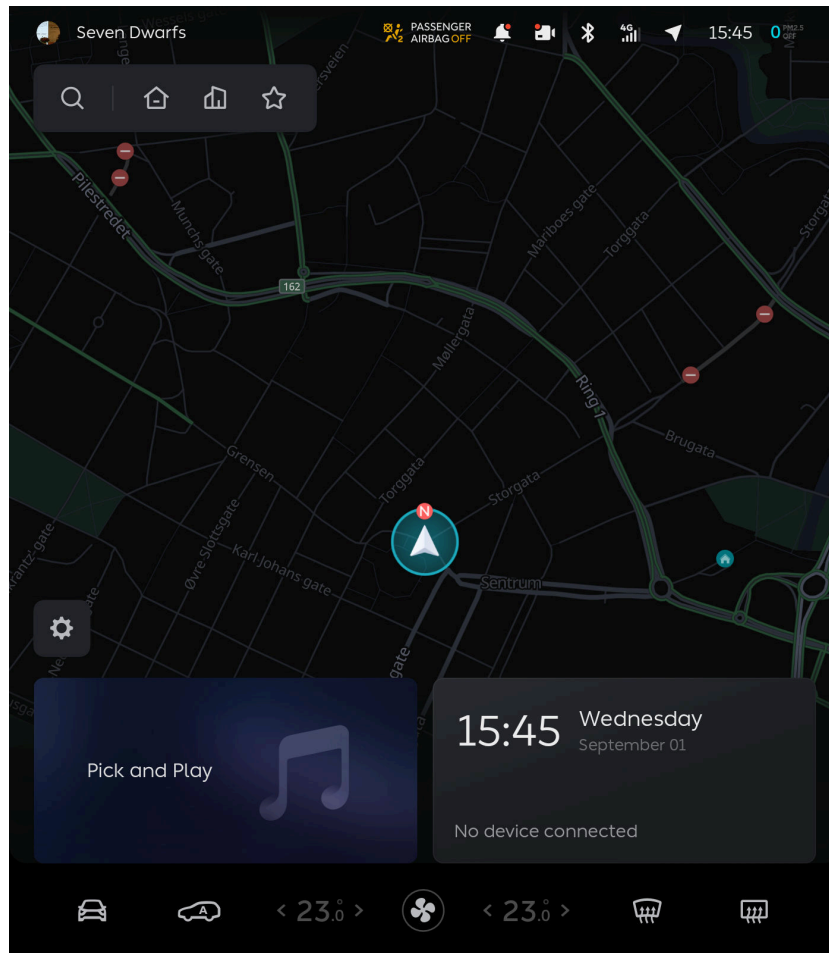


1. **Arrow buttons**  
Press the corresponding button to switch to the desired option.  
When playing music, press the left or right arrow button to play the previous or next track; to control the volume, press the up or down arrow button.
2. **OK button**  
Press to turn a selected feature on.  
When playing music, press the OK button to pause the music.
3. **Menu button**  
Press the menu button to switch between options (including media, drive mode, and vehicle status). Press and hold the menu button to directly access to the Child Lock, Quick Video Record, and 360° Surround View. Enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Press and hold the menu button** to select from the quick controls.
4. **Voice command button**  
Press to activate NOMI, after which you can interact with NOMI and access multiple vehicle features via voice commands.

### **Personalized Infotainment**

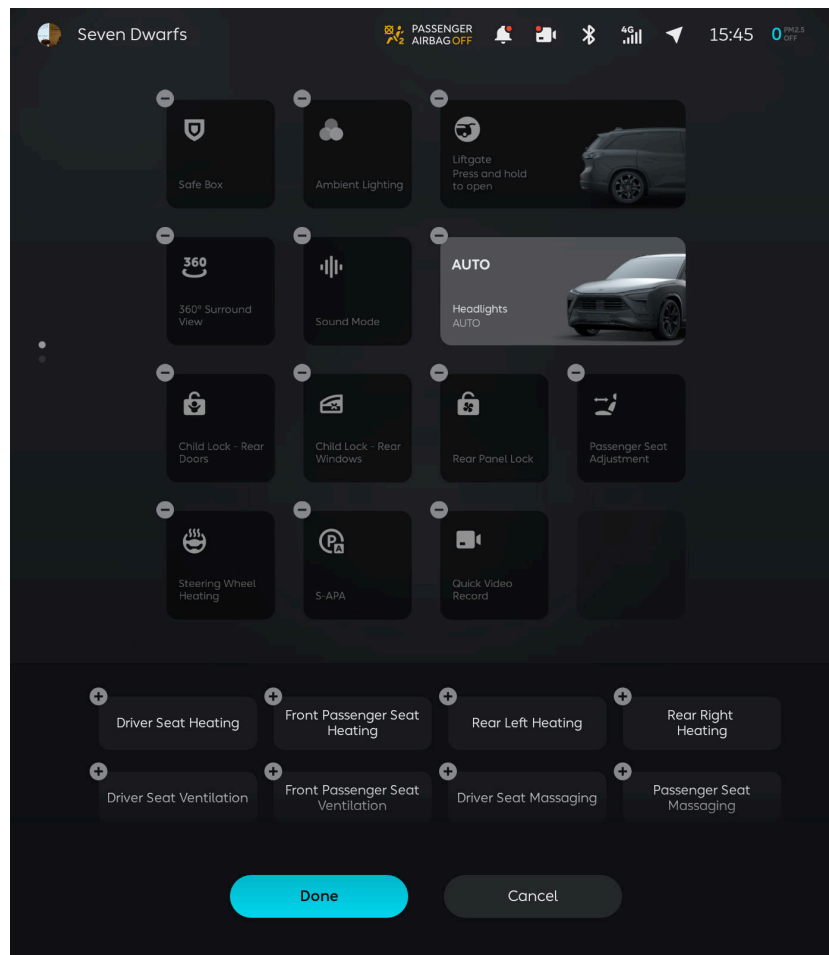
When you or an authorized user logs in, the vehicle can seamlessly access rich and customized content, such as music, navigation, radio, etc. You can also personalize and save your favorite content to your account. The vehicle will automatically load any saved content the next time you log in. When you switch between different accounts, the vehicle will display personalized content saved to the corresponding account.

You can access the desired features (e.g. media, navigation) from the home page.



Swipe right on the home page to enter Quick Access, use common features, and customize shortcuts.





The buttons on the center console allow you to conveniently use the center display:



1. Home  
To go back to the home page, press the Home button or pinch four or five fingers together on any page on the center display.
2. Volume  
Press the button to mute the center display (including NOMI); rotate the button to control the volume.

### 3. Application launcher

Press the button to enter the application launcher and view all applications, including media, phone, navigation, and settings.

### 4. Quick Access

Press the button to enter Quick Access and choose a drive mode.


## **Media**

Tap Media on the home page and select your preferred radio or music streaming service:

- Choose Tidal to search and play your favorite music, and add track or album to Favorites
- Choose Radio to play and add radio programs to Favorites.
- Insert a USB drive to play music from it.
- After connecting a mobile device to the vehicle via Bluetooth, you can choose Bluetooth Music to play music from the device.

To control media volume, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Sound**. Tap Sound Mode to set the cabin's sound field performance. If necessary (i.e. when your child is sleeping in the rear seats), you can also turn on Rear Mute.

## **Navigation**

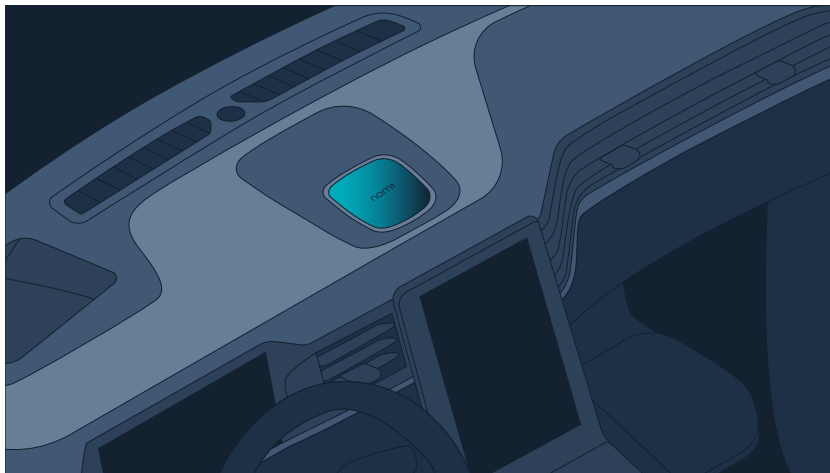
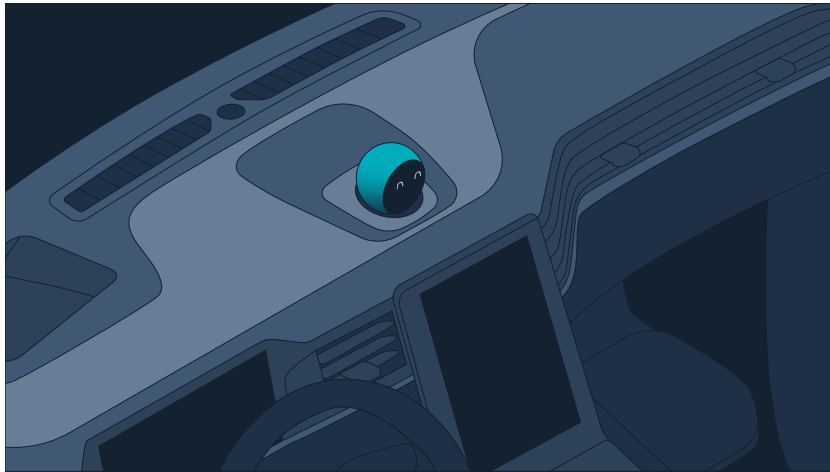
To select a route to a location, visit Navigation on the center display. Tap  to set navigation settings including route preference, voice navigation, and map display.

## **Weather**

Tap Weather on the home page or in the application launcher to view the 7-day forecast for your city or the destination you will travel to.

## **NOMI**

NOMI, NIO's in-car AI assistant, is located on the upper instrument panel. You and other occupants can directly communicate with NOMI and control certain features through voice commands. NOMI is an intimate companion for your journey.



When you enter the vehicle (with the driver's door closed or the brake pedal pressed once), NOMI will greet you warmly. To control certain features via NOMI, say the wake word (which is "Hey, NOMI" by default) or press the voice command button on the right side of the steering wheel to wake NOMI. After NOMI responds to your call (e.g. by saying "I'm here"), you can give a command. When a conversation ends or a task is completed, NOMI automatically switches to Standby Mode. You can wake NOMI anytime you want.

To customize a wake word, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **NOMI > Set Wake Word**. It will then be saved to your account and updated automatically the next time you are seated. You need to add "Hey" before a wake word with two Chinese characters; if the customized wake word consists of three to six Chinese characters, you can wake NOMI up by simply saying the word.

You can turn on the continued conversation for NOMI by entering Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and tapping **NOMI > Continued Conversation**. With its on, when NOMI is waked up by an occupant, the conversation can be continued in 20 seconds without using the wake word. If another occupant wants

to communicate with NOMI, the occupant can reactivate NOMI. Tap **Immersive Voice Conversation** to hide the transcription of your and NOMI's speech. Tell NOMI how we're doing by saying "I want to give my feedback". NOMI will record your feedback for up to 30 seconds and send it to our product expert team, together with necessary information, including your vehicle ID, account ID and time stamp. The recording will be sent after the countdown.

Category	Feature (more easter eggs coming soon)	Recommended commands
Basic features	Wake NOMI up	Hey, NOMI.
	Introduce NOMI	What are you capable of?
	Offer a suggestion	I have a suggestion. I have some feedback for you.
	Dismiss NOMI	Cancel/exit/goodbye.
	Do Not Disturb Mode (When turned on, NOMI will not speak spontaneously but will still respond to your requests)	Do Not Disturb on. Don't disturb me. Do Not Disturb off. Don't oversleep. Wake up.
Media	Adjust volume	Set music/media volume to maximum. Set volume to 60%/minimum/50%. Mute.
	Play music	Play a song for me. Play xxx. Next track. Loop single song/Repeat playlist/ Shuffle play. Add this song to Favorites. I don't want to listen to XX's songs. Play a song from USB.
Phone	Make a call	Call XXX.
	Answer a call	Answer/decline.
Entertainment	Tell a joke.	Tell me a joke.
	Selfie	Take a photo.

		Take another photo.
Navigation	Navigate to a place	I need navigation. I need to charge. I'm hungry. I want to eat hot pot.
	Plan route	Number one. Take me to the nearest. Reroute.
	Save address or add to Favorites	Edit home address. Save current location.
	Change map settings	Zoom in on map. Switch to 2D map. Heading up.
	View or end navigation	How much longer to work? How's the traffic? End navigation. Stop navigation.
Climate controls	Adjust temperature	Set (driver's side/passenger side/rear) temperature to 26 degrees Celsius.
	Adjust fan speed	Lower driver's side fan speed a bit. Set fan speed to highest.
	Turn climate control on/off	Turn (rear) climate control on. Turn AUTO Mode on.
	Adjust air distribution and air circulation	Air on face, air on feet, air on windshield, air on feet and windshield, air on face and feet. (Turn on/off) front/rear defrosting. Turn Recirculation Mode on.
	Air purification	Turn on air purification. What's the PM2.5 level inside? Silence the air purifier.
Windows	Window Controls	Open/close (driver's, passenger, left rear, right rear, all) window(s). Windows fully open. Open the window by 20%. Open rear windows a crack.

	Control sunroof and sunshade	Open the sunroof. Close the sunshade. Open the sunroof halfway. Open the sunroof to 50%.
Seats	Seat ventilation	Turn on (driver's/passenger) seat ventilation. Turn down seat ventilation a bit.
	Seat heating	Turn on (driver's/passenger/rear left/rear right) seat heating. Turn up the seat heating a bit.
	Seat massage	Turn on (driver's/passenger) seat massage. Increase the intensity a little. Set seat massage to level 3.
Steering wheel	Steering wheel heating	Turn on steering wheel heating.
Lights	Ambient lighting	Turn on ambient lighting. Change the ambient light color.
Controls on center display	Adjust screen brightness	Dim the center display a bit. Raise the brightness to the maximum.
	Bluetooth/Wi-Fi/Hotspot	Turn on/off (Bluetooth/Wi-Fi/Hotspot).
	Applications	Return to desktop. Go to Media/Phone/Navigation/Music/Weather/Settings.

### Warning

- Keep NOMI and its base away from any liquids, acid or alkaline solvents, dirt, fibers, or magnetic materials.
- Do not disassemble or repair NOMI and its base.
- Do not push, pull or twist NOMI, or obstruct its movement.
- Do not attempt to remove NOMI and its base.

### Comfort Features

When the vehicle is in PARK (without being locked from the outside) and the driver's seat is unoccupied, occupants can still enter the vehicle and access certain

comfort features. The feature will automatically turn off after ten hours without any operations. To continue using a comfort feature, open any door, press the brake pedal, or sit in the driver's seat with the driver's door closed.

Comfort features mainly include:

- Driver's/passenger seat adjustments
- Steering wheel adjustments
- Wireless charging
- Climate controls
- Seat massage, heating and ventilation
- Steering wheel heating
- Window, sunroof and sunshade controls
- Reading lights and ambient lighting
- Entertainment and navigation
- NOMI

### **Intelligent Fragrance System**

An independent fragrance system is provided for you and your family. You can select the desired scent to enjoy a refreshing and pleasant experience while driving.

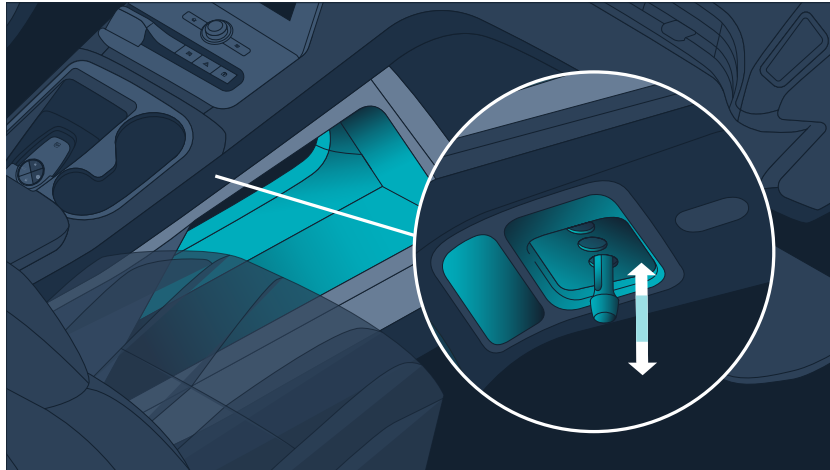
A variety of fragrances are offered, including Solar, Stellar, Wild and Haven. You can insert three fragrance cartridges with different scents into the fragrance holder located under the center console. You can replace the cartridges according to your preference.

To insert and replace the fragrance cartridges:

1. Remove the cover of the fragrance cartridge, insert the cartridge facing up in the holder, and then press the bottom of the cartridge.

#### **Caution**

Do not rotate the fragrance cartridge when inserting it.



2. The cartridge will then be held in place by a magnet placed inside the holder.
3. When the fragrance cartridge is in place, the vehicle will notify you that the fragrance system is available and indicate the exact scent of each cartridge on the center display.
4. To replace the fragrance cartridge, hold the bottom of the cartridge with your fingers and pull it out slowly.

To turn the fragrance system on or off, control the intensity of a fragrance or select a different scent, successfully insert the fragrance cartridge and swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and choose **Fragrance**.

### Warning

- Keep the fragrance cartridge out of the reach of children to prevent them from swallowing it accidentally, as this may be detrimental to their health.
- Do not allow your child to insert their finger into the fragrance holder. Doing so may result in injury.
- To ensure your safety, do not insert or replace the fragrance cartridge while driving.
- If you or any passenger feels discomfort, disable the fragrance system immediately.

### Caution

- Please check the expiration date before inserting the fragrance cartridge. The fragrance has a shelf life of one year if the bottle remains unopened; after the bottle is opened, the fragrance can last three months. Stop using the fragrance and replace it after it expires.



- Some fragrances (e.g. Wild) have a stimulating effect. Please use it only when needed.
- When replacing the fragrance cartridge, keep your hands clean to ensure the fragrance system can function normally after it is replaced.
- A magnet is placed in each fragrance holder. Keep your smart phone, tablet and other electronic devices away from the holder to avoid any interference between electronic devices and the fragrance system.
- Chemical reactions may occur between the fragrance and organic substances. Keep the ceramic fragrance stuck in the fragrance cartridge and away from all plastic parts.

### Note

- The experience with the fragrance system may vary depending to the cabin temperature, fan speed, and user's physical condition.
- Only purchase genuine ceramic fragrance sticks and avoid damaging the fragrance cartridge to ensure its quality.
- If the fragrance cartridge cannot be identified after it is inserted, please try again.

### Tide

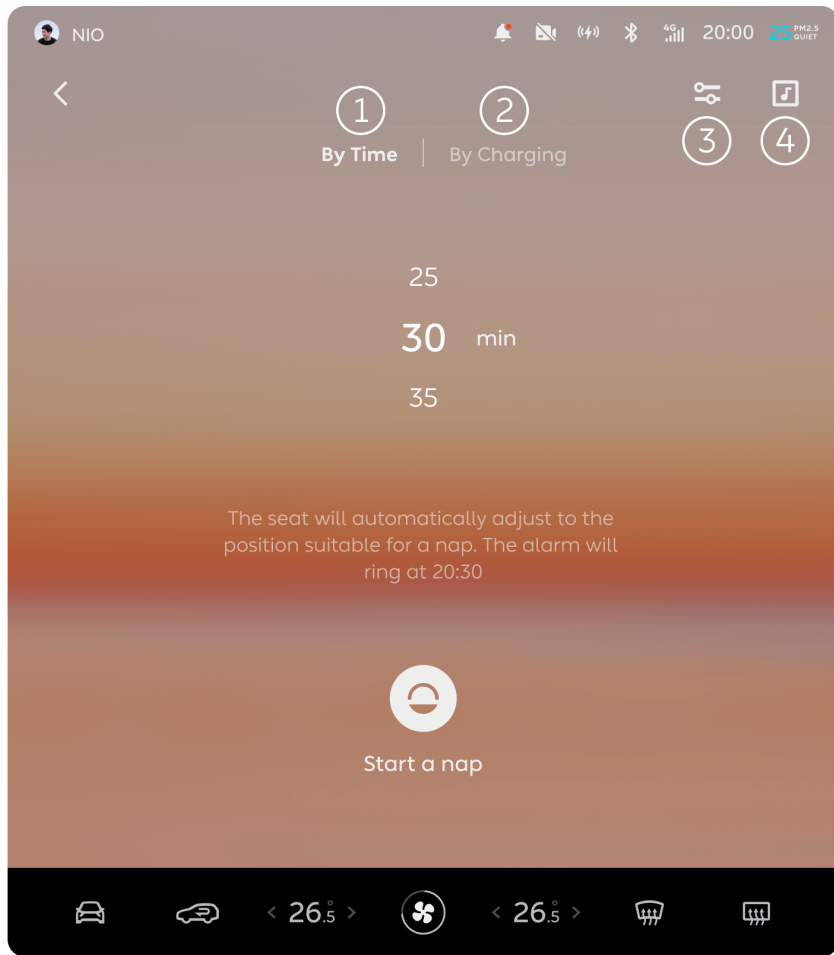
Tide is a physical and psychological health app that helps you sleep, meditate, relax, and stay focused. Inspired by travels, nature and meditation, Tide provides a wealth of audio resources such as sounds of nature and meditation exercises to help you escape from the fast-paced world for a quiet space of peace, where you can meditate for a while to relax your mind and sleep better with less anxiety and stress while staying focused and calm.

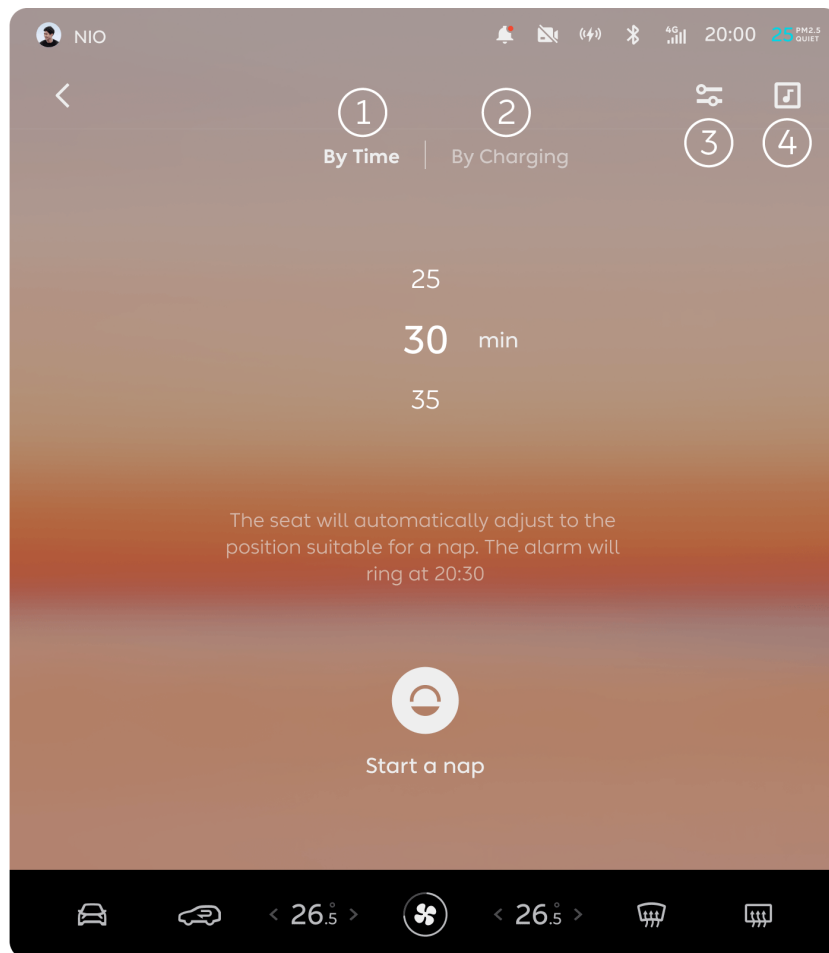
Tide offers three modes, namely Nap, Meditation, and Breathing.

#### ***Nap Mode***

You and your family can fall asleep to the sounds of nature in the vehicle and wake up to a soft alarm to embrace a beautiful world.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Nap** page where sound scenarios and alarm time for the nap can be set and memorized for the specific account.





1. Nap by Time: You can set a nap countdown to wake you up at the set time. You can also choose to continue or end the nap upon the alarm.
2. Nap by Charge: If the vehicle is in the DC charging process, you can set a battery level within the charging limit to have a nap until the set level is reached.
3. More settings are provided, including volumes and timed playback of sleep aid sounds, alarm clock sounds and volumes, and seat position restoration switch upon the end of nap.
4. Set sleep aid sound scenarios.

After the vehicle enters the Nap Mode, the in-vehicle lighting will be turned off, with windows and doors closed and locked, the climate control will be automatically set to the temperature comfortable for a nap, and the air purifier will be automatically turned on. If you sit in a front seat, the seat will automatically move to the relax position (if set previously) or the default position. NOMI will enter the Do Not Disturb Mode to create a relaxing atmosphere for you. After the nap ends, the vehicle will restore the settings before the nap.

## Caution

- Before entering the Nap Mode, make sure the vehicle is in PARK and not in the power swap mode.
- Close all the doors and the liftgate before starting the Nap Mode to ensure safety.
- A fault with the climate control system may compromise the comfort during the nap.
- When the front seats are moving backward at the beginning of the nap, pay attention to the space for occupants on rear seats. If the long track engages for the front passenger seat, the front passenger seat will not automatically move after the nap starts.
- If the vehicle is not being charged, make sure that its remaining range is not less than 60 km. The time alarm will be triggered automatically when the remaining range is less than 30 km, and the charging alarm will be triggered automatically when the charging connector is disconnected or the charging runs into a fault, to remind you to check the battery level.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the Nap Mode under certain circumstances, for example, when the vehicle is not in PARK, the battery has a risk of ignition, a software update is in progress, the vehicle is in the power swap mode, the vehicle is locked for sleep, the climate control is faulty, and the account is switched. In this case, the seats cannot be automatically restored to the positions before the nap.

## ***Meditation Mode***

The Meditation Mode provides an immersive experience to give your brain break, so that you can feel your inner self and your surroundings and reduce your physical and mental exhaustion.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Meditation** page where sound scenarios and sound volumes for the meditation can be set and memorized for the specific account.

After the vehicle enters the Meditation Mode, the in-vehicle lighting will be turned off, with windows and doors closed and locked, the climate control will be automatically set to the temperature comfortable for meditation, and the air purifier will be automatically turned on. NOMI will enter the Do Not Disturb Mode to create an immersive and quiet atmosphere for you. After the meditation ends, the vehicle will restore the settings before the meditation.

**Caution**

- Make sure the vehicle is in PARK and not in the Power Swap Mode.
- Close all the doors and the liftgate before starting the Meditation Mode to ensure safety.
- If the vehicle is not being charged, make sure that its remaining range is not less than 30 km.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the current mode under certain circumstances, for example, when the vehicle is not in PARK, the battery has a risk of ignition, a software update is in progress, the vehicle is in the power swap mode, the vehicle is locked for sleep, and the account is switched.

***Breathing Mode***

The Breathing Mode helps you learn how to breathe properly, calm yourself down, and relieve stress.

You or your authorized users can enter the application launcher to open the **Tide > Breathing** page where breathing scenarios and background sound scenarios and volumes can be set and memorized for the specific account.

**Caution**

- Make sure the vehicle is in PARK and not in the Power Swap Mode.
- Close all the doors and the liftgate before starting the Meditation Mode to ensure safety.
- If the vehicle is not being charged, make sure that its remaining range is not less than 30 km.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the current mode under certain circumstances, for example, when the vehicle is not in PARK, the battery has a risk of ignition, a software update is in progress, the vehicle is in the power swap mode, the vehicle is locked for sleep, and the account is switched.

## Child Safety

### Child-Protection Locks

It is recommended that you engage the child-protection locks (including child lock and window lock) whenever a child is seated in the rear row, so that rear doors and windows cannot be opened from inside. Failure to do so may result in accidents if a rear window or door is opened by the child by accident.

The child lock and window lock are set to off by default. Once enabled, they will remain active until you turn them off manually. To turn them on, swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and tap **Child Lock** and **Window Lock**.

### Warning

- When the child-protection locks are on, the rear doors and rear windows cannot be opened from inside. Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Doing so may result in injury or death.
- When enabling the child-protection locks on the center display, do not pull the rear interior door handles. Doing so may cause the child-protection locks to malfunction and result in injury or death.

### Child Safety Seats

Children under the age of 12 or less than 1.5 meters in height must ride in a child safety seat or a booster seat in order to be sufficiently protected. Children must not be carried in an occupant's arms or sit in their lap.

Only use a child safety seat that is suitable for a child and complies with the relevant laws and regulations. Always check the label and instructions when choosing a child safety seat. When installing and using a child safety seat, always follow the relevant laws and regulations, the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions, and this manual.

### ***Important Instructions for Using a Child Safety Seat***

Correct use of a child safety seat can significantly lower the risk of injury or reduce the severity of injury in an accident. Please pay attention to the following tips when using a child safety seat:

- Ensure that your child is riding in a child safety seat and wearing their seat belt correctly.
- Never allow your child to ride unprotected in the car.

- Do not seat more than one child in a child safety seat.
- Never allow a child to be held in an occupant's arms.
- Ensure that no hard or sharp objects are on the child safety seat. Failure to do so may cause injury during an accident.
- When installing a rear-facing child safety seat in the rear seat, you may need to appropriately adjust the corresponding front seat forward; when installing a front-facing child safety seat in the rear seat, you may need to appropriately adjust the head rest height.
- Never leave a child unattended, even if the child is secured in a child safety seat.
- Never allow a child to stand or kneel in their seat when driving. Otherwise, the child could be thrown from the vehicle, which may cause injury or death to the child and other occupants.
- Always follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions for correct use of the seat belt for optimal protection.
- Always ensure that the child safety seat is correctly installed and secured even if a child is not sitting in the child safety seat. Failure to do so may cause injury to other occupants during a collision or emergency braking.
- When a child is seated in a child safety seat, to reduce the risk of injury, always ensure that the child does not lean on the door, outboard side of the seat, or pillar, or position their head or body below the roof cross beam where side airbags or curtain airbags will deploy when an accident occurs.

### ***Groups of Child Safety Seats***

Only use the approved child safety seat suitable for your child. Children over 1.5 meters in height can use the vehicle's seat belts. Child safety seats must comply with relevant regulations and standards.

#### ***CRS Table-6 seat***

6 Seat	Seating Position						
Weight groups allowed	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III		0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III	
Seat position number	1	3		4	6	7	9
		Passenger	Passenger				

		Airbag OFF	Airbag ON				
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	N/A	Yes (*a)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	N/A	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	N/A	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/ R2/ R3)	N/A	No	No	R1/R2/R3	R1/R2/R3	No	No
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F1/F2X /F2/ F3)	N/A	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	N/A	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3
Suitable for support leg	N/A	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
Notes: N/A: Not applicable							



(a)Adjust the front passenger seat as high up as possible when install universal CRS on it.

**CRS Table-7 seat**

7 Seat	Seating Position							
Weight groups allowed	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III		0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III	0, 0+, I, II, III
Seat position number	1	3 Passenger Airbag OFF		P a s s e n g e r A i r b a g O N 4	5	6	7	9
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/ no)	N/A	Yes (*a)	N o	Yes	Yes (*b)	Yes	Yes (*b)	Yes (*b)
i-Size seating position (yes/ no)	N/A	No	N o	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral	N/A	No	N o	No	No	No	No	No

fixture (L1/ L2)								
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/ R2X/ R2/ R3)	N/A	No	No	R1/R2/ R3	No	R1/R2/R3	No	No
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F1/ F2X /F2/ F3)	N/A	No	No	F2X/F2 /F3	No	F2X/F2/F 3	F2X/ F2/F 3	F2X/F2 /F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	N/A	No	No	B2/B3	No	B2/B3	B2/B 3	B2/B3
Suitable for support leg	N/A	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No

## Notes:

N/A: Not applicable

(a) Adjust the front passenger seat as high up as possible when install universal CRS on it.

(b) It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support base or with a support leg on the middle seat of the 2<sup>nd</sup> row and on the 3<sup>rd</sup> row.**Summary of Seat Position Numbers**

Seat Number	Position in the vehicle
1	Front left
2	Front centre
3	Front right
4	2 <sup>nd</sup> row left

5	2nd centre
6	2 nd row right
7	3 rd row left
8	3rd centre
9	3 rd row right

### ***Recommended Child Restraints by NIO***

Group	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0 & 0+ Up to 13 kg	BeSafe	iZi Combi X4 ISOFIX	ISOFIX mounted with support leg, rearward facing.
I 9-18 kg	BeSafe	iZi Combi X4 ISOFIX	ISOFIX mounted with support leg, rearward facing.
II 15-25 kg	Britax Römer	KidFix II S	ISOFIX with seatbelt, forward facing
III 22-36 kg	Britax Römer	KidFix II S	ISOFIX with seatbelt , forward facing

NIO recommend to put your kids in corresponding CRS on the 2 nd row outer seating position, and CRS should be mounted to vehicle with ISOFIX, support leg or seatbelt. In order to have the best protection for your younger kids, kids weight under 18kg please use recommended rearward facing CRS.

For group II child (weight from 15-25kg), NIO recommend to use KidFix II S with Secureguard. Please look at Britax Romer KidFix II S owner's manual for details how to use Secureguard.

For group III child (weight from 22-36kg), NIO recommend to use KidFix II S booster.

## Choosing and Installing a Child Safety Seat

### Warning


NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

### Warning

Never seat a child or place a rear-facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat when the front passenger airbag is enabled. Doing so can cause severe injury or death when the airbag inflates in the event of an accident.

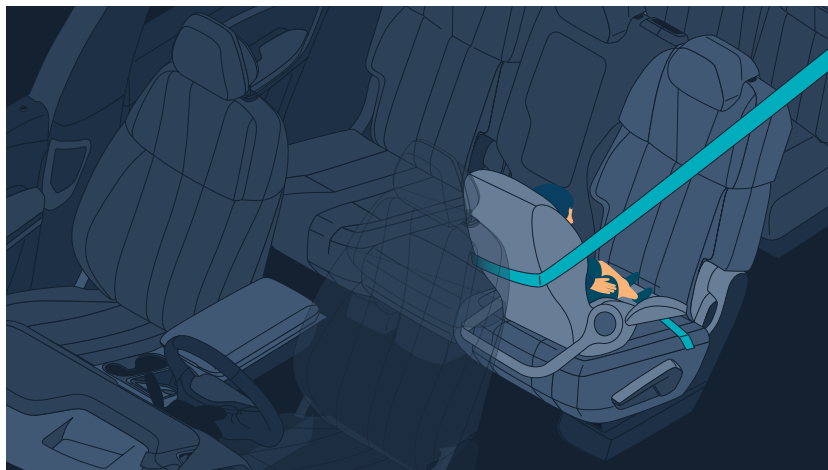
Refer to the following front airbag label fitted to the front passenger sun visor.



If you want to use a child safety seat in the front passenger seat, always ensure that the front passenger airbag is off. Enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Front Passenger Airbag** to turn it off. In this case, the icon  appears at the top of the center display, notifying you that the front passenger airbag is disabled.

Secure your child with a child safety seat or seat belt that is appropriate for the age, weight and height of the child on the rear outboard seats:

- Infants weighing up to 13 kg can be seated in a reclining rear-facing child safety seat secured on the rear seats.



- Toddlers weighing between 9 kg and 18 kg can be seated in a forward-facing or rear-facing child safety seat that is restrained by a safety cushion or integrated five-point harness and secured on the rear seats.

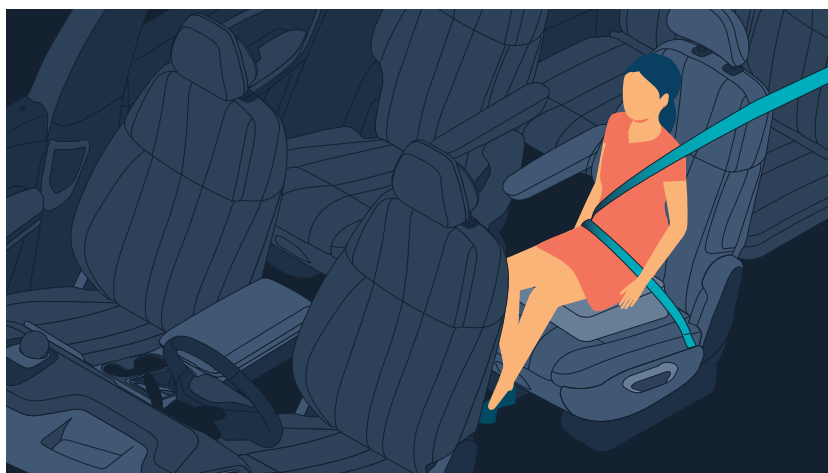
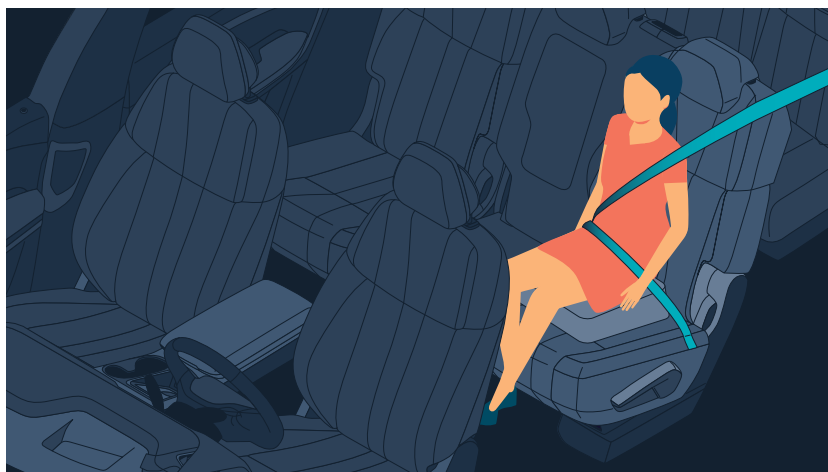




- Young children weighing between 15 kg and 25 kg can be seated in a forward-facing child safety seat that is restrained by a seat belt and secured on the rear seats.



- Children weighing between 22 kg and 36 kg and who are less than 1.5 meters tall can be seated in a booster seat that is restrained by a seat belt and secured on the rear seats.



### **Warning**

The upper belt must lay flat across the shoulder and chest, and never lay across the neck; the lower belt must lay flat across the pelvis, and never lay across the abdomen.

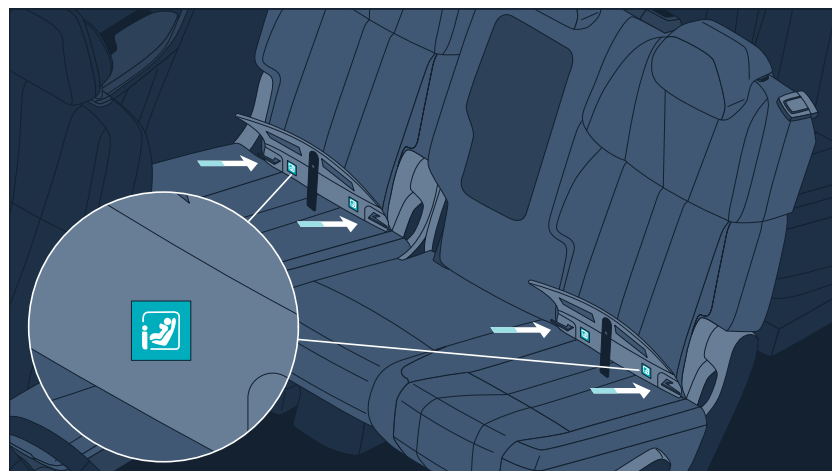
### ***Installing a Child Safety Seat***

Before installing a child safety seat, read the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions carefully and ensure that the seat can be installed in your vehicle. You can choose a child safety seat which is fastened with a seat belt or uses the ISOFIX system. The ISOFIX system is recommended.

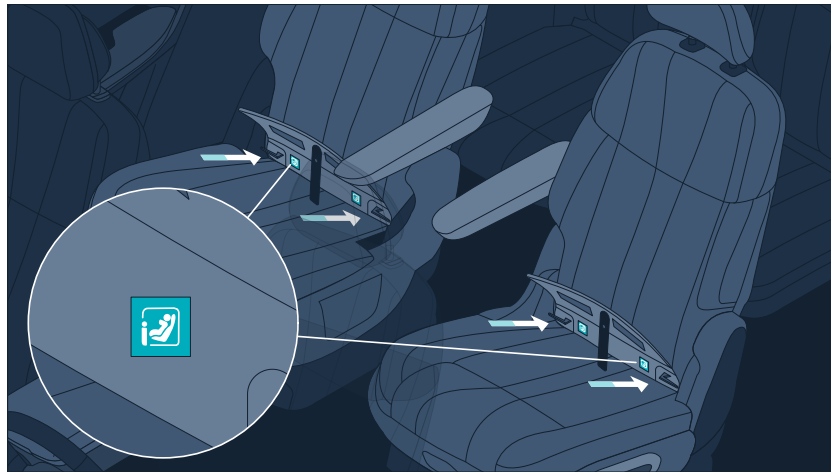
- Installing a seat belt-restrained child seat  
To install a child safety seat on a rear seat, route the seat belt over the child safety seat and buckle it up. Ensure that the belt is not twisted. Pull the belt tightly and remove all slack.



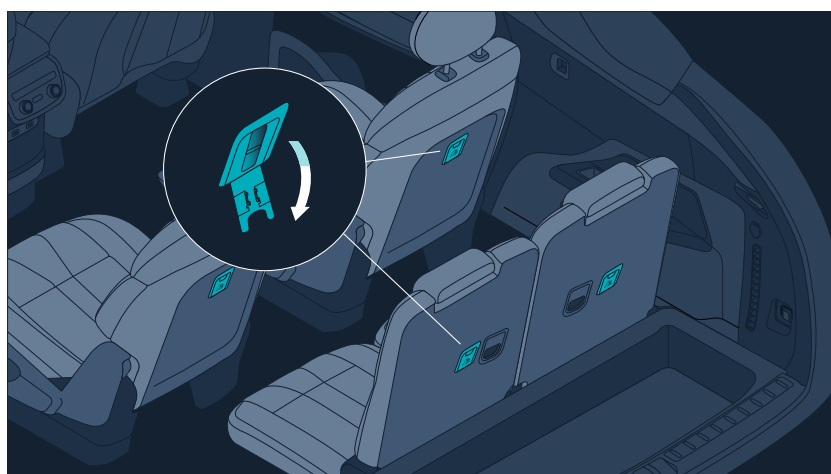
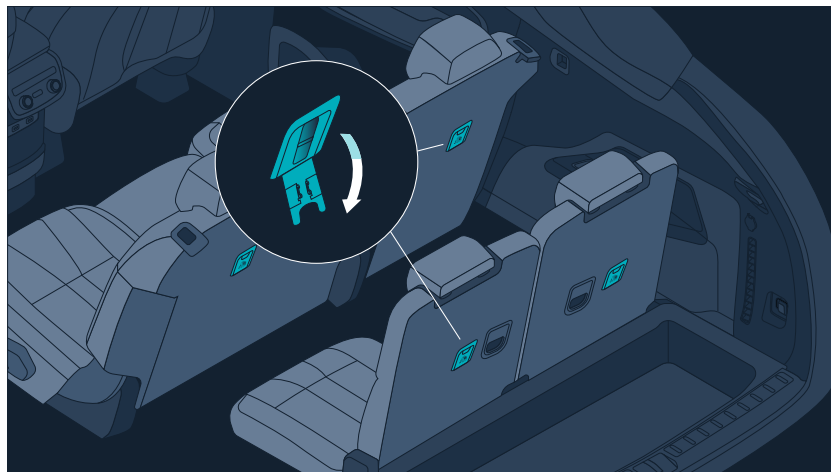
- Installing an ISOFIX child seat  
Lower LATCH anchors are provided in the second row outboard seats and third row seats. Child safety seats should be secured to the rear seats.
  1. Slide the child safety seat onto the seat's anchor bars until you hear it click into place.







2. Guide the upper tether strap on the child safety seat under the head restraint and towards the rear, and then fasten the belt to the anchor point located on the back of the rear seats.



3. Pull on the child safety seat to check if it fits snugly.

**Warning**

- The ISOFIX attachment points are designed solely for child safety seats with the ISOFIX system. To avoid injury, never secure other objects to ISOFIX.
- Always follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions and this manual when installing and removing a child safety seat. Improper usage can result in injury to your child or other passengers.

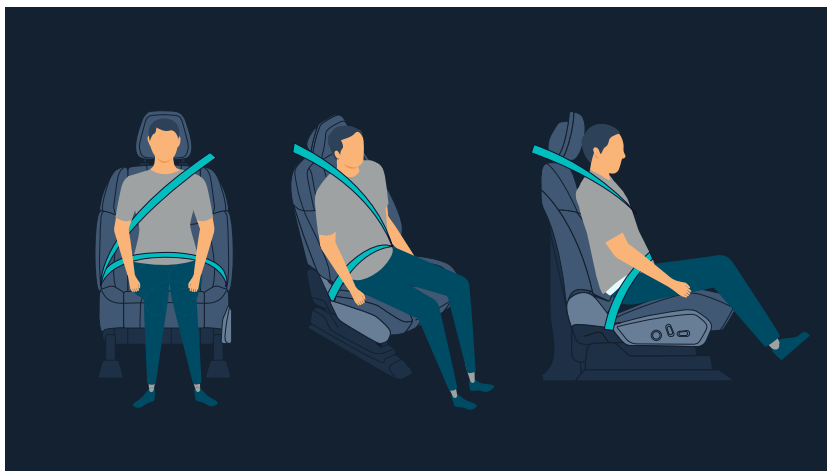
## Vehicle Passive Safety

### Seat belts

#### *Seat Belt Instructions*

Seat belts are one of the most important ways to protect occupants in case of an accident. Using seat belts together with airbags can reduce the risk of severe injury if a collision occurs. All occupants, including the driver, should wear seat belts correctly.

Even at low speeds, the impact force acting on the occupants can still cause injury. Therefore, it is very important to fasten seat belts before every trip, no matter how short or routine the trip is. It is equally important for the rear seat occupants to wear seat belts correctly, as unbelted rear occupants may be thrown forward, and endanger not only themselves, but also the front occupants in a frontal collision.




Both front and second row outboard seats as well as third row seats feature seat belts with pretensioners and force limiters (dual-stage for the front seats). The pretensioners rapidly retract and latch seat belts the instant a severe collision occurs, thereby providing increased protection to occupants. The force limiter can then prevent the seat belt from exerting too much force on the occupant and minimize belt-inflicted injury.

#### **Warning**


- Seat belts should be worn correctly by all occupants at all times. Failure to do so may result in severe injury or death.
- Do not unbuckle the seat belt when driving. Doing so can increase the risk of severe injury if a collision occurs.

- Avoid contaminating the seat belt or obstructing the belt latch. Doing so can impair the functionality of the seat belt.
- Check the condition of your seat belt carefully before use to ensure that no components show any sign of wear, aging, or damage. If any damage is found, do not continue to use the seat belt and replace it immediately.
- Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. Do not remove or install seat belts in any way.
- Never secure more than one person with a single seat belt. It is dangerous to put a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap. Doing so can cause further injury to the child if a collision occurs.
- Seat belts that have been worn during an accident, or which have been stretched must be replaced immediately, even if there is no visible damage.
- Seat belt pretensioners that have been activated during an accident must be replaced immediately. Even if they are not activated in certain accidents, it is suggested to contact NIO for inspection or even replacement if necessary.
- Do not drive with the backrest reclined to an extreme degree. Doing so can impair the protective function of the seat belt.
- The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.
- Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.
- Bulky and unfastened clothing (such as an overcoat over a sweater) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their capacity to protect.
- Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.
- The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly.
- Unbuckling your seat belt while the vehicles in motion can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- The seat belt itself, or a loose seat belt, can cause severe injuries if the belt moves from hard areas of the body to soft areas (e.g. the stomach).

### ***Seat Belt Warning Light***

All seats are equipped with seat belts. When the driver is seated (with doors closed or brake pedal pressed) or is driving, the seat belt warning light  on the digital

instrument cluster turns on when anyone in the front is unbuckled. If the , or at a speed over 22 km/h and the seat belts are still not fastened, the warning light flashes and a chime sounds. After seat belts are fastened, the warning light turns off and the chime stops. If the belts remain unfastened, the chime stops after 100 seconds, but the warning light stays on.

When the driver's seat is occupied (with doors closed or the brake pedal pressed), the seat belt warning light  on the digital instrument cluster turns on when a passenger in the rear is not buckled up. The seats with belts fastened are shown in gray. When rear seat belts are not fastened:

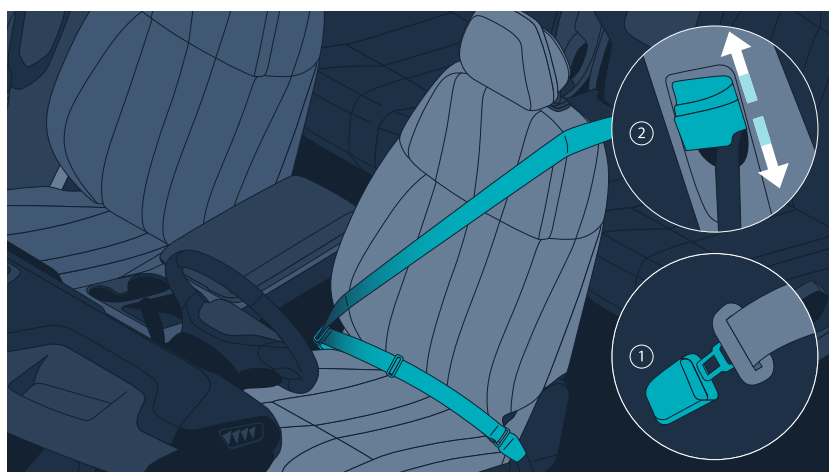
- If the vehicle is in motion, the warning light automatically turns off after 33 seconds.
- If the vehicle is driving over 22 km/h, the warning light flashes and a chime sounds. The warning light turns off after all occupants are buckled up.
- If passengers in the rear seats remain unbuckled, the warning light automatically turns off after 33 seconds.

### Warning

If the seat belt reminder malfunctions, do not use the seat and contact NIO immediately for inspection.

### ***Wearing Seat Belts***

Use the seat belts correctly as follows:



1. Pull the seat belt by the belt buckle evenly across your body, ensuring the shoulder strap is placed over the shoulder while the lap strap of the belt is positioned across the pelvis. Never place the seat belt across the neck or

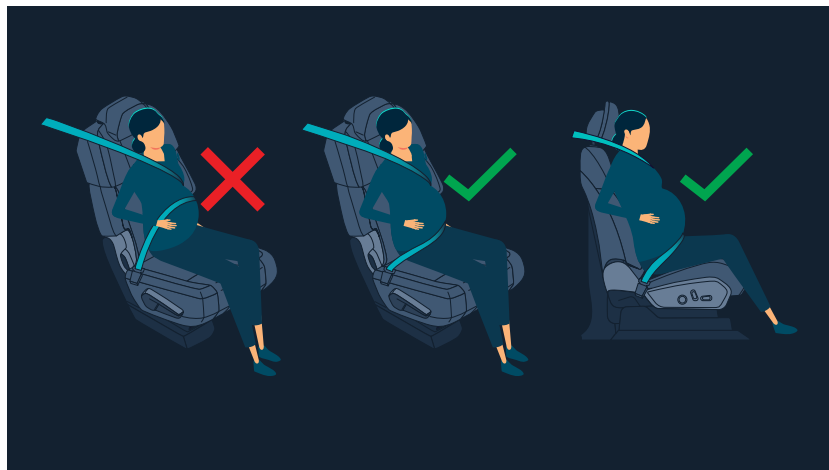
abdomen. Insert the belt buckle into the belt latch until you hear a click indicating it is locked in place.

2. Press the button and slide the belt up or down to adjust the seat belt height. Release the button when the belt is at an appropriate height. To check if the belt is securely locked in place, pull firmly on the shoulder strap of the belt.

To release the seat belt, press the red button on the belt latch to pop out the belt buckle. Guide the belt back by hand so that it can roll up more easily.

### Warning

- Ensure that the backrest and head restraint are positioned correctly before wearing a seat belt, so that the seat belt can protect the occupant to the fullest extent possible.
- A seat belt that is either too loose or too tight can cause injury if a collision occurs.
- For a pregnant occupant, the seat belt must rest evenly across the chest and as low and flat as possible across the hips. Failure to do so can cause severe injury to both the unborn fetus and the mother if the seat belt tightens in the event of an accident.



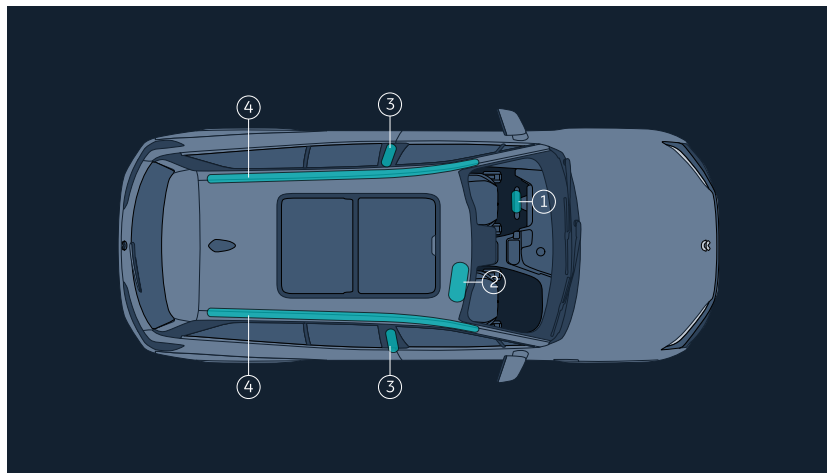
## Airbags

### *Airbag Instructions*

As a restraint system, the airbags are a supplement to seat belts. Airbags can quickly inflate in the event of a severe accident to protect the head and chest of the occupant and reduce injury severity. However, they cannot prevent injuries to limbs and body surface. Occupants enjoy maximum protection only when both airbags and seat belts are used appropriately.

Your vehicle is equipped with collision sensors. When a front or side collision that satisfies the conditions of deploying the airbag system occurs, the corresponding airbags will deploy. The gas generator inside the airbag will be enabled to release gas at a certain pressure to open the airbag cover and fill the entire airbag, forming a protective buffer layer to protect occupants and reduce the risk of injury or death.

The airbag system includes front airbags and side airbags. Front airbags include front head airbags that are located in the steering wheel and on the headliner on the passenger side. Side airbags include front side airbags (located on the outside of the front seats) and curtain airbags (located on the headliner on both sides from the A pillar to the C pillar). The locations of the airbags are labeled "AIRBAG".



1. Driver's airbag
2. Front passenger airbag
3. Front side airbags
4. Curtain airbags

### Warning

- Airbags are a supplementary restraint system and cannot replace seat belts. The airbag can only maximize your safety when used in conjunction with the seat belt. Thus, all occupants should always correctly wear their seat belt and sit in the correct position.
- The driver should sit at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel, since the airbag may injure the driver when deployed with great force.
- Children must not sit in the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is enabled. In the case of an accident, the impact of the airbag when deployed may cause severe injury to children.

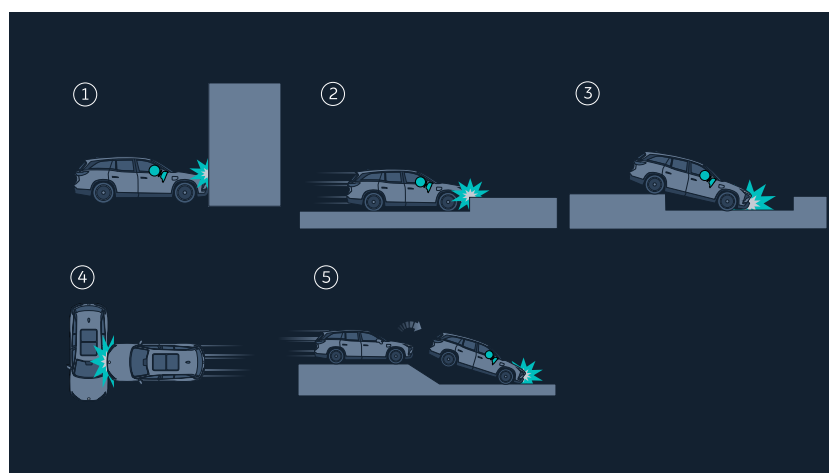
- Do not place any objects on the front passenger seat. These objects will enter the deployment area and be ejected if the airbag deploys in the event of emergency braking, which may injure occupants.
- The airbag system can only provide protection once. If the airbag has been deployed, you must have it replaced; during certain accidents, the airbag may not deploy. However, to ensure that the airbag system works properly, please contact NIO immediately for inspection or replacement if necessary.
- If any damage or fractures are found on the airbag cover, do not use the vehicle and contact NIO immediately.
- If the airbag system has never been deployed for a period of ten years from its production date, please visit NIO to have it replaced. A record of the airbag system's replacement needs to be kept and given to the new owner when the vehicle's ownership is transferred.
- Installing or removing airbag system components, including airbag labels, is prohibited.
- Smoke and fine powder may be produced when the airbag deploys. Even if the fine powder is nontoxic, it may still make occupants feel uncomfortable.
- When using seat covers, avoid the area around the side airbags for the front seats. Doing so may impair the protective function of the side airbags.
- Do not place any objects in the deployment area of the curtain airbags (including pillars, headliner or handles). Occupants should not lean against the doors. Doing so may result in injury if a curtain airbag deploys.
- Do not place any hard objects (including clothes hangers, fruits, or glass bottles) on the garment hooks in the vehicle. Doing so may result in injury if a curtain airbag deploys.
- Never place your feet, knees or other body parts on or near the airbag covers. Do not place or hang any objects on or near the airbag covers. Doing so may impair the functionality of the airbags and may result in injury if an airbag deploys.
- Never install any electronic devices (such as ETC) on the front windshield on the passenger side. Doing so may result in injury if the front passenger airbag deploys.
- Never place, hang or install any objects on or near the instrument panel on the passenger side. Doing so may result in injury if an airbag deploys.
- Never modify the headliner of the vehicle. Doing so may impair the functionality of the curtain airbags, and result in injury if they deploy.



- Never place or hang any heavy or sharp-edged objects on the front passenger sun visor. Doing so may result in injury if the front passenger airbag deploys.
- The smoke and dust generated during the rapid airbag deployment may cause skin or eye irritation/scalds/burns, and the airbag fibers may cause skin scratches or burns.

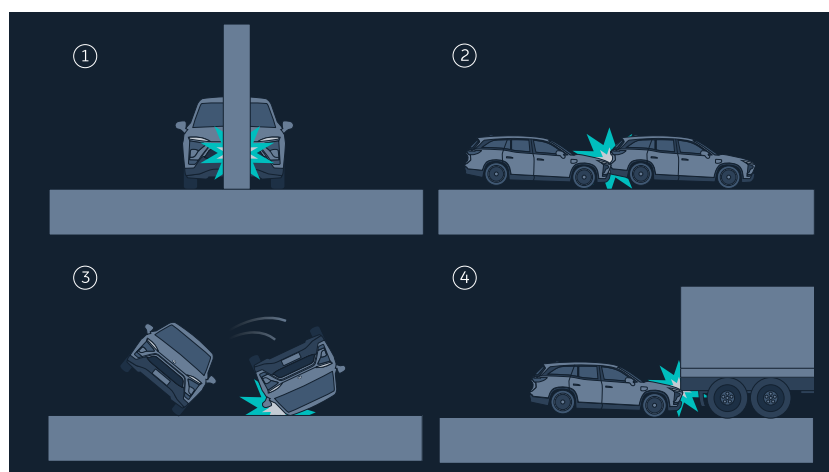
### ***Conditions for Deploying Airbags***

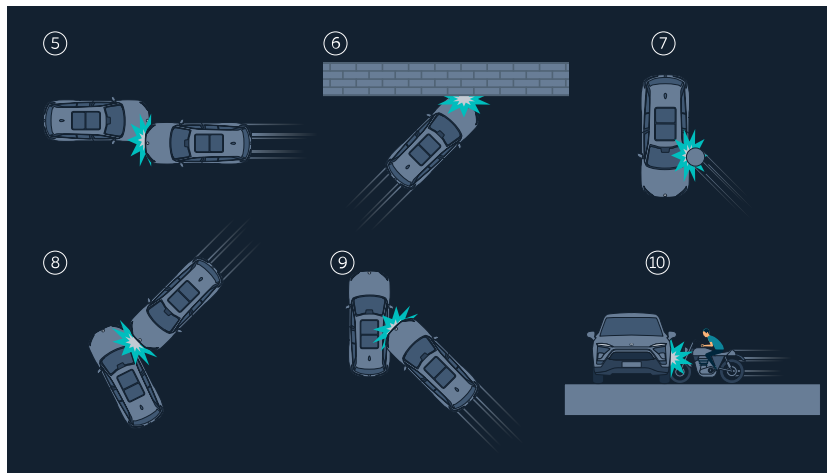
Airbags will inflate in the following cases:



1. The vehicle hits a wall or another vehicle at a high speed.
2. The vehicle hits a hard curb.
3. The vehicle falls into a deep ditch.
4. The vehicle is impacted by another vehicle at high speed from the side.
5. The vehicle goes upward and then hits the road hard.


In the following cases, airbags may not deploy and the occupants should be protected by wearing the seat belts correctly:






1. The vehicle hits a tree, pole, or other tall and thin object.
2. The vehicle is hit by another vehicle in the rear.
3. The vehicle rolls over.
4. The vehicle collides with or slides under a truck.
5. The front corner of the vehicle collides with another vehicle.
6. The front corner of the vehicle collides with a wall.
7. The vehicle travels sideways into a pole.
8. The front side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle at a certain angle.
9. The side of the vehicle body is hit by another vehicle at a certain angle.
10. The vehicle is hit by another vehicle on the side.

### ***Airbag Warning Indicator***

An airbag warning indicator  on the digital instrument cluster displays the status of airbags. If the indicator is on after the digital instrument cluster turns on, do not use the vehicle and contact NIO immediately.

### ***Disabling Front Airbags***

Because the front airbags rapidly inflate and unfold with great force, the distance between front airbags and front occupants should be at least 25 centimeters. If a child or an occupant with special medical needs is seated in the front passenger seat, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Front Passenger Airbag** to turn it off. Then, the icon  will pop up on the top of the center display to remind you that the front passenger airbag has been disabled. This can reduce the risk of severe injury to vulnerable groups.

***Actions to Take After Airbags Are Deployed***

When a collision occurs and airbags deploy, the vehicle automatically takes the following actions to ensure occupant safety:

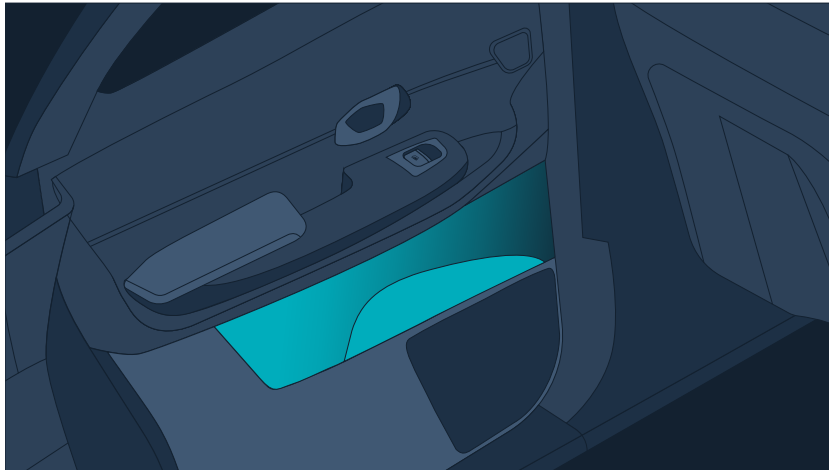
- Unlocking doors to ensure that occupants or rescue personnel can open the doors.
- Turning on hazard warning lights to indicate the vehicle's location and alert vehicles approaching from the rear.
- Cutting off the high voltage system to ensure occupant safety.
- Opening windows to prevent occupants from being trapped in the vehicle if it is submerged in water.
- Turning off Driver Seat Memory to avoid the seat moving to a position that traps the driver.
- Turning on reading lights, especially for the convenience of rescue at night.

## Rear Passengers Seated

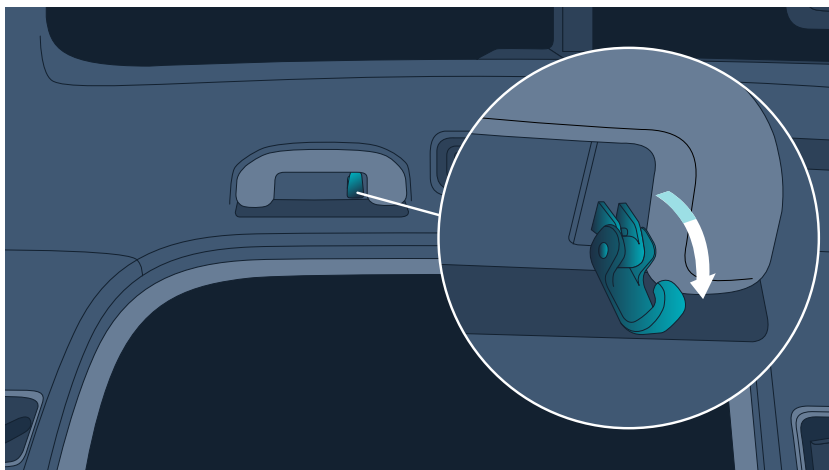
### Rear Storage

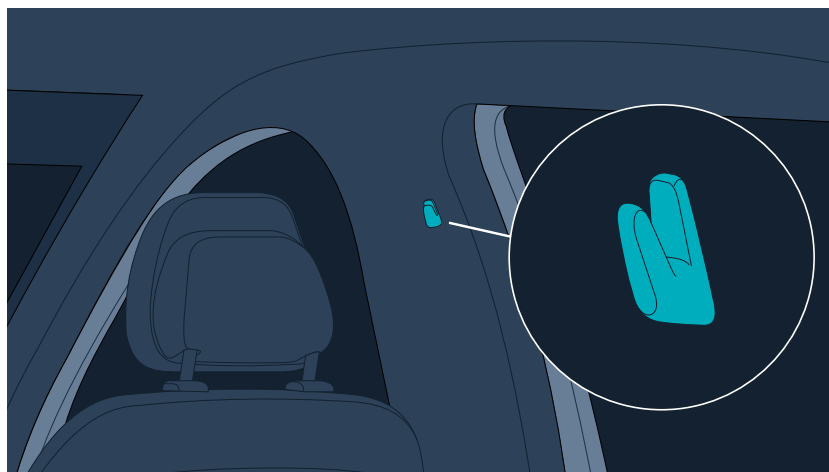
#### *Rear Door Storage*

The vehicle also provides convenient storage for the rear seats. Each door has a storage area to put your beverages or objects. It is also equipped with a storage light to illuminate the corresponding door in the dark or when the position lights are on.



Garment hooks can be used to hang clothing.

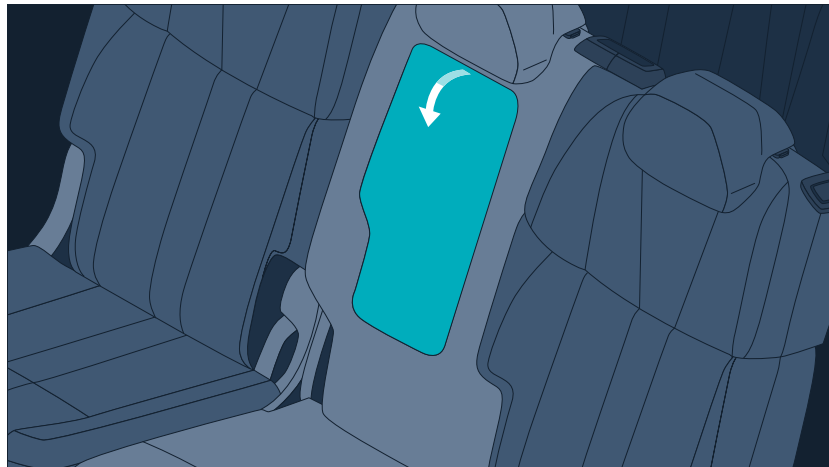


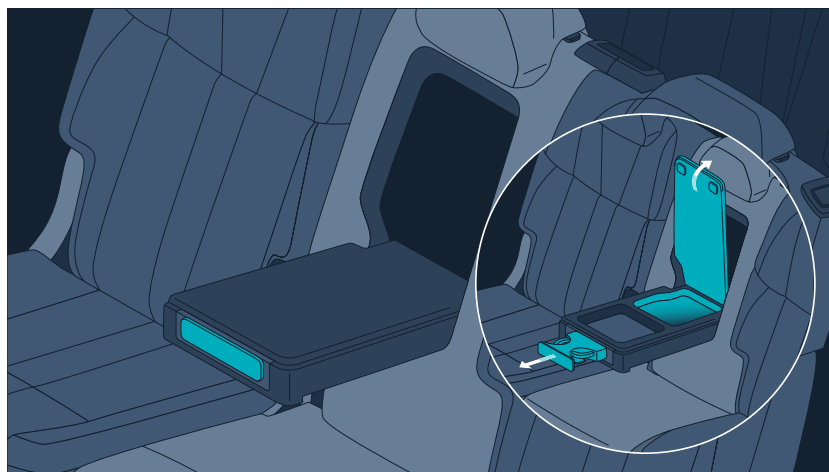
**Warning**

Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.

***Second Row Center Armrest***

When the second row middle seat is not in use, pull the center armrest stowed in the rear seat back down to access the cup holders and storage area.

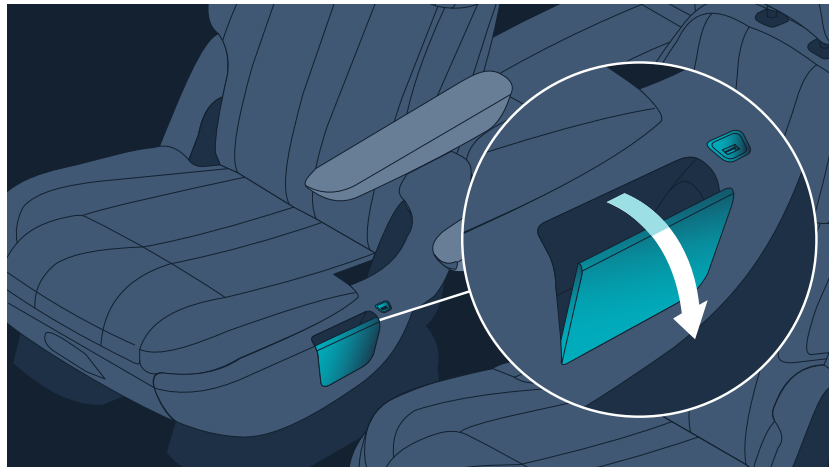


**Warning**

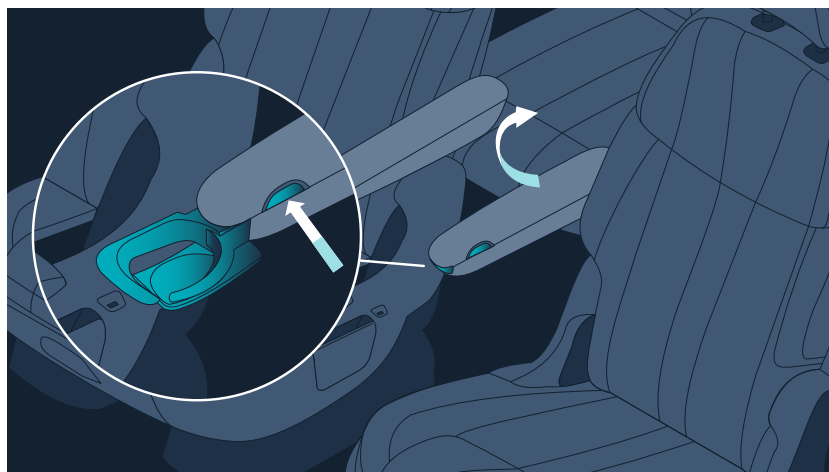
Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.

***Second Row Seat Armrests***

There is a USB 2.0 port and a storage area under the second row seat armrest for occupants to store phones and other objects.



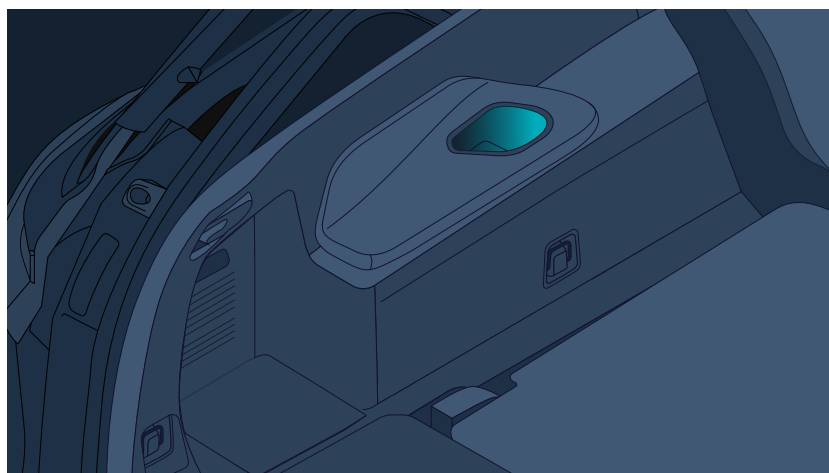
To stow the armrest, push it upward. To expose cup holders, press the button on the second row seat armrest.

**Warning**

Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.

***Third Row Armrests***

Cup holders are located on the third row armrests.

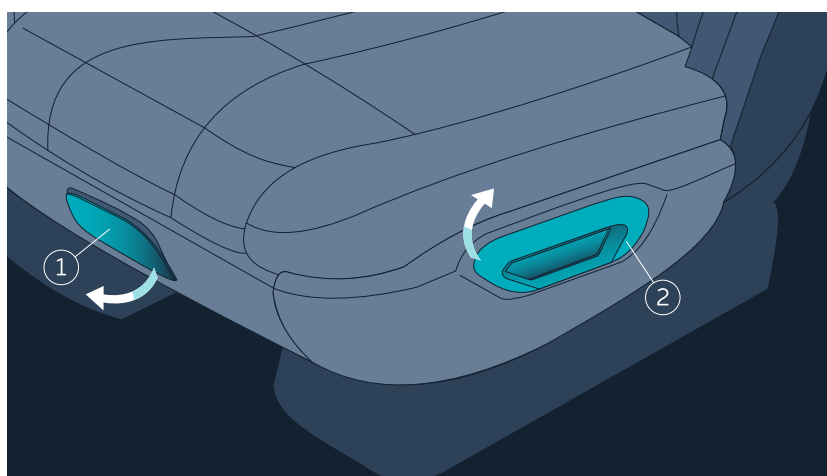
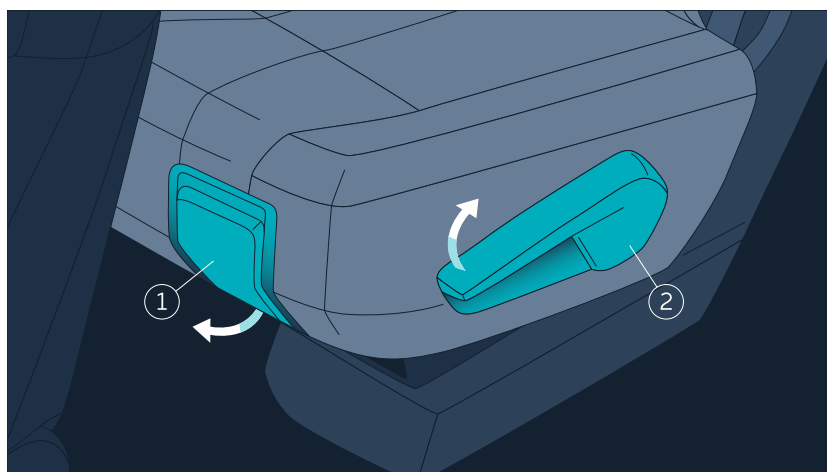
**Warning**

Never place flammable and combustible objects or liquids with a high risk of splashing in the storage area. Always close the cover after placing objects in the storage area.

**Second Row Seats**

There are three seats in the second row, which are split 40/60 and can fold flat.

Each second row seat can be adjusted and folded flat.



### 1. Seat position

Pull the handle located on the outside of the seat to move the seat forward or backward to the desired position. Then release the handle and push the seat until you hear a click to ensure that it locks into place.

### 2. Adjusting and folding backrests

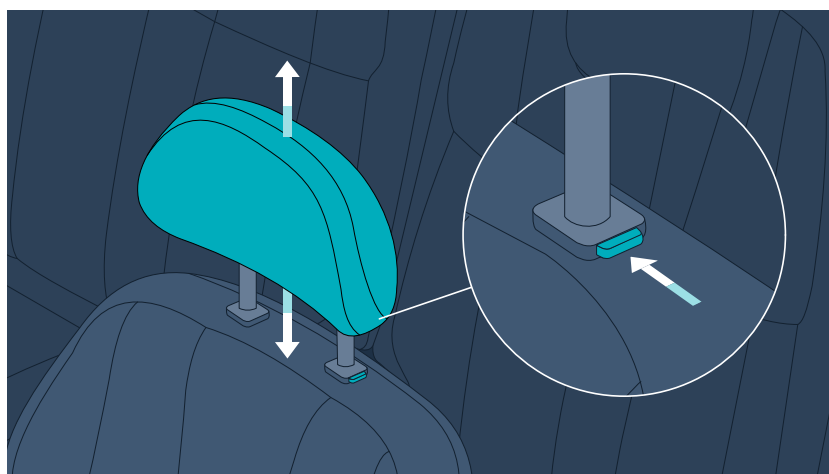
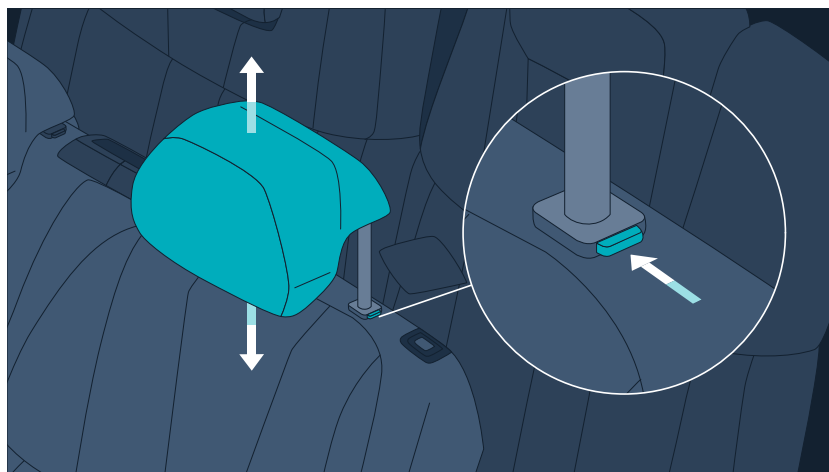
Pull the handle up and fold the backrest completely flat.

Lift the backrest up until you hear a click to restore the backrest to the seating position.

The backrests of second row seats are reclined 18 degrees by default.

To adjust the headrest, press the button below the headrest. The headrest can be adjusted between two vertical positions. To remove the headrest, gently tilt the seat back, press the button below the headrest, and pull out the headrest.





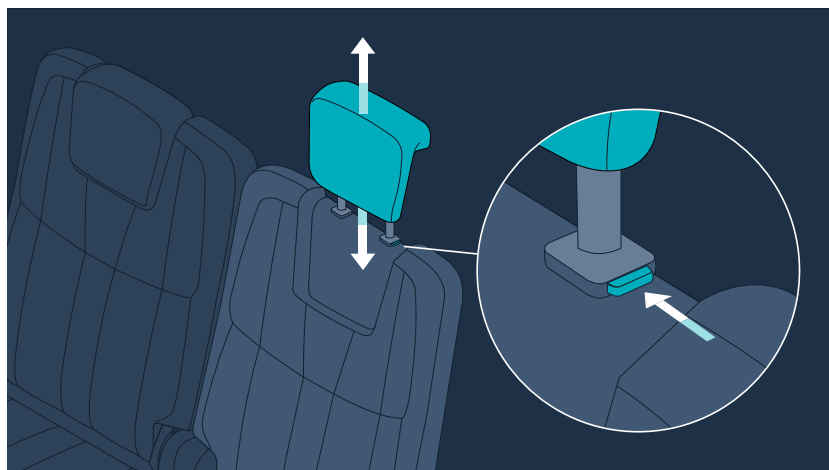
Please adjust the seat according to the occupant's height and seating position. When driving, make sure that the backrest is upright and the highest point of the headrest is in the center of the occupant's head so that the body and head are sufficiently supported, and the seat belt and airbag may function correctly.

### **Warning**

- When driving, your safety belt should be worn correctly. An improper seating position may result in severe injury.
- Do not drive with the backrest reclined to an extreme degree. Doing so may impair the protective function of the seat belt and air bags.
- Do not use the headrest when it is at its lowest position. To use it, pull the headrest upwards and ensure it is locked into place.
- Adjusting a seat while driving may result in injury or death.
- Do not place any objects under the seat.

### Third Row Seat Headrests

The backrest of the third row seats is reclined 12 degrees by default. To adjust the headrest, press the button below the headrest. The headrest can be adjusted between two vertical positions. To remove the headrest, gently tilt the seat back, press the button below the headrest, and pull out the headrest.



Please make sure that the highest point of the headrest is at the center of the occupant's head so that the body and head are sufficiently supported, and the seat belt and airbag may function correctly.

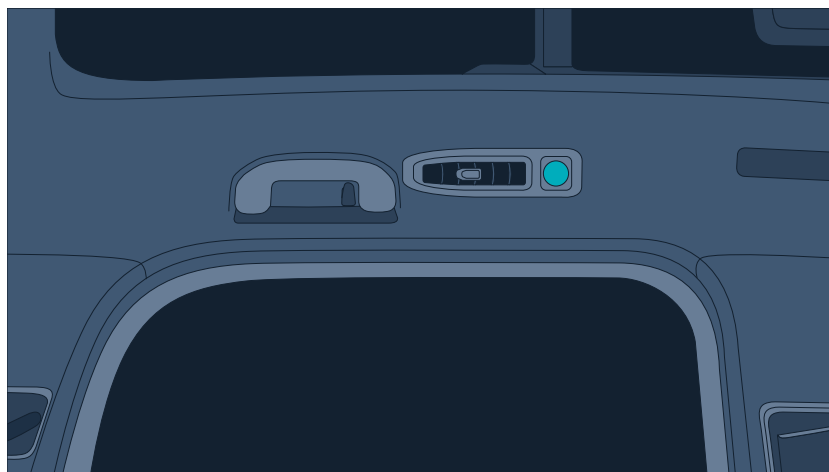
#### Warning

- When driving, your safety belt should be worn correctly. An improper seating position may result in severe injury.
- Do not use the headrest when it is at its lowest position. To use it, pull the headrest upwards and ensure it is locked into place.
- Do not place any objects under the seat.

## Digital Control

### Rear Lighting

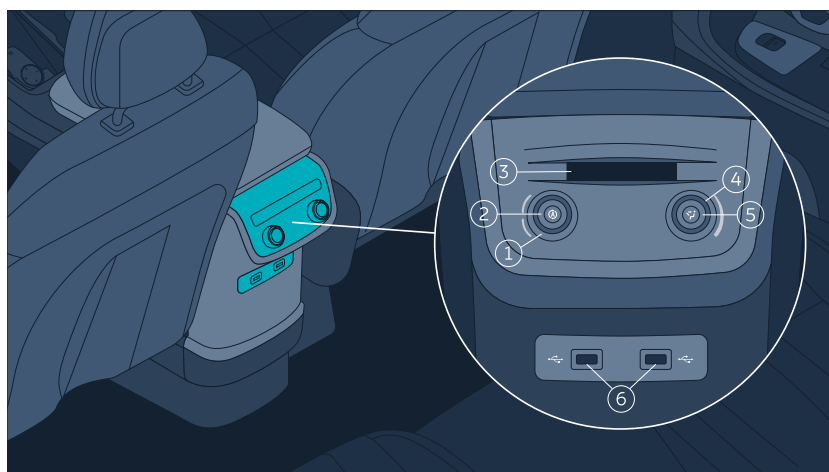
The touch switches controlling the rear reading lights are located on the rear doors. To turn a reading light on or off, touch the corresponding switch.



### Rear Climate Control

#### *Rear Climate Control Panel*

An independent climate control panel is available for the rear seats, allowing passengers to adjust the rear temperature and fan speed.



1. Adjusting temperature  
Turn the knob to adjust the rear temperature between 15 (LO) - 31 (HI) degrees Celsius.
2. AUTO Mode  
Press to turn on AUTO Mode. This automatically adjusts the temperature, fan speed, and air distribution of the rear cabin according to the temperature you set.

Press a second time to turn off AUTO Mode and the air conditioning status will remain unchanged.

3. Climate control display

This display shows the current temperature, fan speed, air distribution, and other information for the rear seats.

4. Turning on and off rear climate control and adjusting the fan speed

Turn the knob clockwise or counterclockwise to turn on or off the rear climate control.

You can also use the knob to adjust the rear fan speed.

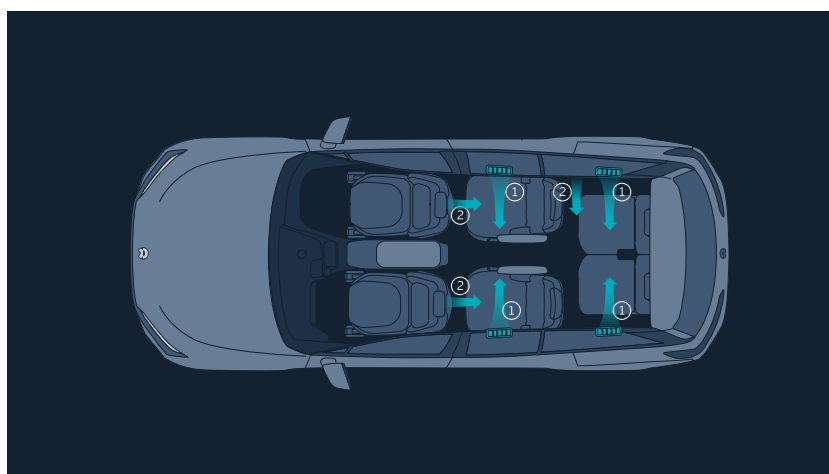
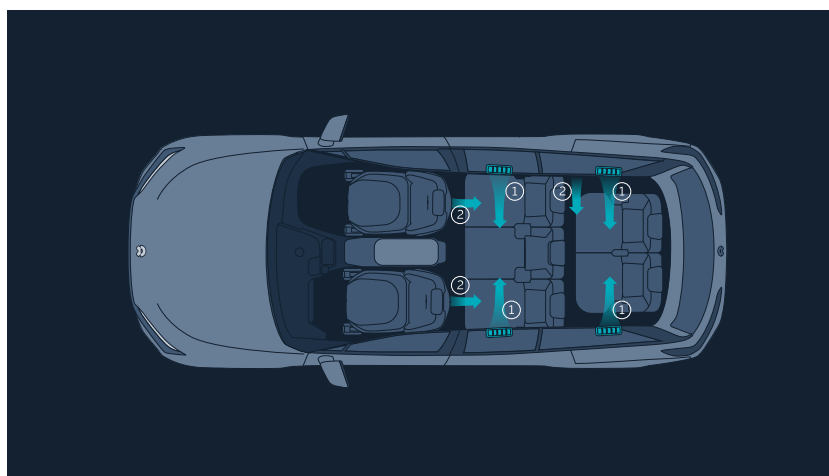
5. Air distribution

Press the button to select the air distribution mode: Face , Feet , or Face and Feet .

6. USB 2.0 ports

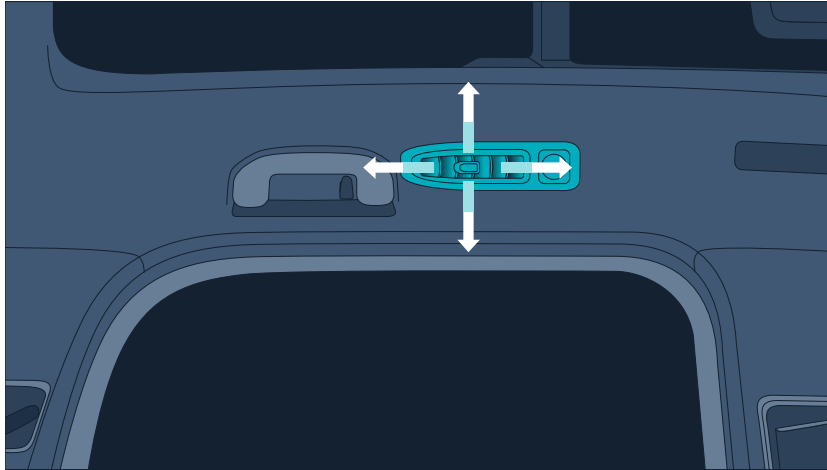
### ***Adjusting Rear Air Vents***

The rear air vents are located on the headliner and below the front seats.



1. Rear face-level vents
2. Rear foot-level vents

Move the switch up, down, left, or right to change the air flow direction.



## Driving out of the garage

### Starting the Vehicle

#### *Preparing to Drive*

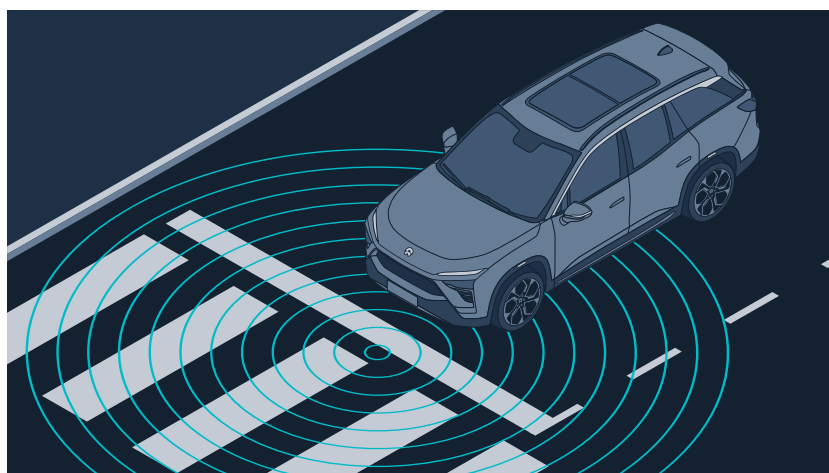
1. The driver must be seated
2. Close the driver's door or press the brake pedal

### Starting the Vehicle via NFC Key

When seated, you can start the vehicle using the NFC card.

Place the NFC card on the wireless charging pad. Then, you can try to shift gears and start your vehicle.

### Pedestrian Warning System



When driving at a low speed (normally below 30 km/h), the vehicle emits a sound to alert other road users such as pedestrians and other vehicles of your presence.

When this feature is enabled:

- When driving at a speed between 0 km/h and 20 km/h, the sound gets louder as your speed increases.
- When driving at a speed between 20 km/h and 30 km/h, the sound gets weaker as speed increases.
- When driving at a speed over 30 km/h, the vehicle stops emitting the sound.
- When driving at a speed below 25 km/h, the vehicle will emit the sound again.

## Shifting Gears

When you press the brake pedal and shift the vehicle into DRIVE or REVERSE, **READY** appears on the digital instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is ready to hit the road. After you shift into a gear successfully, the digital instrument cluster then displays the current gear. Otherwise, it will remind you to confirm the current gear.



Use the gear selector on the center console to shift gear into:

- DRIVE (D): normal drive mode
- REVERSE (R): you can only shift to R when the vehicle is stopped
- PARK (P): the vehicle is secured in place

To enable/disable the sound, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Sounds > Gear Shifting Sound**.

### Caution

Always confirm the gear on the digital instrument cluster after shifting gears. If there are any inconsistencies with the gear displayed, double confirm or shift gears again.

### Caution

You can only shift into PARK when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is pressed.

**Warning**

Before leaving the vehicle or stopping it on a slope, ensure that the gear is shifted into PARK. If you have not confirmed the gear on the digital instrument cluster, the vehicle may roll away.

**Multiple Drive Modes**

Different drive modes offer different driving performance, providing an optimized driving experience and greater convenience in specific situations.

Four normal modes are available: Comfort, Eco, Sport, and Custom. You can also use Snow Mode and Multi-Terrain Mode.

When you start the vehicle for the first time, Comfort Mode is selected by default. Once you change the drive mode, the newly selected mode will be automatically applied the next time you drive the vehicle.

***Selecting a Drive Mode***

Press the button on the center console to quickly choose your desired drive mode.

Enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Drive Mode** to set.

***Customizing Drive Mode***

You can change the following settings under Custom Mode to suit your tastes.

- Regenerative braking
- Ride height
- Suspension stiffness
- Steering
- Air conditioning

Snow Mode can prevent your vehicle from slipping on icy or slippery road surfaces.

**Ride Height**

The suspension height can vary in different drive modes.

- Comfort Mode – The ride height is automatically adjusted.
- Eco Mode – The ride height is automatically adjusted.
- Sport Mode – The ride height is set to Low.



- Customized Mode – The ride height is automatically adjusted.

With automatic ride height, your vehicle changes the ride height according to the driving speed.

### Caution

In Comfort Mode, your comfort may be compromised if you manually select a relatively low ride height.

### Front Cross Traffic Alert

Front Cross Traffic Alert detects traffic passing in front of your vehicle with millimeter-wave radars in the front.

When the vehicle is approaching cross traffic in intersections at a low speed, if any risks of collision with cross traffic in the front are detected, Front Cross Traffic Alert emits visual and audible warnings.



### Warning

Cross Traffic Alert is only a supplement to, and not a substitute for, your visual observation.

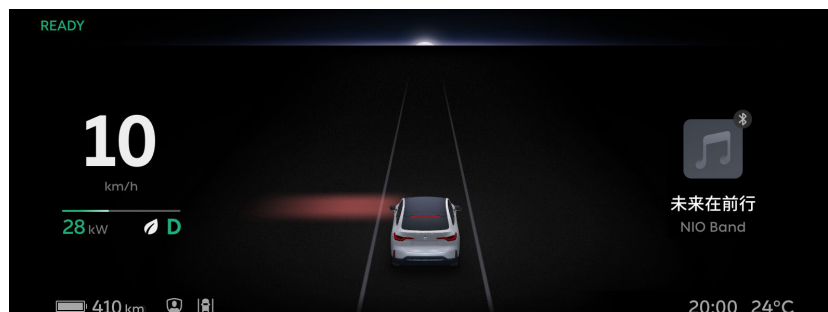
As a driving assist feature, Cross Traffic Alert cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and decide whether to use Cross Traffic Alert when it is safe.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

## ***Enabling/Disabling Front Cross Traffic Alert***

To enable/disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **ADAS > Front Cross Traffic Alert**.



When the operating conditions are fulfilled and a potential collision with front cross traffic is detected, Front Cross Traffic Alert warns you by sounding a chime and displaying an alert message on the digital instrument cluster, 360° Surround View and Parking Assist interfaces.

Operating conditions for Front Cross Traffic Alert:

- Your vehicle speed is between 0 km/h and 12 km/h.
- The speed of the cross traffic passing in front of you is between about 3 km/h and 70 km/h.
- The forward-side millimeter-wave radars function correctly and have a clear view.
- The driver is seated.
- The brake pedal is not pressed.
- The vehicle is in DRIVE.

### **Caution**

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### ***Cautions and Limitations***

Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Motorcycles
- Electric bicycles

- Tricycles

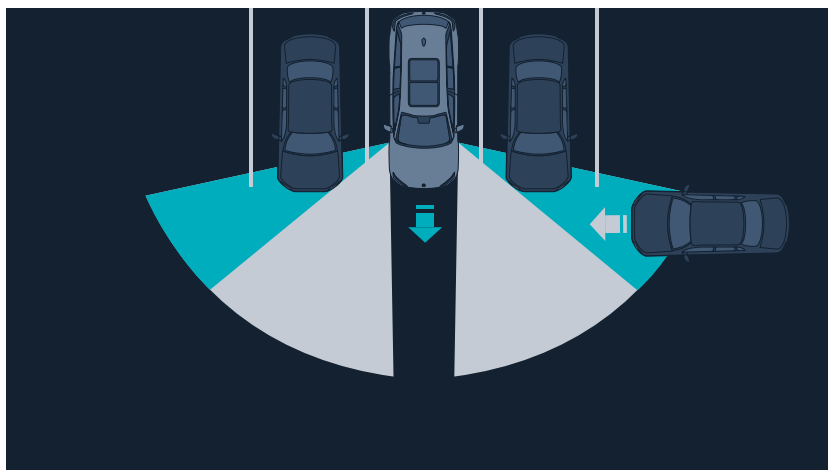
Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Bicycles
- Vehicles moving in the opposite/same direction
- Other non-vehicle objects

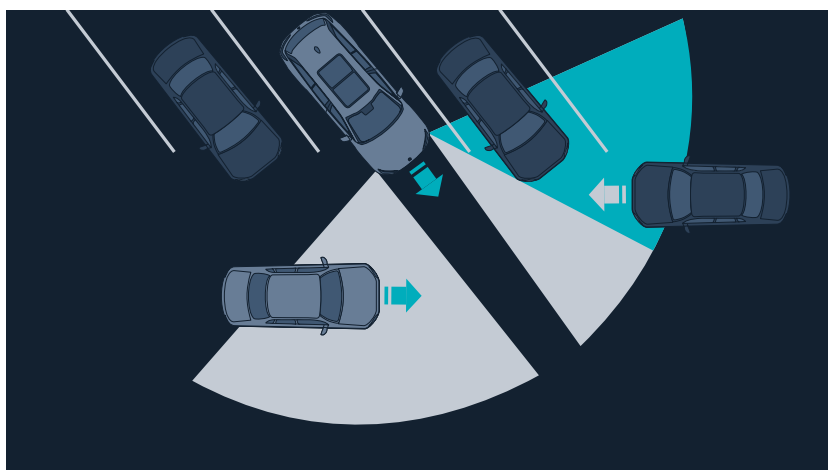
Front Cross Traffic Alert does not respond to targets that are in the blind spot of the sensors. Millimeter waves cannot pass through obstacles.

Front Cross Traffic Alert may fail to detect front cross traffic in some situations, including but not limited to:

- When the vehicle is parked very far into a parking space.



- When the vehicle is parked in a diagonal parking space.



Radars may fail to recognize obstacles and impair the performance of Front Cross Traffic Alert in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Rain, snow, fog, haze, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance.
- False warnings may be generated in rare cases by some metal protective fences, green medians, or concrete walls due to the function of radar recognition.

### **Rear Cross Traffic Alert**

Rear Cross Traffic Alert detects the traffic passing in the rear of your vehicle with millimeter-wave radars in the rear.

When the vehicle is approaching cross traffic in intersections at a low speed, if any risks of collision with cross traffic in the rear are detected, Rear Cross Traffic Alert emits visual and audible warnings.



### **Warning**

Cross Traffic Alert is only a supplement to, and not a substitute for, your visual observation.

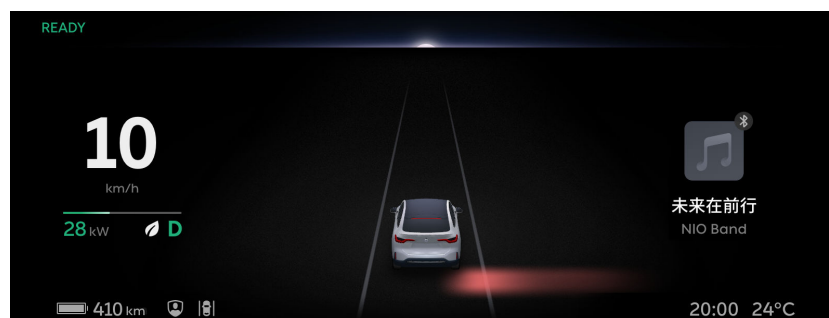
As a driving assist feature, Cross Traffic Alert cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and decide whether to use Cross Traffic Alert when it is safe.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Enabling/Disabling Rear Cross Traffic Alert***

To enable/disable this feature, enter the settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **ADAS > Rear Cross Traffic Alert**.



When your vehicle speed is below about 12 km/h, operating conditions are fulfilled, and a potential collision with rear traffic is detected, Rear Cross Traffic Alert warns you by sounding a chime and displaying an alert message on the digital instrument cluster, the 360° Surround View and Parking Assist interfaces.

Operating conditions for Rear Cross Traffic Alert:

- The speed of the cross traffic passing to the rear is between about 3 km/h and 70 km/h.
- The rear-side millimeter-wave radars function correctly and have a clear view.
- The driver is seated.
- All doors are closed.
- The vehicle is in REVERSE.

### **Caution**

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### ***Cautions and Limitations***

Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Motorcycles
- Electric bicycles

- Tricycles

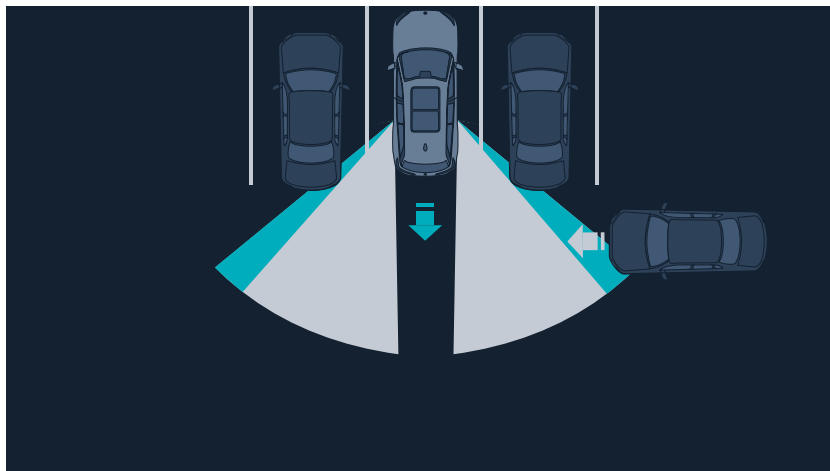
Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Bicycles
- Vehicles moving in the opposite/same direction
- Other non-vehicle objects

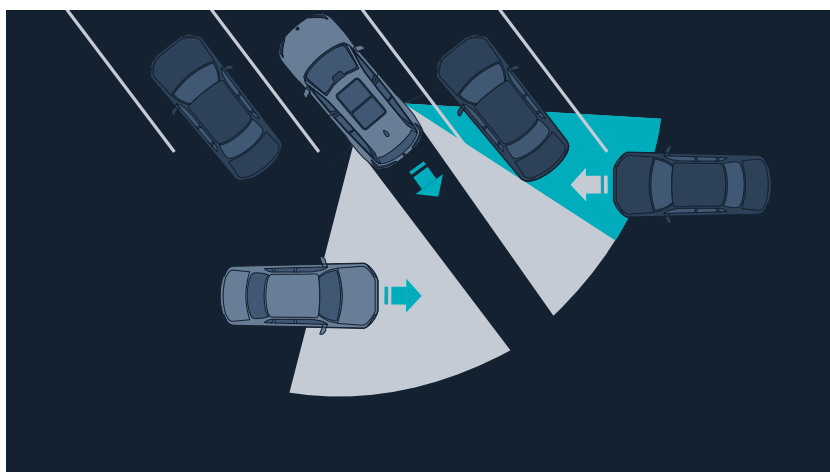
Rear Cross Traffic Alert does not respond to targets that are in the blind spot of the sensors. Millimeter waves cannot pass through obstacles.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert may fail to detect rear cross traffic in some situations, including but not limited to:

- When the vehicle is parked very far into a parking space.



- When the vehicle is parked in a diagonal parking space.



Radars may fail to recognize obstacles and impair the performance of Rear Cross Traffic Alert in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Rain, snow, fog, haze, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance.
- False warnings may be generated in rare cases by some metal protective fences, green medians, or concrete walls due to the function of radar recognition.


### **Hill Start Assist (HSA)**

Hill Start Assist helps prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when you start the vehicle on an incline.

When you release the brake pedal, the system continues to apply the brakes for up to two seconds. The temporary braking will be released after two seconds or when you begin to speed up.

### ***Autohold***

When the vehicle has stopped temporarily, Autohold can continue to apply the brakes when you release the brake pedal to keep the vehicle stationary.

When braking the vehicle to a complete stop, you can activate Autohold with another full press on the brake pedal, and the icon  will appear on the digital instrument cluster. When the feature is activated, press the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal to exit Autohold.

In case of emergency, slamming the brake pedal will activate Autohold.

You can also activate the feature when braking the vehicle to stop on inclines. In this case, the brake system can provide a brake force sufficient to keep the vehicle stationary.

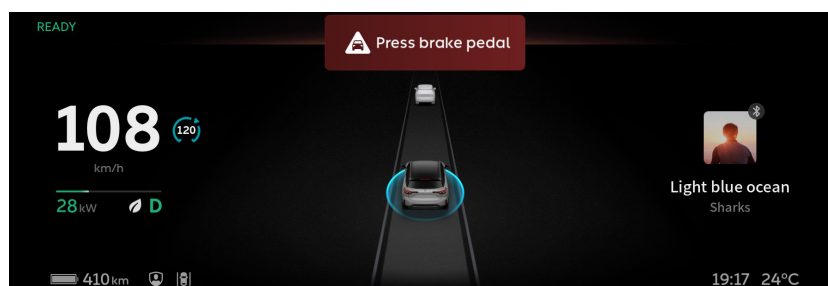
### **Caution**

The grade of the slope shall not exceed 20%.

## Driving on Motorways

### Forward Collision Warning

Forward Collision Warning provides visual and audible warnings in situations where your distance to another vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle, or pedestrian in front of you is shorter than the set warning distance.



- For detection of vehicles moving in the same direction, Forward Collision Warning operates only when you are driving between about 8 km/h and 180 km/h.
- For detection of pedestrians or cyclists, Forward Collision Warning operates only when you are driving between about 8 km/h and 85 km/h.

### Warning

Forward Collision Warning is only a supplement to, and not a substitute for, your attention and judgment. As a driving assist feature, Forward Collision Warning cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions, and cannot detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in all situations. Several factors can cause an invalid, inappropriate or untimely warning.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and never depend on Forward Collision Warning to warn you of a potential collision. Failure to do so can cause personal injury or vehicle damage. For safety reasons, never test the use of Forward Collision Warning when facing the direction of other vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians. If you come across a dangerous situation, never wait for Forward Collision Warning to intervene before you take action. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **ADAS > Forward Collision Warning** to enable or disable the feature.

To adjust warning time, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **ADAS > Timing**.



## Warning

When Forward Collision Warning is disabled, your vehicle will not warn you of a possible collision. It is not suggested to turn it off.

This feature will be turned on when the vehicle's system restarts.

## ***Cautions and Limitations***

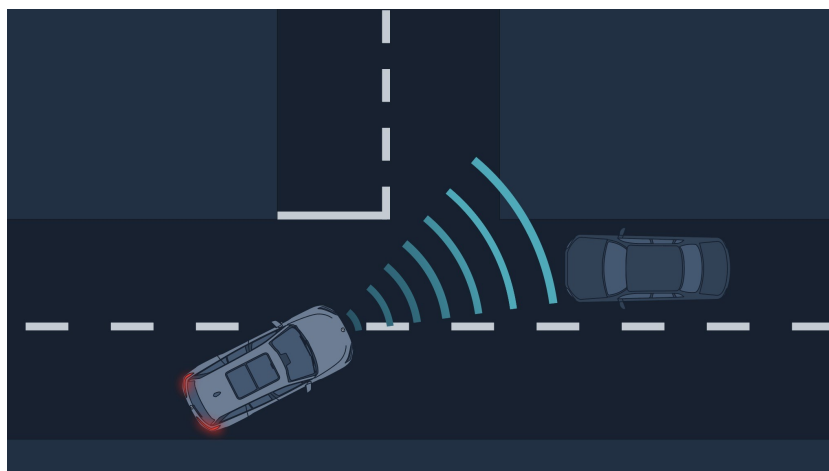
Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to camera detection failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environment, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered by direct sunlight or other light sources.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.
- The camera cannot focus or malfunctions.

Only qualified vehicles moving in the same direction as your vehicle will trigger Forward Collision Warning. Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers (traffic cones, etc.)

- Other non-vehicle objects



### Caution

When the vehicle turns left at a speed of about 10-30 km/h and a risk of collision with an oncoming vehicle is detected within the detection range, Forward Collision Warning will be triggered.

In other scenarios, oncoming vehicles will not trigger Forward Collision Warning.

### Caution

- This feature cannot ensure that all special-shaped vehicles can be identified in all conditions. You need to pay extra attention, especially at night. Special-shaped vehicles may include tricycles, vehicles with a damaged taillight, unclear rear contour, or obstructed rear body, irregular-shaped vehicles, vehicles with a rear body lower than a certain height, or unloaded transporters for carrying vehicles.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

For optimal performance, pedestrian detection requires clear and complete body contour information. This entails being able to detect the pedestrian's head, arms, shoulders, legs, and upper and lower body in combination with normal human movement patterns. Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to failures to identify pedestrians in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians are lower than 100 centimeters or higher than 200 centimeters.

- Pedestrians in clothing (such as raincoats and gowns) that hides their body contours (such as arms and legs).
- Pedestrians who are too close to your vehicle when first caught in the sensor's field of view.
- Pedestrians carrying large baggage or backpacks.
- Pedestrians in poor contrast with the background color.
- Pedestrians with an umbrella that hides their body contour (such as arms and legs).
- Pedestrians who are stooping or squatting.
- Pedestrians in wheelchairs.
- Pedestrians in close proximity to others.
- Pedestrians in reflective clothing.
- Pedestrians in dark conditions, such as at night or in a tunnel.
- Pedestrians who are crossing the road at a significantly changing speed.

For optimal performance, cyclist detection needs clear and complete bicycle and body contour information. Only adult cyclists riding on adult bicycles can be detected. Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to failures to identify cyclists in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Obstructed bicycles or cyclists in clothing that hides their contours.
- Bicycles loaded with large objects.
- Bicycles traveling at high speed.
- Cyclists and bicycles in poor contrast with the background color.
- Cyclists who are crossing the road at a significantly changing speed.
- Cyclists who are too close to your vehicle when first caught in the sensor's field of view.
- Cyclists in dark conditions, such as at night or in a tunnel.
- Cyclists riding self-balancing scooters, standing scooters, certain types of seated scooters, and special-shaped electric bicycles.

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended if the target is not right in front in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Automatic Emergency Brake does not respond to targets that are in the blind spot of the sensors, including the blind spots at the corner, on the side, or at the rear of the vehicle.

- When the vehicle is approaching or navigating a curve, the target may be incorrectly selected or missed.
- The target may be lost or the distance to the target may be misjudged when the vehicle is on a slope.
- When only a part of the vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of you (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), the target may not be identified in time.
- When your vehicle suddenly swerves to the back of a vehicle in front of you or when other vehicles abruptly cut into or out of the lane in front of your vehicle, the target may not be identified in time.

Forward Collision Warning may fail to function as intended due to special or complicated road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, electric bicycles, or animals.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.

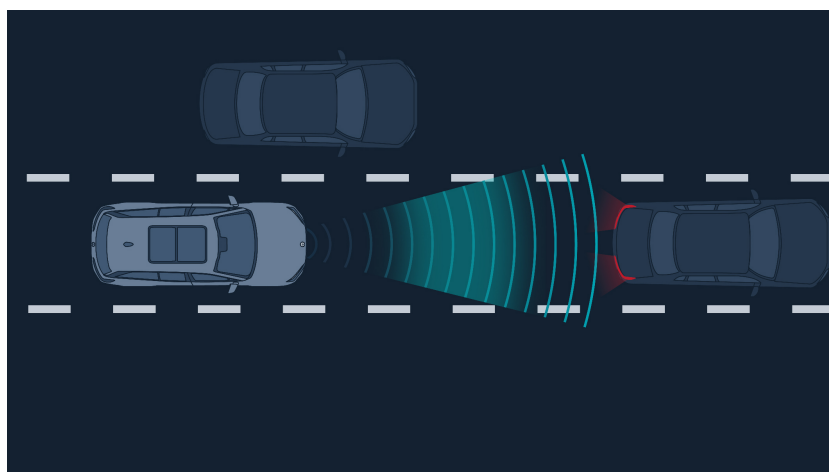
### **Warning**

Forward Collision Warning may not provide a warning in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- The driver is already applying the brakes.
- The driver fully or suddenly presses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver turns the steering wheel sharply.

### **Automatic Emergency Brake**

When a frontal collision with a vehicle, cyclist, or pedestrian is considered unavoidable, the system applies the brakes to reduce your speed and minimize the impact of the collision.



- For detection of vehicles moving in the same direction, Automatic Emergency Brake operates only when you are driving between about 8 km/h and 130km/h.
- For detection of pedestrians or cyclists, Automatic Emergency Brake operates only when you are driving between about 8 km/h and 85 km/h.

When Automatic Emergency Brake has been triggered, the vehicle speed is reduced by up to 60 km/h to mitigate the impact of a possible collision. For example, if Automatic Emergency Brake is triggered at a speed of 90 km/h, the brakes are released after the vehicle speed has been reduced to 30 km/h.

When Automatic Emergency Brake is triggered, the instrument cluster displays a warning message, the brake pedal moves downward abruptly, and the brake lights turn on.

### **Warning**

As a driving assist feature, Automatic Emergency Braking cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions and cannot detect vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in all situations. Several factors can cause an invalid, inappropriate or untimely warning.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and never depend on Automatic Emergency Braking to avoid collisions or reduce the impact of a collision. Failure to do so can cause personal injury or vehicle damage. For safety reasons, never test the use of Automatic Emergency Braking when facing the direction of other vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians. If you come across a dangerous situation, never wait for Automatic Emergency Braking to intervene before taking action. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **ADAS** >**Automatic Emergency Brake** to enable or disable the feature.

### **Warning**

When Automatic Emergency Braking is disabled, your vehicle will not automatically apply the brakes even if a potential frontal collision is detected. It is not suggested to turn it off.

This feature will be turned on when the vehicle's system restarts.

### ***Cautions and Limitations***

In certain situations, the camera may fail to recognize obstacles so that Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to function. including but not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environment, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered by direct sunlight or other light sources.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.
- The camera cannot focus or malfunctions.

Only qualified vehicles moving in the same direction as your vehicle, cyclists, and pedestrians will trigger Automatic Emergency Brake. Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Animals

- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers (traffic cones, etc.)
- Other non-vehicle objects



### Caution

When the vehicle turns left at a speed of about 10-30 km/h and a risk of collision with an oncoming vehicle is detected within the detection range, Forward Collision Warning will be triggered.

In other scenarios, oncoming vehicles will not trigger Forward Collision Warning.

### Caution

- This feature cannot ensure that all special-shaped vehicles can be identified in all conditions. You need to pay extra attention, especially at night. Special-shaped vehicles may include tricycles, vehicles with a damaged taillight, unclear rear contour, or obstructed rear body, irregular-shaped vehicles, vehicles with a rear body lower than a certain height, or unloaded transporters for carrying vehicles.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

For optimal performance, pedestrian detection requires clear and complete body contour information. This entails being able to detect the pedestrian's head, arms, shoulders, legs, and upper and lower body in combination with normal human movement patterns. Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to function as intended

due to failures to identify pedestrians in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians are lower than 100 centimeters or higher than 200 centimeters.
- Pedestrians in clothing (such as raincoats and gowns) that hides their body contours (such as arms and legs).
- Pedestrians who are too close to your vehicle when first caught in the sensor's field of view.
- Pedestrians carrying large baggage or backpacks.
- Pedestrians in poor contrast with the background color.
- Pedestrians with an umbrella that hides their body contour (such as arms and legs).
- Pedestrians who are stooping or squatting.
- Pedestrians in wheelchairs.
- Pedestrians in close proximity to others.
- Pedestrians in reflective clothing.
- Pedestrians in dark conditions, such as at night or in a tunnel.
- Pedestrians who are crossing the road at a significantly changing speed.

For optimal performance, cyclist detection needs clear and complete bicycle and body contour information. Only adult cyclists riding on adult bicycles can be detected. The Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to function as intended due to failures to identify the cyclist in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Obstructed bicycles or cyclists in clothing that hides their contours.
- Bicycles loaded with large objects.
- Bicycles traveling at high speed.
- Cyclists and bicycles in poor contrast with the background color.
- Cyclists who are crossing the road at a significantly changing speed.
- Cyclists who are too close to your vehicle when first caught in the sensor's field of view.
- Cyclists in dark conditions, such as at night or in a tunnel.
- Cyclists riding self-balancing scooters, standing scooters, certain types of seated scooters, and special-shaped electric bicycles.



Automatic Emergency Brake may fail to function as intended if the target is not right in front in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Automatic Emergency Brake does not respond to targets that are in the dead zone of the sensors, including the dead zones at the corner, on the side, or at the rear of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is approaching or navigating a curve, the target may be incorrectly selected or missed.
- The target may be lost or the distance to the target may be misjudged when the vehicle is on a slope.
- When only a part of the vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of you (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), the target may not be identified in time.
- When your vehicle suddenly swerves to the back of a vehicle in front of you or when other vehicles abruptly cut into or out of the lane in front of your vehicle, the target may not be identified in time.

The performance of Automatic Emergency Brake in reducing the impact of a collision may be affected due to special or complex road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, electric bicycles, or animals.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.

### Caution

The braking distance increases on slippery roads. If Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are triggered, the performance of Automatic Emergency Braking in reducing the impact of a collision may be impaired.

**Warning**

The brake pedal moves downward abruptly during automatic braking events. Do not place any objects under the brake pedal. Doing so can impede the ability of the brake pedal to move freely.

**Warning**

Automatic Emergency Braking is not a substitute for maintaining a safe traveling distance between you and the vehicles, cyclists and pedestrians in front of you. Do not stay too close to vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians in front of you and avoid driving aggressively.

**Warning**

Automatic Emergency Braking is designed to reduce the impact of frontal collisions only. It does not function when your vehicle is in REVERSE.

**Warning**

Automatic Emergency Braking may not apply the brakes or may stop applying the brakes in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- The driver fully or suddenly presses the accelerator pedal.
- The driver turns the steering wheel sharply.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- Automatic Emergency Braking has been triggered and cannot be triggered again within roughly 20 seconds.
- No vehicle, cyclist or pedestrian is detected in front of the vehicle.

**Warning**

The above-mentioned limitations do not represent an exhaustive list of factors that may interfere with the proper operation of Automatic Emergency Braking. It is the driver's responsibility to avoid collisions by staying alert at all times and controlling the vehicle.

***Multi Collision Braking (MCB)***

Multi Collision Braking (MCB) comes standard on ES8. In certain types of collisions, the vehicle applies brakes to help prevent or mitigate a secondary collision.

To help avoid or mitigate a secondary collision, the brakes are applied automatically to help braking the vehicle to stop. The brake lights and hazard warning flashers will be activated and the flashers will remain on after the vehicle has come to a standstill. The electrical parking brake will then be applied automatically.

In a situation where stopping the vehicle may not be desirable, you can override this operation by pressing the accelerator pedal.

This feature can only operate when the braking system is sufficiently intact after the collision.

### **Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)**

Lane Keeping Assist uses the trifocal camera to detect lane lines. When lane lines are clearly detected and the vehicle is drifting out of the current lane, it warns you or applies steering assist to reduce the risk of lane departure.

Lane Keeping Assist includes:

- Warning only (Lane Departure Warning): reminds you with appropriate visual and audio alerts when your vehicle is drifting into an adjacent lane or crossing the lane line.
- Warning and control (Lane Keeping Assist): slightly steers the vehicle to reduce the possibility of lane departure and provides appropriate visual and audio alerts when your vehicle is drifting into an adjacent lane or crossing the lane line.

### **Warning**

Lane Keeping Assist can only provide limited steering assist and cannot control the vehicle's speed.

Lane Keeping Assist is unable to constantly control the steering. Therefore, it cannot always keep the vehicle centered in the lane.

### **Warning**

Lane Keeping Assist has limited steering torque which can only provide a slight steering assist and cannot fully guarantee the prevention of lane departure. Therefore, do not rely solely on Lane Keeping Assist to steer. Take over steering immediately when necessary.

Please take over steering immediately when cornering, turning around, or driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves.

## Warning

As a driving assist feature, Lane Keeping Assist cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. Lane Keeping Assist is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Lane Keeping Assist if it is safe. You should take over steering immediately when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for enabling Lane Keeping Assist, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in the lane and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

## Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Lane Keeping Assist
- Using Lane Keeping Assist in bad weather conditions
- Using Lane Keeping Assist on non-standardized roads
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

### ***Enabling/Disabling Lane Keeping Assist***

Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap ADAS > **Lane Departure Warning & Assist** to enable or disable this feature.

After enabling Rear Cross Traffic Alert, you can choose the assist level and sensitivity:

- Assist Level
  - Warning (Lane Departure Warning): warning only
  - Warning & Control (Lane Keeping Assist): warning and slight steering assist
- Sensitivity:
  - Low: lower sensitivity to lane departures
  - Medium: normal sensitivity to lane departures
  - High: higher sensitivity to lane departures

**Caution**

Enabling Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist does not activate this feature. This feature is automatically activated when the operating conditions are met.

When Lane Keeping Assist controls the steering, the steering wheel will turn accordingly.

You can take over steering by turning the steering wheel manually.

Operating Conditions for Lane Keeping Assist:

- Pilot Steering Assist is not activated (refer to Pilot for details).
- Driving speed of 65-130 km/h.
- The vehicle is traveling normally, without abrupt acceleration, deceleration, or swerving.
- The vehicle is traveling in the center of the lane instead of on the lane line.
- At least one lane line is clear.
- The trifocal camera is operating normally with a clear view.
- All components of Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist are operating correctly.
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, including:
  - The driver is seated.
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt.
  - All doors are closed
  - The gear is shifted into DRIVE.
  - Anti-lock braking system, traction control and vehicle stability control are not triggered
  - Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.

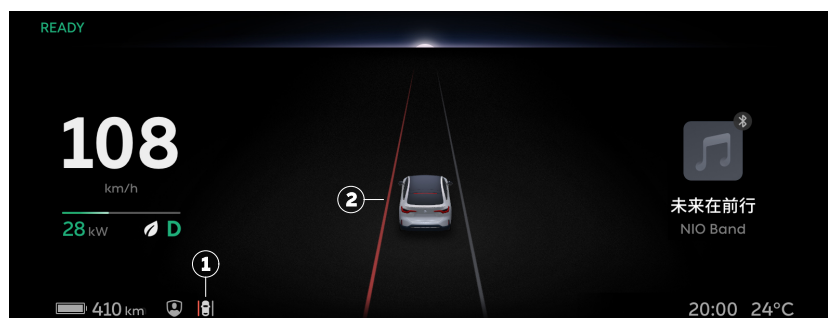
**Caution**

When the turn signal is active, Lane Keeping Assist does not provide any reminders or take control if your vehicle deviates towards the corresponding side.

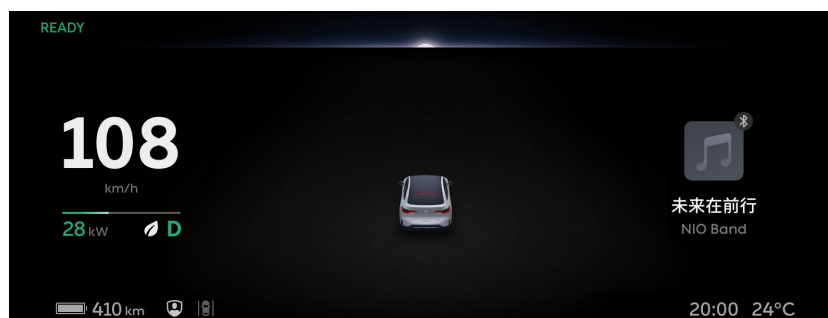
## Warning

The maximum speed is the theoretical top speed for Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist. Please comply with traffic safety laws and regulations, including but not limited to vehicle speed, when enabling Lane Departure Warning and Lane Keeping Assist.

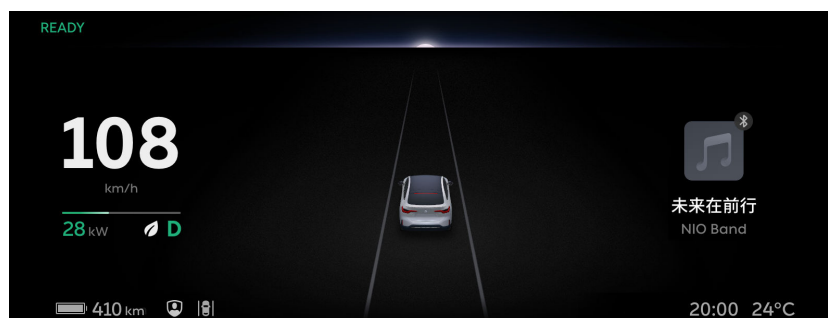
### Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster



1. Lane Keeping Assist status icon:
  2. Lane Line Display
- Icon not shown: Lane Keeping Assist not enabled
  - Icon in gray: Lane Keeping Assist is enabled but not activated

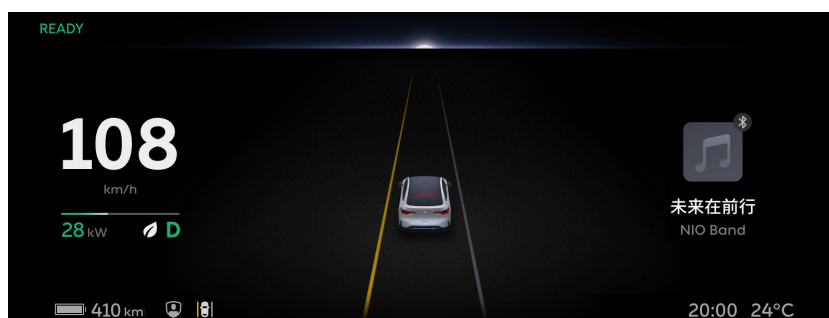


- Icon and lane lines in white: Lane Keeping Assist is activated

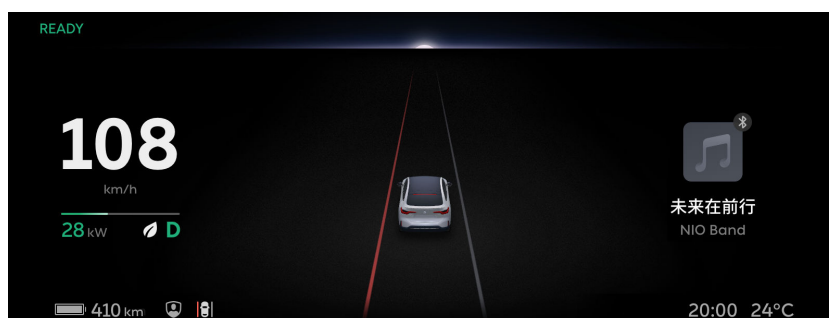


- Icon and one lane line in yellow: When the assist level is Warning & Control, this indicates that Lane Keeping Assist is steering to reduce the possibility of

drifting out of the lane on the corresponding side. If the risk level increases, the status icon and one lane line will turn to red and the system plays a prompt sound continuously.



- Icon and one lane line in red: When the assist level is Warning, this indicates a lane departure risk on the corresponding side.



## Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### ***Cautions and Limitations***

Lane Keeping Assist may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The vehicle is navigating sharp curves, such as on expressway ramps.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The road section has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads, intersections, or construction areas.
- The road section has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.

- Lane lines are not clearly divided, such as merging or diverging lanes, expressway ramps, urban intersections, or left-turn waiting areas.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.

Lane Keeping Assist may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically due to camera recognition failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environment, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered by large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered by direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

We do not recommend using Lane Keeping Assist in some special or complicated road conditions as it may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically. Such conditions include but are not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.



- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, freeway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.
- Roads without center medians.
- Construction sites.

### **Emergency Lane Keeping**

Emergency Lane Keeping (ELK) uses the trifocal camera to detect lane lines or curbs. When the conditions are met in an emergency, it applies steering assist to reduce the risk of lane departure.

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Driver Assist >Emergency Lane Keeping** to enable or disable the feature.

When the vehicle speed is between 65 km/h to 130 km/h, Emergency Lane Keeping may be triggered in the following four emergent situations:

- Without engaging the turn signal, the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the right.
- When the lane lines are solid, without engaging the turn signal, the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to a solid lane line.
- When there are oncoming vehicles on the adjacent left lane, without engaging the turn signal, the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the left.
- When there are vehicles approaching rapidly from behind on the adjacent left lane, the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the left or voluntarily makes a lane change.

### **Warning**

Emergency Lane Keeping has limited steering torque which can only provide certain steering assist and cannot fully guarantee the prevention of lane

departure or avoidance of danger. Therefore, please take over steering in time instead of relying solely on Emergency Lane Keeping.

Please control the vehicle direction immediately when cornering, turning around, or driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves.

### **Warning**

As a driver assist feature, Emergency Lane Keeping cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions. Never rely solely on Emergency Lane Keeping to avoid danger. For safety reasons, never test this feature by deliberately or actively triggering Emergency Lane Keeping. If you come across a dangerous situation, never wait Emergency Lane Keeping to intervene before taking action. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely in the lane and complying with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### **Warning**

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Emergency Lane Keeping
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

### **Operating Conditions for Emergency Lane Keeping:**

- The driving speed is 65-130 km/h.
- The vehicle is driving without abrupt acceleration, deceleration, or swerving.
- The vehicle is in the center of the lane, not driving on the lane line.
- The trifocal camera is operating normally with a clear view.
- All components of Lane Keeping Assist are operating correctly.
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, including:
  - The driver is seated.
  - The vehicle is in DRIVE.
  - Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.

- The Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.

### Caution

Emergency Lane Keeping is automatically activated when the conditions are met in an emergency.

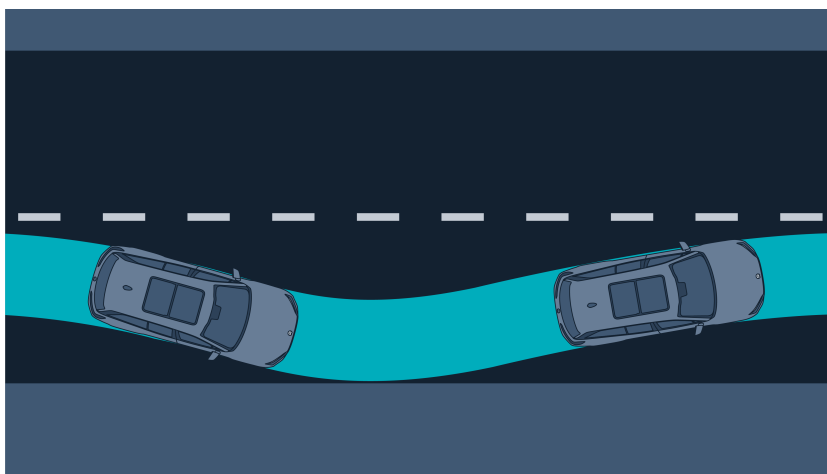
Emergency Lane Keeping can only provide limited steering assist and cannot control the vehicle's speed.

Emergency Lane Keeping is unable to constantly control the steering. Therefore, it cannot always keep the vehicle centered in the lane.

When Emergency Lane Keeping controls your steering, the steering wheel will turn accordingly.

You can take over steering by turning the steering wheel manually.

### ***Emergency Lane Keeping when deviating to the right***



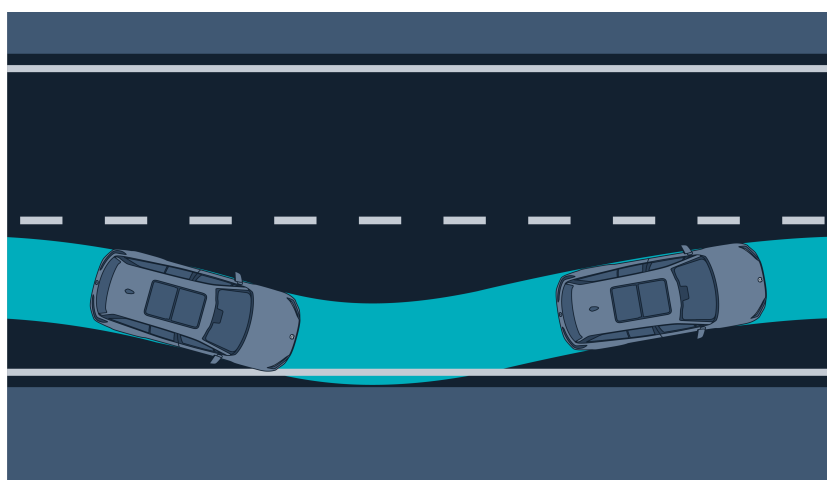
When operating conditions for Emergency Lane Keeping are met, if the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the right, Emergency Lane Keeping will provide steering assist. In this case, the vehicle icon and the right lane line turn yellow on the instrument cluster.

### Warning

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may deviate to the right in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Curbs are not clear or cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective curbs, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night;
- There are roadside obstacles that Emergency Lane Keeping cannot identify, such as fences, guard rails, traffic cones and cone rods;
- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

### ***Emergency Lane Keeping when deviating to the solid lane line***



When operating conditions for Emergency Lane Keeping are met, if the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to a solid lane, Emergency Lane Keeping will provide steering assist. In this case, the vehicle icon and the corresponding lane line turn red on the instrument cluster.

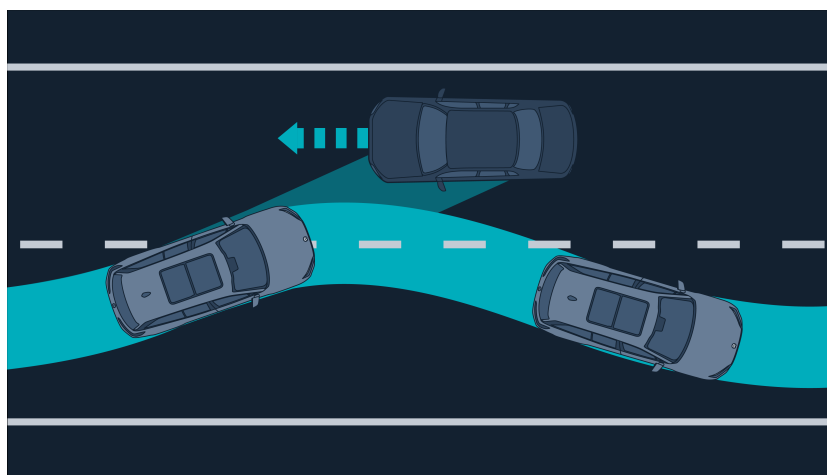
### **Warning**

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may deviate to the solid lane line in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.

- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

### ***Emergency Lane Keeping when deviating to the oncoming vehicles on the left***



When operating conditions for Emergency Lane Keeping are met, if the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the left adjacent lane where there are oncoming vehicles, Emergency Lane Keeping will provide steering assist. In this case, the vehicle icon and the left lane line turn red on the instrument cluster.

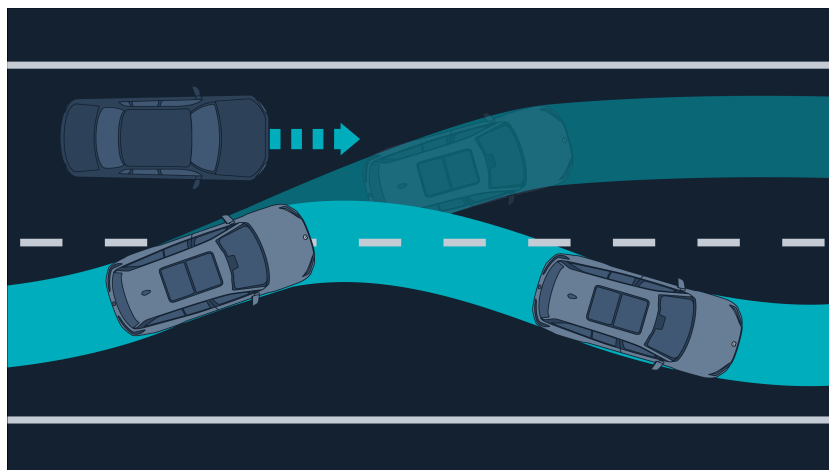
### **Warning**

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may collide with the lead vehicle on the left in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.

- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.
- The oncoming vehicle is not a vehicle, such as a motorcycle.

***Emergency Lane Keeping when deviating to the vehicles approaching from behind on the left***



When operating conditions for Emergency Lane Keeping are met, if the vehicle involuntarily deviates from its lane to the left adjacent lane where there are vehicles approaching rapidly from behind, Emergency Lane Keeping will provide steering assist. In this case, the vehicle icon and the left lane line turn red on the instrument cluster.

**Warning**

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically and the vehicle may collide with the vehicle approaching from behind on the left in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.
- Lane lines are special ones.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.

- The vehicle is steering around a sharp bend, or driving on a sloped road, bumpy road, road with water or snow and ice, etc.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically due to camera recognition failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered with direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to operate as intended or cancel automatically due to radar recognition failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

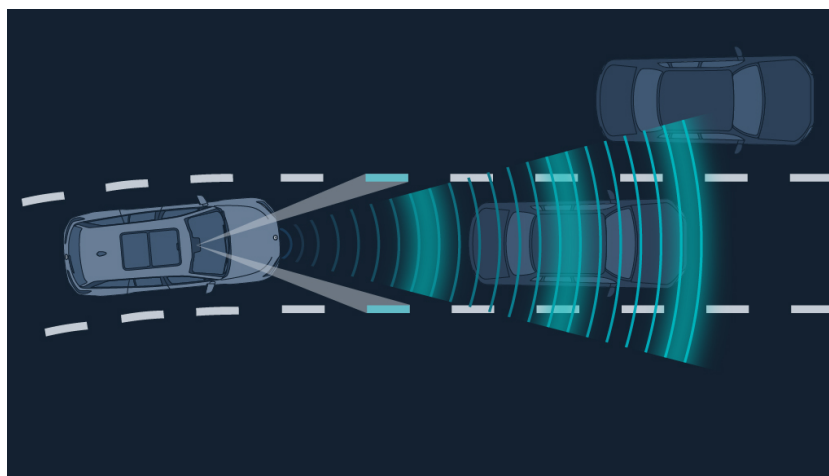
- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Rain, snow, fog, haze, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance.
- False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.

Emergency Lane Keeping may fail to function as intended or be disabled automatically in special or complicated situations, including but not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, motorway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Construction areas.

## Pilot

Motorway Pilot and Traffic Jam Pilot perform Lane Keeping and Steering Assist alongside speed control and distance maintenance by Adaptive Cruise Control. Pilot detects vehicles in front of you with the trifocal camera and millimeter-wave radars, and automatically controls your speed to maintain a safe distance. Pilot also identifies lane lines with the trifocal camera and can provide steering assist to keep the vehicle in the current lane when there are clear lane lines on both sides.



As a driving assist feature, Pilot does not perform autonomous driving, so you must concentrate on the road.

Pilot is mainly used on roads with clear lane lines and limited access, such as main roads and congested sections of motorways and elevated roads.



**Caution**

Steering Assist only functions when you hold the steering wheel while driving to ensure that you can take over the steering at any time. If it detects that your hands are off the steering wheel, Steering Assist will provide a reminder with visual and sound alerts.

**Caution**

Steering Assist will strive to keep the vehicle in the lane when there are clear lane lines on both sides. Special road conditions and poor lighting on rainy days or at nighttime may result in impaired lane recognition, failure to keep the vehicle in the lane, or scratching. In this case, it is suggested that you temporarily turn off Pilot and switch to Adaptive Cruise Control.

**Warning**

As a driving assist feature, Pilot cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Pilot if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for Pilot, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for maintaining an appropriate distance, speed, and steering, and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

**Warning**

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Pilot
- Using Pilot in bad weather conditions
- Using Pilot in an environment where there are pedestrians, bicycles or animals
- Using Pilot on sharp curves
- Using Pilot when the lane lines are unclear or the lighting is poor
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

## Warning

As a feature for driving comfort, and not for preventing collisions, Pilot has a limited maximum deceleration that is less than the maximum deceleration requested for Automatic Emergency Brake and normal driving scenarios.

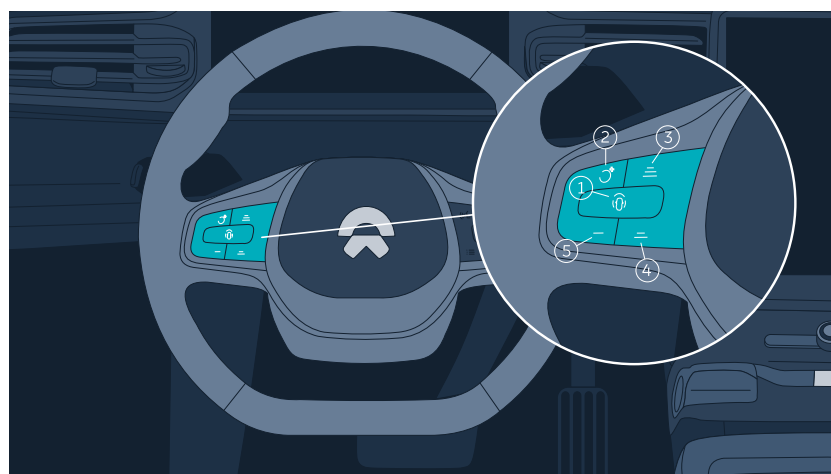
Pilot may fail to stop your vehicle when its speed relative to the lead vehicle is greater than 50 km/h. In this case, exit Pilot immediately for your safety. Do not use Pilot to fully stop your vehicle behind another stationary vehicle or follow the lead vehicle to a stop in this situation.






## Warning

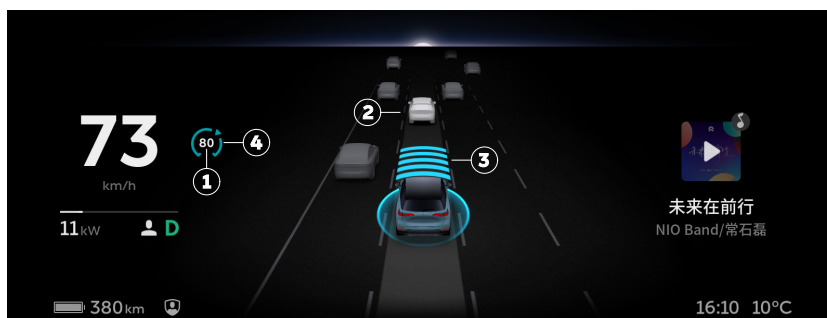
Pilot has a limited steering torque that is less than the maximum steering force required in normal driving scenarios. Therefore, do not rely solely on Pilot to steer your vehicle. You should always be prepared to take over the steering, especially when navigating curves.

Please take over the steering immediately when cornering, turning around, or driving on winding roads. Do not rely on Pilot in such situations.

## Enabling Pilot



1. : Activate or deactivate Pilot
2. : Increase the cruise speed or resume Pilot
3. : Increase the time-distance to the lead vehicle
4. : Reduce the time-distance to the lead vehicle
5. : Reduce the cruise speed



1. The set cruise speed
2. The target lead vehicle
3. Time-distance to the lead vehicle
4. Pilot status icon
  - Icon not shown: Pilot cannot be activated as the required conditions are not met.
  - Icon in gray: Pilot is awaiting activation.
  - Icon in white: Steering Assist is in the Standby Mode. Pilot is ready to engage Adaptive Cruise Control and is searching for lane lines.
  - Icon in blue: Pilot is fully activated with both Adaptive Cruise Control and Steering Assist.

When operating conditions are met, press  in the middle to activate Pilot.

- If the lane lines on both sides are clear and your vehicle is in the center of the lane, Adaptive Cruise Control and Steering Assist will engage together.
- If the lane lines on both sides are not clear and your vehicle is not in the center of the lane, Adaptive Cruise Control will engage first and start searching for lane lines. Steering Assist will engage when required conditions are met.

Pilot can be activated at a speed of 15-130 km/h with no vehicles in front, or at 0-130 km/h with a vehicle in front.

- The cruise speed is set at 30 km/h when the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h.
- The cruise speed is set at the current speed when the vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

After Adaptive Cruise Control engages and starts searching for lane lines, you can release the accelerator pedal and let Pilot maintain the set cruise speed.

- When there is a vehicle ahead, Pilot will adjust the speed according to the speed and distance to the lead vehicle. The maximum speed will not exceed the cruise speed.
- When there are no vehicles ahead, Pilot will quickly adjust the speed of your vehicle to the cruise speed.

When Steering Assist engages, it will actively control your steering, but please continue to lightly grip the steering wheel with both hands. As your hands may have a slight impact on steering assist, please pay close attention to the vehicle's movement and remain prepared to take over the steering wheel at any time.

When Pilot controls your steering, the steering wheel will turn accordingly. When Pilot accelerates the vehicle, the accelerator pedal does not move. When Pilot brakes the vehicle, the brake pedal might move.

#### **Operating conditions for Pilot:**

- The speed does not exceed 130 km/h.
- The trifocal camera and millimeter-wave radars are operating normally with a clear view.
- All Pilot components are operating correctly.
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, including:
  - The driver is seated.
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt.
  - All doors are closed.
  - The vehicle is in DRIVE.
  - The brake pedal is not pressed.
  - Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.
  - The Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.

#### **Caution**






When Steering Assist is on standby, Adaptive Cruise Control will continue searching for lane lines and Lane Keeping Assist will maintain normal operations if the required conditions are met. For more details, please refer to "Lane Keeping Assist"

## Caution

When Steering Assist is active and a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to your vehicle, Pilot may steer your vehicle slightly away from the center of the lane to avoid a collision. However, do not deliberately attempt to solely rely on this feature. You should take over the vehicle when necessary.

## ***Adjusting Cruise Speed***

When Pilot is activated:

- Press  or  on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/- 1 km/h.
- Press and hold  or  on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/- 5 km/h.
- Press the accelerator pedal and press  to set the cruise speed to the current speed if the current speed is greater than the set cruise speed, or to increase the cruise speed by 1 km/h if the current speed is less than the set cruise speed.

When using Pilot, you can set a cruise speed of up to 130 km/h.



The minimum set speed of Pilot is 30 km/h, but Pilot can follow a lead vehicle to a full stop (0 km/h).

## Warning

The maximum set speed is the theoretical top speed for Pilot. Please comply with traffic safety laws and regulations, including but not limited to vehicle speed, when enabling and setting Pilot.

## ***Adjusting the Time-Distance to the Lead Vehicle***

When Pilot is activated or awaiting activation, the following time-distance can be set to one of five grades.

- Press  to increase the following time-distance by one level.
- Press  to decrease the following time-distance by one level.

## Caution

When the time distance for vehicle following is set shorter, Pilot's driving pattern will be more aggressive, which may cause discomfort.

## Warning

It is your responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance at all time. Do not rely solely on Pilot to maintain an accurate or appropriate following distance.



### ***Taking Over Control and Resuming Pilot***


When driving with Pilot, you can take over the vehicle by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or turning the steering wheel. When you take over by pressing the accelerator pedal, Pilot will longer respond to the movements of the target lead vehicle.

When you stop pressing the accelerator pedal, Pilot will immediately resume.

When you take over by turning the steering wheel, Steering Assist will temporarily switch to standby, but Adaptive Cruise Control will remain on and search for lane lines. In this case, steering is under your control.

When you stop turning the steering wheel, if the lane lines on both sides are clear and your vehicle is in the center of the lane, Pilot will automatically resume.

If Pilot is deactivated by pressing  or the brake pedal, it can be reactivated by pressing  and will resume the previously set cruise speed.

Five seconds after following the lead vehicle to a stop, Pilot can be reactivated by pressing  or the accelerator pedal. In this case, it will resume the previously set cruise speed.

When Pilot is reactivated, Adaptive Cruise Control is the first to engage and will start searching for lane lines. If the lane lines on both sides are clear and your vehicle is in the center of the lane, Steering Assist will engage concurrently.

## Caution

When Pilot Steering Assist is functioning properly, toggling the turn signal lever will put Pilot Steering Assist on standby, which requires you to take over the steering promptly. During this time, Adaptive Cruise Control will remain on and continue searching for lane lines. When the required conditions are met, Steering Assist will resume automatically.


## Warning

Steering Assist may fail to operate as intended in certain situations or disengage to standby while providing sound and text alerts to remind you to take over steering. During this time, Adaptive Cruise Control will remain on and continue searching for lane lines. When the required conditions are met, Steering Assist will resume automatically. The situations include but are not limited to:

- The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve, e.g. an expressway ramp or traffic diversion lines.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The road has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads, intersections, or construction areas.
- The road has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.
- Lane lines are not clearly divided, such as lane lines merging or diverting, expressway ramps, urban intersections, left-turn waiting areas, etc.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or night.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.

## ***Deactivating Pilot***

When the following conditions occur, Pilot deactivates, stops automatic speed and steering control, and emits an audio alert:

- The steering wheel button  is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The driver continuously presses the accelerator pedal for about one minute to take over control.
- The vehicle is stopped for about five minutes.
- The driver's hands are off the steering wheel for an extended period.

Pilot will also be deactivated when its operating conditions are not met. Upon deactivation, you must immediately take over control of the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, and steering wheel.

### Caution

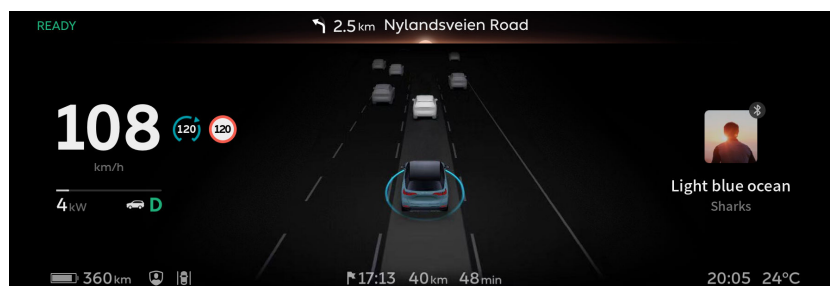
When Pilot is canceled, your vehicle may decelerate due to power regeneration and will no longer automatically control steering and speed.

### Warning

Pilot may suddenly be canceled due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

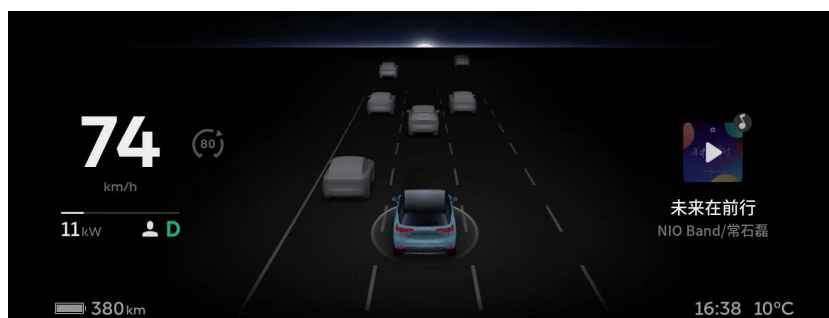
### Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster

- Steering Assist is in the Standby Mode and Pilot is ready to engage Adaptive Cruise Control and is searching for lane lines. However, you still control steering.
- Pilot is fully activated with both Adaptive Cruise Control and Steering Assist.



- Pilot is deactivated and in the Standby Mode. It can be reactivated by pressing .





### Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### Caution

When neither lane line is clear, but there is a vehicle in front that meets requirements, your vehicle can follow the lead vehicle for a short time.

### Warning

When lane lines are unclear on both sides and your vehicle is following the lead vehicle, you may collide with other vehicles in adjacent lanes if the lead vehicle changes lanes at a slow speed. Therefore, you need to be prepared to take over at any time to ensure your safety.

**Hold the steering wheel and keep your eyes on the road in front.**

When using Pilot, make sure you hold the steering wheel and keep eyes on the road in front.

If the system detects that you are not holding the steering wheel for a period of time, the digital instrument cluster will display "Hold the steering wheel. Or Pilot will be temporarily disabled" with continuous warning sounds.

Pilot will be temporarily disabled if you do not take over the vehicle. Then you won't be able to activate it or Adaptive Cruise Control in the current driving cycle. You can resume it by shifting into PARK after stopping your vehicle.

The alert will disappear when the system detects that you are holding the steering wheel.

**Caution**

Pilot may still alert you when you are holding the steering wheel. In this case, you can lightly grip or turn the steering wheel to cancel the alert.

**Warning**

As Pilot may not detect when you take your hands off the steering wheel and fail to send an alert, do not rely solely on the system to remind you to hold the steering wheel.

**Emergency Driver Assist**

If the system detects that you are not holding the steering wheel or paying attention to the road after prompting you with "Hold the steering wheel. Or Pilot will be temporarily disabled", the system will activate Emergency Driver Assist once the conditions are met. In this case, the instrument cluster will prompt you with "Emergency Driver Assist activated. Take over now", and turn on the hazard warning lights. The vehicle will apply brake jerks and sound chimes to remind you to take over, and brake the vehicle until it stops. When the vehicle is stopped, it will unlock the doors automatically.

When Emergency Driver Assist is activated, you can take over anytime by pressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, rotating the steering wheel or turning off the hazard warning lights.

**Caution**

Emergency Driving Assist can only function properly when the restrictions for Pilot are met.

**Warning**

When activated, Emergency Driving Assist will brake the vehicle until it stops. During the process, drifting or collision may not be avoided. Do not rely on or deliberately trigger this feature.

**Keep a Safe Distance**




If the digital instrument cluster displays "Collision risk, keep a safe distance," it means that a safe distance can no longer be guaranteed with the maximum deceleration that Pilot can exert and there may be a risk of collision. In this case, you must immediately take over the brake pedal and steering wheel to control the speed and steering.

### Warning

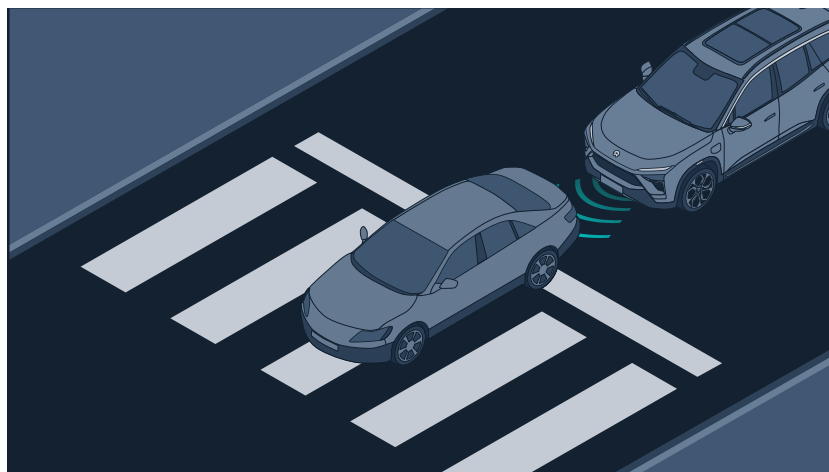
If you encounter a dangerous situation, do not wait for a warning before taking action and take over immediately.

### ***Lead Vehicle Start Alert***

When following a lead vehicle to a full stop:

- If the lead vehicle starts within about five seconds, Pilot will automatically start the vehicle to follow. You need to ensure it is safe to follow the lead vehicle to avoid any collisions.
- If the lead vehicle starts within about five seconds, Pilot automatically starts the vehicle to follow. Before that, Pilot will emit a sound to remind you.
- If the lead vehicle starts after five seconds, the digital instrument cluster reminds you that "The lead vehicle started", and you need to ensure it is safe to follow the lead car, and press  or press the accelerator pedal to reactivate Pilot to follow.
- If the lead vehicle remains stopped for over five minutes, Pilot is deactivated and the Electric Parking Brake is engaged.

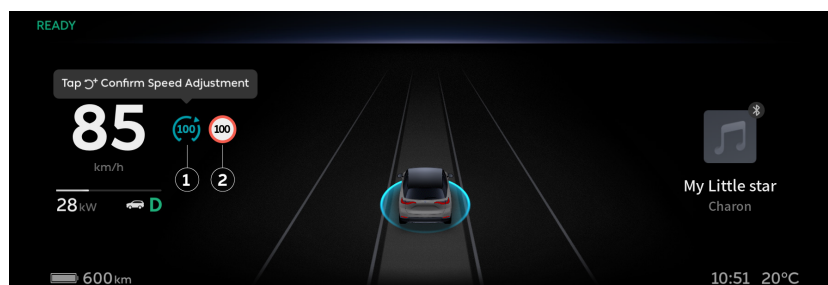
After following the lead vehicle to a full stop, Pilot can only restart your vehicle when a distance of over four meters is maintained.



## Warning

Pilot cannot detect other vehicles or road users in all situations and may be ineffective, inappropriate, or late due to multiple factors. You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and never rely on Pilot to start your vehicle to follow the lead vehicle. Failure to do so can cause personal injury or vehicle damage.

## Smart Speed Assist



1. The indicator of the set cruise speed
2. For more details, refer to "Traffic Sign Recognition and Speed Limit Warning" in the User Manual.

When the system detects that the speed limit information has changed and is over 10 km/h higher than the set speed, the cruise speed indicator on the instrument cluster will flash for a period of time. In this case, press the "Resume/+" button on the steering wheel to quickly adjust the cruise speed to the newly detected speed limit.

When the system detects that the speed limit information has changed and is over 10 km/h lower than the set speed, the cruise speed indicator on the instrument cluster will flash for a period of time. In this case, press the "-" button

on the steering wheel to quickly adjust the cruise speed to the newly detected speed limit.

### Caution

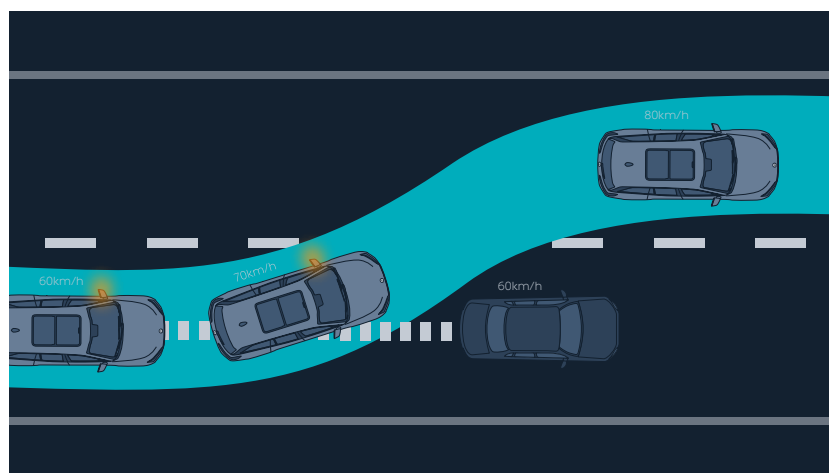
When the speed setting icon no longer flashes, short press the "Resume/+" or "-" button on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/-1 km/h. For details, refer to "Adjusting Cruise Speed".

### Warning

Intelligent Speed Assist is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation. Never rely solely on Intelligent Speed Assist to set the cruise speed and vehicle speed. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road conditions, and drive at an appropriate and safe speed in compliance with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Overtaking Assist***

When following the lead vehicle, if you turn on the left turn signal and turn the steering wheel to attempt to overtake the lead vehicle, this feature will help you accelerate with the maximum speed as the set cruise speed.



Operating conditions for Overtaking Assist:

- Pilot is enabled and a lead vehicle is detected.
- The speed is over 50 km/h but not above the set cruise speed.
- There is no lane line or a dashed line on the target lane.
- A safe distance is kept between your vehicle and the lead vehicle.
- Hazard warning lights are off.

- Turn signals are operating correctly.

When the above-mentioned conditions are met, fully engage the left turn signal to activate Overtaking Assist. Steering Assist will temporarily switch to standby, but Adaptive Cruise Control will remain activated. When you turn the steering wheel left, Adaptive Cruise Control will continue to maintain a safe distance to the lead vehicle, but allow you to get slightly closer than the set distance. When changing lanes, Adaptive Cruise Control will accelerate the vehicle without the accelerator pedal being pressed, but the maximum speed will not exceed the set cruise speed.

### Caution

Your vehicle may decelerate when Overtaking Assist is in operation due to the lead vehicle in the current or target lane, which is highlighted on the digital instrument cluster.

Overtaking Assist is deactivated and Adaptive Cruise Control remains activated in the following situations:

- The lane change is completed.
- Overtaking Assist is active for too long.
- The turn signal lever is toggled back before a lane change.

### Caution

When the operating conditions for Pilot are not met, Overtaking Assist and Pilot will both be canceled.

### Caution

Overtaking Assist only assists in adjusting the vehicle's driving speed, and cannot control the steering. You must manually control the steering at all times.

### Caution

Overtaking Assist is unable to distinguish your intention to overtake from your intention to turn left.

### Warning

Overtaking Assist only detects the vehicle in front of you. In order to ensure your safety, you must take the initiative to inspect your surroundings before and during the process of overtaking.

**Warning**

When using Overtaking Assist, you should be aware of the possibility of sudden acceleration or a lack of acceleration, and always be prepared to press or fully press the accelerator pedal to take over. Do not rely solely on this feature to overtake other vehicles.

**Warning**

Overtaking Assist may fail to operate as intended in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- Approaching a left-hand exit
- Driving on winding roads
- The front vehicle's status in the current or target lane changes suddenly, e.g. sudden deceleration
- Obstacles to the side or rear of the vehicle

***Overtaking Right Prevention***

On motorways or elevated roads, if Pilot detects that there is a vehicle to your left front going faster than 85 km/h in the same direction, Overtaking Right Prevention will be activated. The target vehicle will be highlighted on the instrument cluster, and Pilot will prevent the vehicle from overtaking the target vehicle. You can adjust the following time-distance to the lead vehicle.

Overtaking Right Prevention is deactivated in the following situations:

- There is no target vehicle on the left front.
- The speed of the target vehicle is below 70 km/h.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- Pilot is deactivated.

**Warning**

Disabling Overtaking On The Right may miss or incorrectly identify left front vehicles. Disabling Overtaking On The Right cannot guarantee that the vehicle will not overtake on the right. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road conditions, be ready to control the vehicle speed, and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Pilot with NOMI***

When NOMI is not in a conversation and Pilot engages, disengages, or requires steering takeover, NOMI will use audio reminders and facial expressions to help you operate Pilot more safely and efficiently.

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Driver Assist > NOMI Pilot Notification** to enable or disable the feature. NOMI Pilot Notification is enabled by default.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

In some situations, the camera system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of Pilot or even cause the unintended deactivation of Pilot with a message that reads "Camera view limited. Pilot deactivated" on the digital instrument cluster. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered with direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

In some situations, the radar system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of Pilot or even cause the unintended deactivation of Pilot. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.



- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance
- False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.

Only qualified vehicles will trigger Pilot. Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Bicycles, motorcycles, and tricycles

Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Other non-vehicle objects

### Caution

- This feature does not guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention, e.g. vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

Identification and response may be delayed if the target is not right in the front in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Pilot does not respond to targets that are in the blind spot of the sensors. For example, Pilot cannot detect targets in the blind spot at the corner or on the side of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is approaching or navigating a curve, the target may be incorrectly selected or missed, resulting in unintended acceleration or deceleration.

- The target may be lost or the distance to the lead vehicle may be misjudged when the vehicle is on a slope. Driving downhill will increase the vehicle speed so as to exceed the cruise speed.
- When only a part of the vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of you (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), the target may not be identified and trigger a response. Therefore, you must immediately take over control.
- When your vehicle suddenly cuts behind the lead vehicle, or when other vehicles abruptly cut in to or out of the lane in front of you, the target may not be promptly identified. Therefore, you must immediately take over control.

### Caution

- In rare cases, this feature may accelerate your vehicle even when it is not necessary or intended due to a change in, or loss of, the target (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- In rare cases, this feature may apply the vehicle's brakes when it is not necessary or intended due to the detection of vehicles or objects, or a change in, or loss of, a stationary target in the adjacent lane (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- When following the lead vehicle, if your vehicle or the lead vehicle switches out of the current lane, acceleration may be restricted by this feature for a certain period of time for your safety. You can take over by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Warning

This feature does not guarantee that the target can be accurately recognized in all situations. Please take over promptly if you find that the target lead vehicle shown on the digital instrument cluster does not match the actual situation. i.e.

- A vehicle is in front of you, but the digital instrument cluster shows none.
- No vehicle is in front of you, but the digital instrument cluster shows a vehicle.

We do not recommend using Pilot in special or complex road conditions which may affect the performance of Pilot or even cause the unintended deactivation of Pilot. Such conditions include but are not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.

- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, motorway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.
- Roads without center medians.
- Construction areas.

If the relative speed between your vehicle and the lead vehicle is too high, the limited control capabilities of Pilot may be insufficient to promptly maintain the appropriate distance in some situations, Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The front vehicle makes sudden moves (such as an abrupt turn, acceleration, or deceleration).
- Other vehicles suddenly cut in or out of the lane in front of you.
- Your vehicle suddenly cuts behind a vehicle in front.
- Your vehicle rushes towards a stationary or slow-moving target at a high speed.

Braking force may not be sufficient in some situations, Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The brakes do not fully function (such as when brake components are too cold, hot, or wet).
- Improper maintenance (such as excessive brake or tire wear, or abnormal tire pressure).
- Driving on special roads (such as sloping roads or roads with water, mud, potholes, snow, or ice).

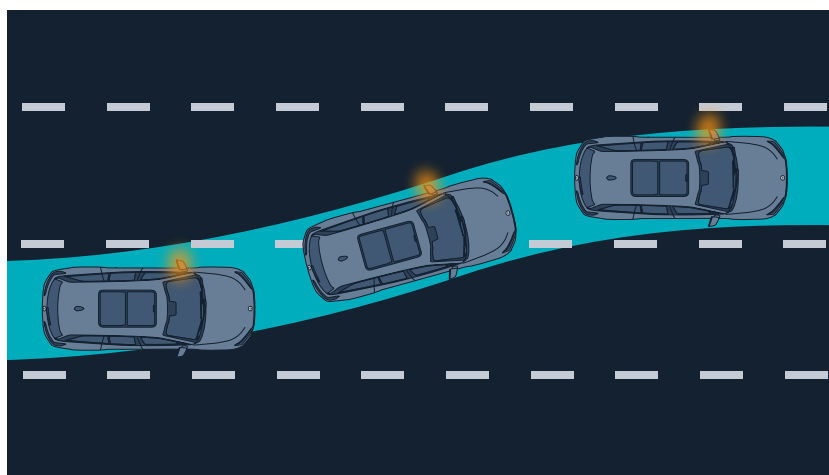
### Caution

Pilot may send visual and audio warnings in the event of upfront danger, changes to the lane, unclear lane lines, sharp curves, construction areas or restrictions to the camera's field of view.

Such warnings serve as a reference only, and cannot substitute your own visual observation. Due to the influence of multiple factors, the warning may be ineffective, inappropriate or late. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions. Never base your judgment solely on warnings.

### **Automatic Lane Change (ALC)**

Auto Lane Change (ALC) provides an automatic lane change function alongside lane keeping assist. When the vehicle speed exceeds 70 km/h and the environment and road conditions meet certain requirements, the vehicle can change to the adjacent lane automatically by gently toggling the turn signal lever.



Auto Lane Change is mainly used on high-speed roads that require concentration. The current and the target lanes must have good light, clear lane lines, and room for lane change.

#### **Note**

Auto Lane Change can only change one lane at a time.

#### **Note**

Auto Lane Change may fail or cancel if the light and visibility are poor at night, or when lane lines are not clear. In this case, please take over promptly.

**Note**

The information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

**Caution**

Auto Lane Change can only work properly when the operating conditions and restrictions for Steering Assist are met. For more details, please refer to “Pilot” in the User Manual.

**Warning**

You must always confirm if it is safe and appropriate to change lanes before and when changing lanes. Please note that Auto Lane Change cannot respond to pedestrians, obstacles, oncoming vehicles, etc; Auto Lane Change may fail to recognize the target lane or the current lane correctly. Never rely solely on Auto Lane Change to choose a driving path or to change lanes. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for changing lanes safely.

**Warning**

As a driving assist feature, Auto Lane Change cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Auto Lane Change if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for Auto Lane Change, or there are other unsafe factors.

You always bear the ultimate responsibility for changing lanes safely and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

***Enabling/Disabling Auto Lane Change***

Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Auto Lane Change** to enable or disable the feature.

Operating conditions for Auto Lane Change:

- The vehicle is driving on motorways in Norway, Sweden, or Finland.
- Auto Lane Change is enabled.

- Steering Assist works correctly.
- The trifocal camera and five millimeter-wave radars function normally with a clear view.
- The current speed is close to, equal to, or higher than 70 km/h.
- The current and target lanes meet all required conditions for safe lane changing, including:
  - The common lane line between the current and target lanes is a white dashed line.
  - The current and target lanes do not curve sharply.
  - A safe distance is maintained from the vehicles in front and behind in both the current and target lanes.
  - There are no alerts from Blind Spot Detection, Lane Change Assist or other features regarding the target lane.
  - The target lane has clear lines on both sides.
- All components required for Auto Lane Change work correctly, and the vehicle meets all safety requirements, including:
  - Turn signals are operating correctly.
  - Hazard warning lights are off.
  - The driver is seated.
  - The driver has fastened the seat belt.
  - All doors are closed.
  - The vehicle is in DRIVE.
  - The brake pedal is not pressed.
  - Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.
  - The Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.

Enabling Auto Lane Change in Settings does not mean that the feature is activated.

After the operating conditions are met, you must first take the initiative to visually inspect your surroundings before gently engaging the corresponding turn signal.

- When the system detects that all conditions for lane change are met, Auto Lane Change is activated to start the lane change. In the meantime, a blue path will be displayed on the instrument cluster, and the lane line on the corresponding side will be highlighted and disappear after the lane change is complete.
- When the system detects that the conditions for lane change are not fully met and the risk still remains after about 3 seconds, Auto Lane Change is canceled and the lane line on the corresponding side is displayed in red on the instrument cluster.

To cancel or abort a lane change, you can move the turn signal lever to the opposite direction. Any of the following conditions will stop a lane change, and the vehicle will warn you to immediately take over control via the digital instrument cluster and an audio alert:

- The environment is deemed unsafe for Auto Lane Change.
- Steering Assist is canceled due to the steering wheel being taken over, unclear lane lines, sharp curves, or any other reason.
- Adaptive Cruise Control and Steering Assist are canceled at the same time due to the Pilot button being pressed, the brake pedal being pressed, or any other reason.

### Note

When Navigate on Pilot (NOP) is enabled, the system will exit the lateral control and Navigate on Pilot Mode after the lever is toggled and held for a while.

### Note

No Auto Lane Change reminder will be shown when you toggle the turn indicator in the following situations:

- Auto Lane Change (ALC) is disabled in Settings.
- The vehicle is not driving on motorways in Norway, Sweden, or Finland.
- Steering Assist is not activated.

### Caution

Auto Lane Change can only change one lane at a time.

## Caution

Auto Lane Change may fail if the light and visibility are poor at night, or when lane lines are not clear.

## Warning

Auto Lane Change may suddenly be canceled due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

## Warning

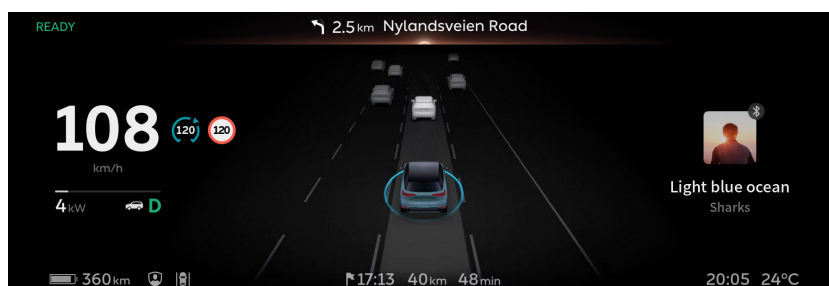
Please comply with traffic safety laws and regulations, including but not limited to vehicle speed, when enabling Auto Lane Change.

## Warning

You must always confirm if it is safe and appropriate before and when changing lanes. Please note that Auto Lane Change cannot respond to pedestrians, obstacles, oncoming vehicles, etc. Never rely solely on Auto Lane Change to choose a driving path. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for changing lanes safely.

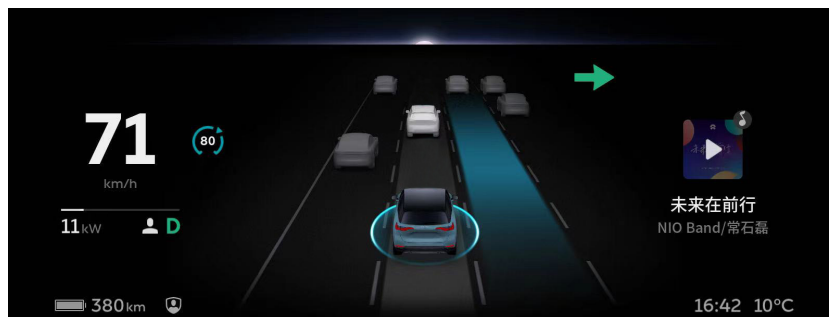
## ***Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster***

- Ready to change lanes

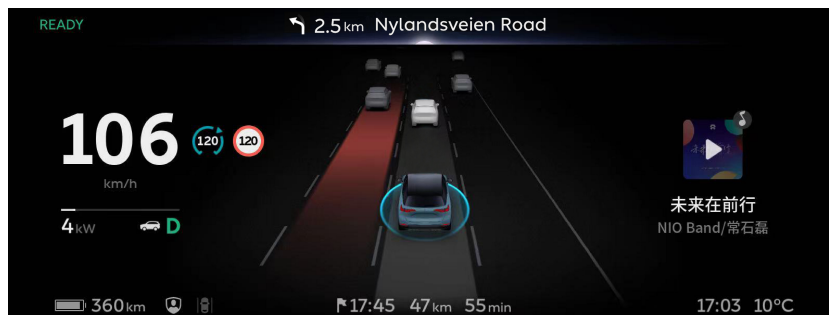


- Lane change in progress

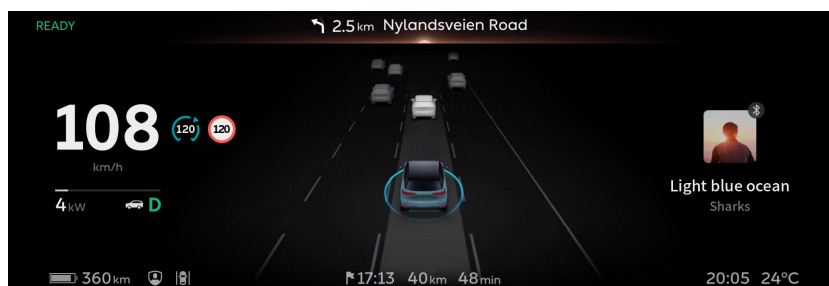




- Lane change stopped or failed



- Lane change complete



### Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

You need to pay attention to the actual conditions of the traffic in front of, behind, and to the side of the vehicle at all times and apply reasonable judgment.

***Precautions and Restrictions***

Auto Lane Change may fail to change lanes as intended and you must be prepared to take immediate control in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The vehicle is passing through a sharp curve, such as a motorway ramp or traffic diversion lines.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The road section has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads, intersections, or construction areas.
- Lane lines are not clearly divided, such as merging or diverging lanes, motorway ramps, urban intersections, or left-turn waiting areas.
- The road section has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The distance between the lines of the current and the target lanes is too wide or too narrow.

The camera may fail to recognize obstacles, resulting in lane change failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.

- The view of the camera is interfered with direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

Radars may fail to recognize obstacles, resulting in lane change failures in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Rain, snow, fog, haze, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance.
- False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.

Auto Lane Change may miss or incorrectly identify obstacles in the target and the current lanes. You must always be sure it is safe and appropriate to change lanes before and during the operation. Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Bicycles, motorcycles, and tricycles

Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Other non-vehicle objects

## Caution

- Auto Lane Change cannot guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets. Please pay extra attention, especially at night, to targets, such as vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- Auto Lane Change may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

We do not recommend using Auto Lane Change in special or complex road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as motorway ramps and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.
- Roads without center medians.

## Navigate on Pilot (NOP) Beta

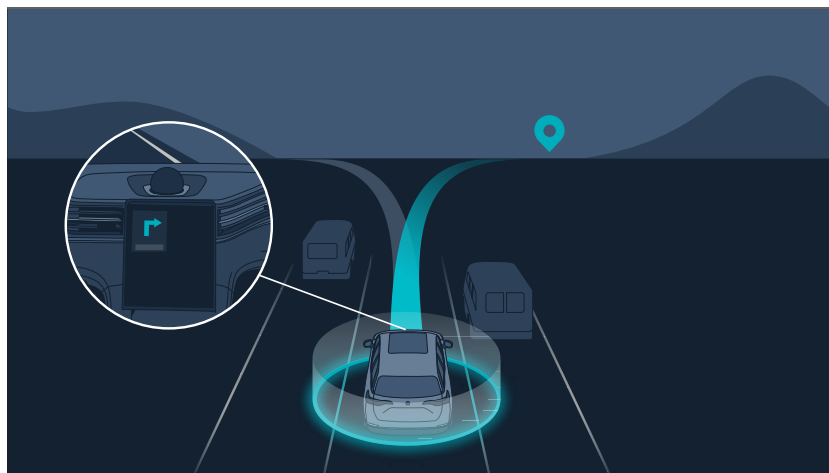
Navigate on Pilot (NOP) Beta is a feature that combines the perception system with the navigation system to help the driver follow the navigation route while driving on a motorway.

When turned on, NOP intelligently adjusts the cruising speed based on traffic conditions. Combined with the navigation route, the display shows traffic conditions and the system guides you to take the right lane to get to your destination.

This feature is only available in Norway.

**Caution**

Navigate on Pilot can only work properly when the operating conditions and restrictions for Steering Assist are met. For more details, please refer to “NIO Pilot” in the User Manual.

**Caution**

Navigate on Pilot Beta Version is a public beta version and many features are still being optimized.

**Warning**

As a feature for driving comfort, Navigate on Pilot (NOP) cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and decide to use Navigate on Pilot or not after your safety is ensured.

You should always be ready to take over when you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or vehicle are not suitable for enabling Navigate on Pilot, or there are other safety risks. It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and complies with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### **Warning**

Please pay attention to the surrounding environment and be ready to take over at any time when Navigate on Pilot is changing lanes.

Please pay extra attention when Navigate on Pilot guides the vehicle to drive on and off ramps, makes lane changes, or drives through intersections and congested road sections.

Like other driving assist features, Navigate on Pilot cannot recognize and respond to static obstacles (such as road barriers and warning triangles). Please take over the vehicle immediately if there is an accident or construction area up ahead.

### **Warning**

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on Navigate on Pilot
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road
- Using Navigate on Pilot in bad weather conditions
- Using Navigate on Pilot on sharp curves
- Using Navigate on Pilot in road sections where lane lines are unclear or the lighting is poor
- Using Navigate on Pilot in unsafe road conditions or an unsafe environment

### **Warning**

Like other driving assist features, this feature is for driving comfort and not for preventing collisions. Navigate on Pilot has a limited maximum deceleration that is less than the maximum deceleration required for Automatic Emergency Braking and normal driving scenarios. Therefore, do not rely solely on Navigate on Pilot to fully decelerate your vehicle to avoid a collision.

Navigate on Pilot may fail to stop your vehicle when its speed relative to a slow-moving or stationary vehicle in front of it is greater than 50 km/h. In this case,

exit Navigate on Pilot immediately. Do not rely on Navigate on Pilot to bring your vehicle to a complete stop regardless of whether it is following a stationary vehicle or a lead vehicle.

### **Warning**

Like other driving assist features, Navigate on Pilot has a limited steering force that is less than the maximum steering force required for driving. Therefore, do not rely solely on Navigate on Pilot to steer your vehicle. You should always be prepared to take over the steering, especially when navigating curves.


Please take over the steering immediately when cornering, turning around, and driving on winding roads or roads with sharp curves. Do not rely on Navigate on Pilot in these situations.

### ***Enabling Navigate on Pilot***

Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Navigate on Pilot** to enable or disable the feature.

Operating Conditions for Navigate on Pilot:

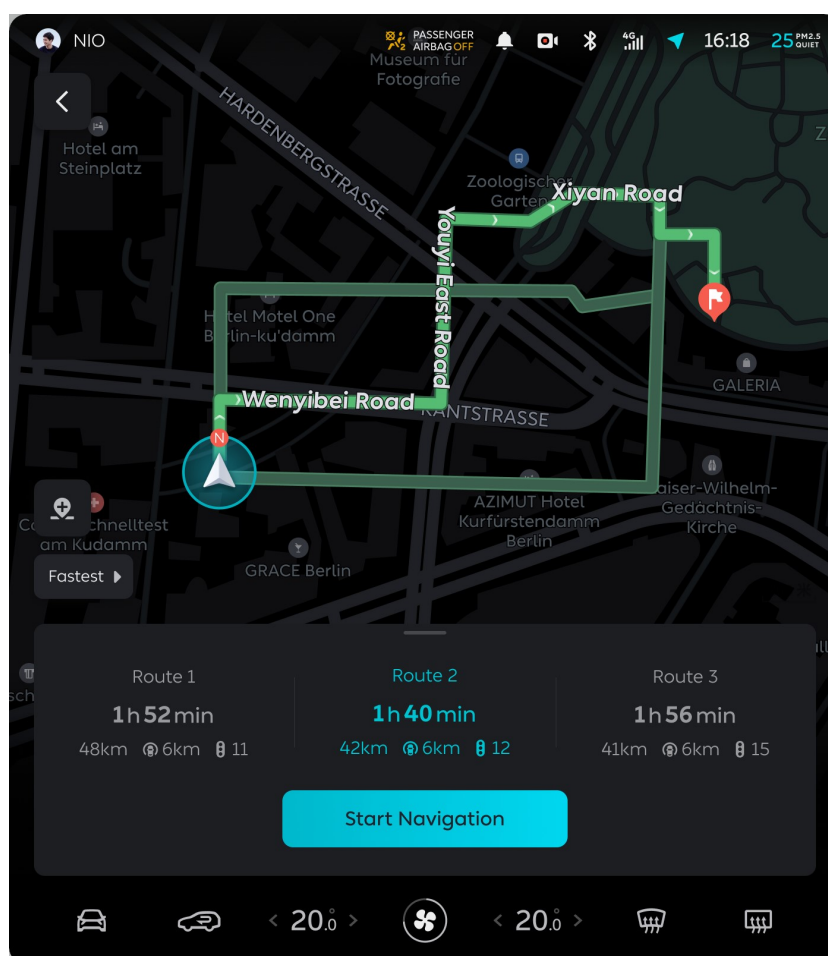
- The vehicle is running on a motorway in Norway.
- The operating conditions for Steering Assist must be met. For details, refer to "NIO Pilot" in the User Manual.
- Navigation functions normally.
- The Navigate on Pilot quick access on the navigation page is not disabled.
- The GNSS signal is strong.
- The vehicle is on a road where Navigate on Pilot is available.
- Hazard warning lights are off.
- Turn signals are operating correctly.
- The trifocal camera and five millimeter-wave radars are operating normally with a clear view.

Enabling Navigate on Pilot in Settings does not mean that the feature is activated. With Navigate on Pilot enabled, you can check if Navigate on Pilot is available for certain route during route planning. When the vehicle is on a road where Navigate on Pilot is available and you press , Navigate on Pilot will be automatically activated once the operating conditions are met.

Enabling Navigate on Pilot will also enable other necessary features, including Forward Collision Warning, Automatic Emergency Braking, Auto Lane Change, and Traffic Sign Recognition.

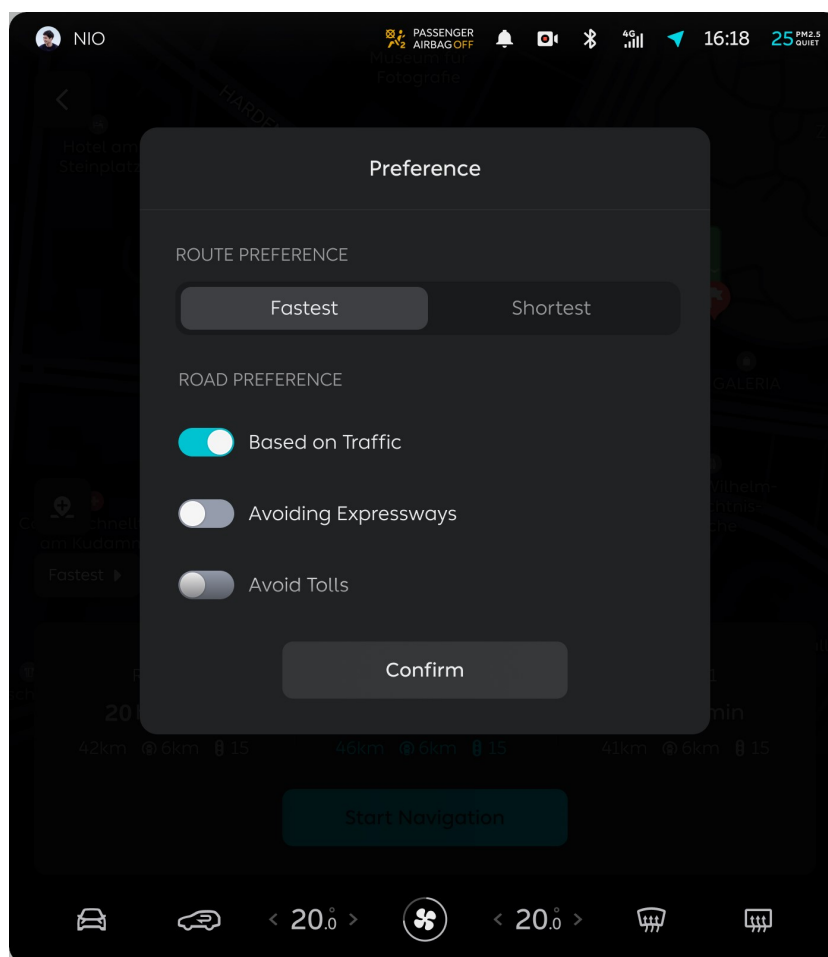
### ***Navigation Settings***

When Navigate on Pilot is enabled in Settings, you can check if Navigate on Pilot is available for certain route during route planning. If available, the Navigate on Pilot icon will be displayed on the route with the estimated distance covered. Swipe up for more details of the road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot in the route.

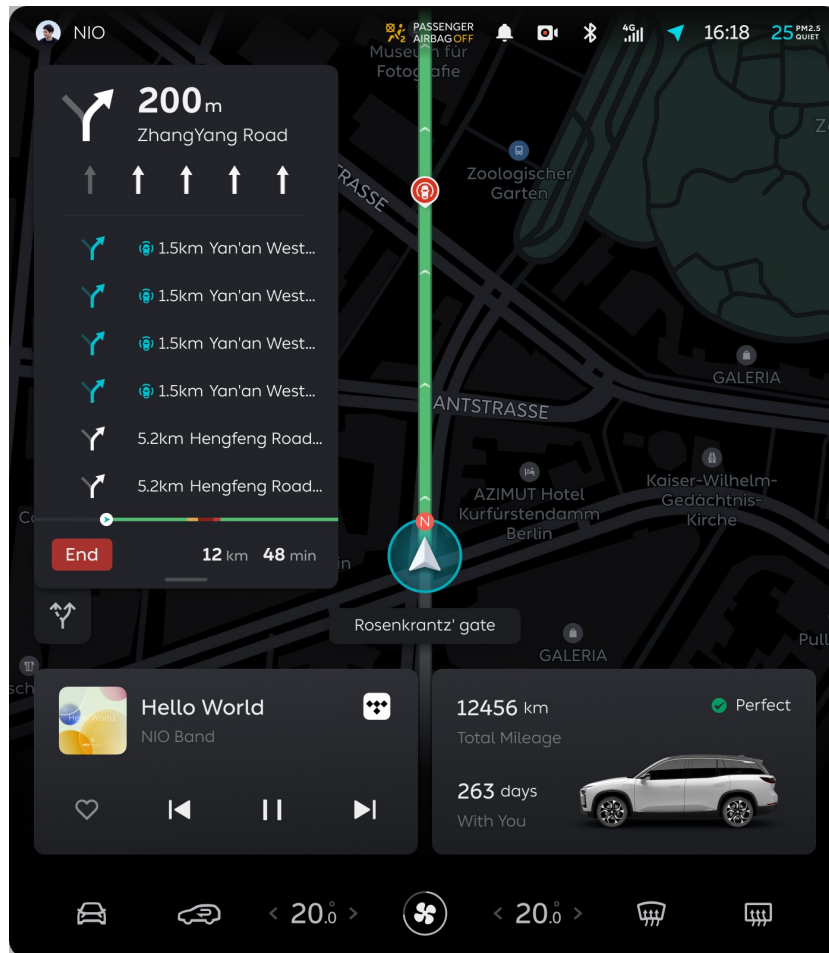


When Navigate on Pilot is enabled, Prefer NOP is added to the route preference settings. When Prefer NOP is selected, the route with more road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot is prioritized.

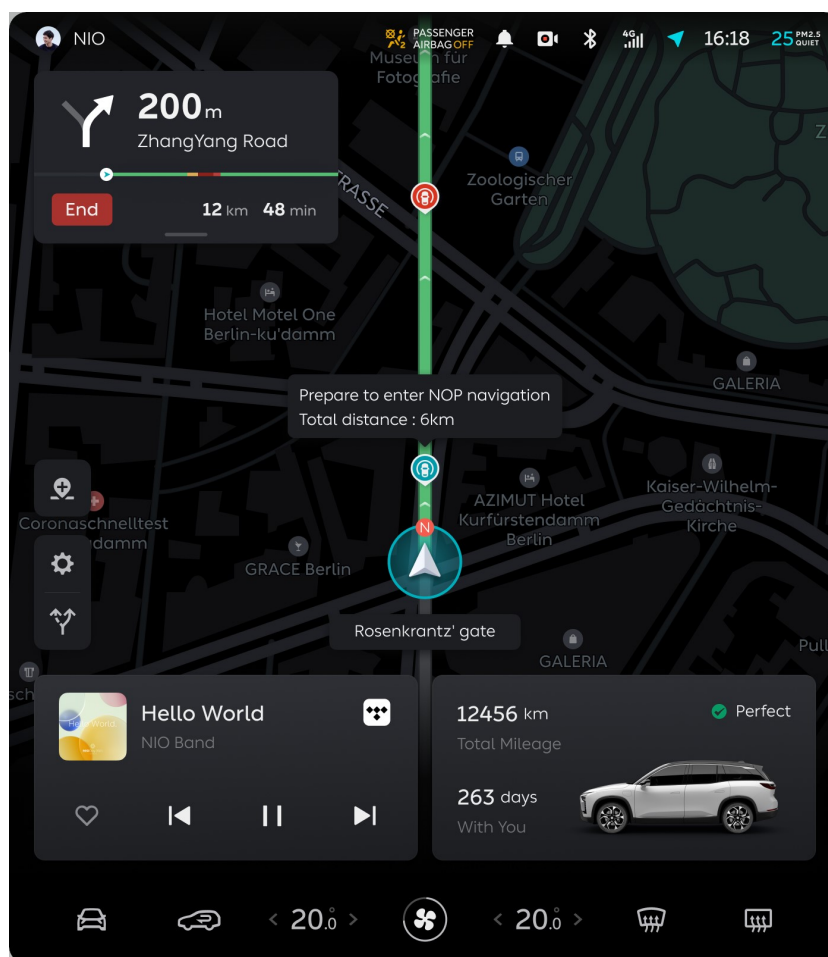







When you select a route with sections covered by Navigate on Pilot and start navigation, you can check if Navigate on Pilot is available for each section by tapping the icon on the upper left corner of the navigation interface to view the turn-by-turn information. Road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot are marked with a Navigate on Pilot icon in the front. You can also view the road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot in the entire route by tapping the upper area on the turn-by-turn information page or swiping down the page.



When you select a route with road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot and start navigation, you can check the road sections covered by Navigate on Pilot by paying attention to the start and end icons along the navigation route.



When Navigate on Pilot is enabled in Settings, Navigate on Pilot quick access will display on the lower left corner of the navigation page.

-  : Navigate on Pilot not activated
-  : Navigate on Pilot activated
-  : Navigate on Pilot disabled

You can cancel Navigate on Pilot by tapping its quick access. In this case, Navigate on Pilot will be disabled and exit to NIO Pilot once the operating conditions and limitations are met.

### Caution

If you are driving on a road which is underneath a ring road but the navigation displays the vehicle on the ring road itself, or you are driving on an auxiliary road in parallel with a main road but the navigation displays the vehicle on the main road, Navigate on Pilot may be mistakenly activated, which can result in unintended acceleration, deceleration or lane changing.

## Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster


### Navigate on Pilot Activated



1. Suggested path and lane lines  
With Navigate on Pilot activated, your vehicle will be guided along the blue path.
2. "Lane Departure" status icon
3. Current driving speed  
Navigate on Pilot adjusts the vehicle speed based on the lead vehicle speed, traffic speed and road curvature, but the maximum speed will not exceed the set cruise speed.  
You can increase the current speed by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal. In this case, Navigate on Pilot will not follow the speed of the lead vehicle or other speed limits. When you stop pressing the accelerator pedal, if Navigate on Pilot has not canceled, it will follow the corresponding speed limits. When you press the accelerator pedal for a certain period of time, Navigate on Pilot will cancel. In this case, acceleration and steering of your vehicle are under your control.

### Warning

Do not rely on Navigate on Pilot to control the vehicle speed. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions, road environment, and speed limit signs, and drive at a safe and compliant speed.

4. The set cruise speed  
When you activate Navigate on Pilot by pressing , Navigate on Pilot automatically sets the cruise speed according to the speed limit. You can adjust the cruise speed with the cruise speed control buttons on the steering wheel. When you change the cruise speed, Navigate on Pilot will not automatically set the cruise speed until a new speed limit is detected.

## Caution

When Navigate on Pilot is activated, please be aware that the vehicle may accelerate to match the speed limit of the main road when merging into traffic.

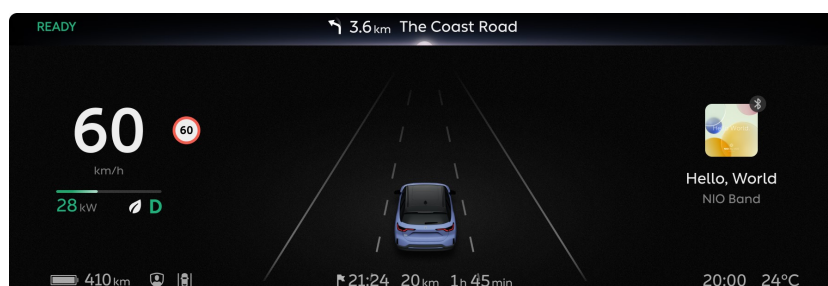
## Warning


The speed limit information provided by Navigate on Pilot is not always accurate, and may differ from the actual road conditions. In this case, your vehicle may accelerate or decelerate unexpectedly. Please always pay attention to the road conditions, and be ready to manually adjust the cruising speed or take over the vehicle.

### 5. Speed limit reminder

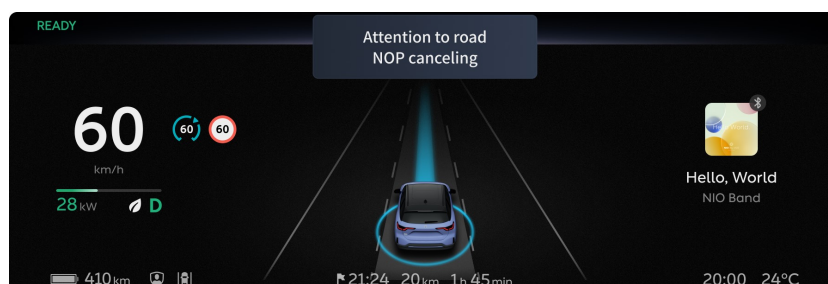
For details, please refer "Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)" in the User Manual.

## Navigate on Pilot to be Activated



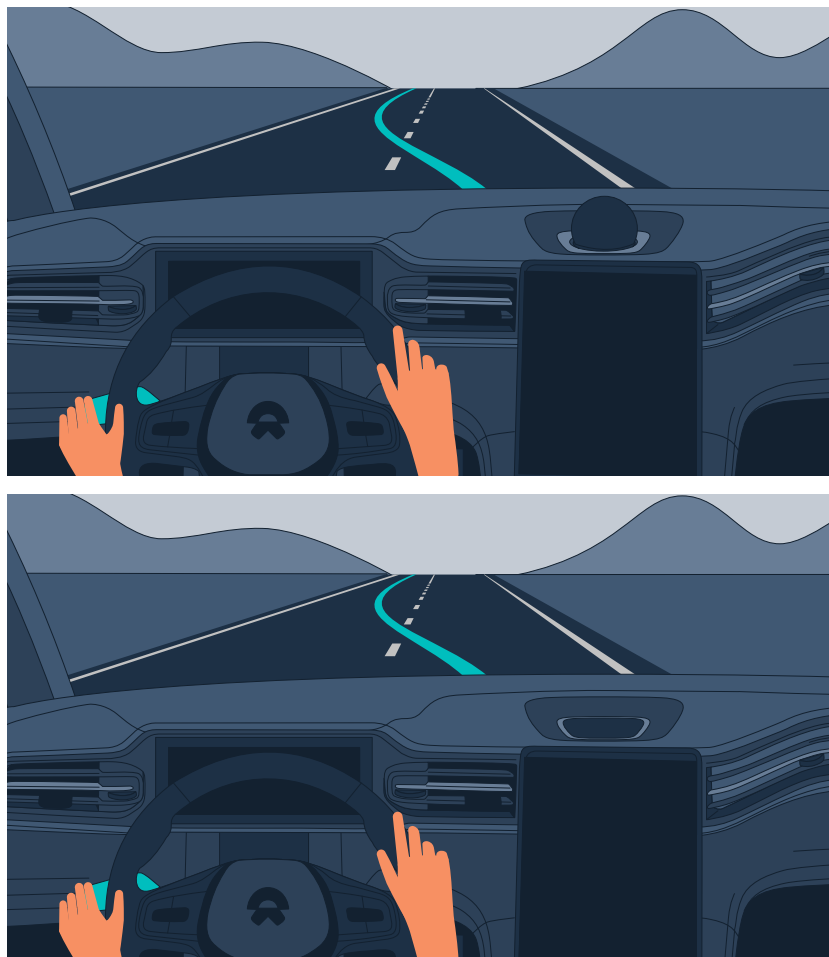
When your vehicle is in a road section where Navigate on Pilot is available, Navigate on Pilot will be shown as awaiting activation. If you press  on the steering wheel, Navigate on Pilot will be automatically activated once the operating conditions are met.

## Navigate on Pilot to be Deactivated



When your vehicle is leaving a road section where Navigate on Pilot is available, a reminder will be displayed at the bottom of the digital instrument cluster, indicating the remaining distance before you need to take over control.

### ***Fast lane suggestion and lane change of Navigate on Pilot***



When Navigate on Pilot is enabled and the vehicle is running on a main motorway, the lane that allows fast transit will be highlighted based on traffic conditions. When the vehicle speed is higher than 70 km/h and the surroundings and road conditions meet certain requirements, you can gently toggle the turn signal lever to activate Auto Lane Change, and your vehicle will change lanes at an appropriate time. For details, please refer to “Auto Lane Change (ALC)” in the User Manual.



**Note**

When driving on a main road, please confirm the suggested lane change by toggling the turn signal lever immediately if it is safe. Otherwise, you may miss the proper time to make a lane change.

**Note**

When driving on a main road, the turn signal will be turned on if you gently toggle the turn signal lever and will stay on during the lane change.

**Note**

When maneuvering to an adjacent lane, the vehicle may adjust its speed in the current lane.

**Note**

When the system detects that your hands are off the steering wheel, Navigate on Pilot (NOP) will not provide any fast lane suggestion.

**Note**

When the operating conditions for Auto Lane Change (ALC) are met, toggle the turn signal lever towards the lane change direction to make a lane change; toggle the lever hard to exit Navigate on Pilot (NOP); or toggle the lever reversely to cancel the lane change.

**Warning**

Lanes may change abruptly when your vehicle is driving at high speeds. You must always confirm if a lane change is safe and appropriate before and when changing lanes. Please pay attention to the road conditions. Always hold the steering wheel and be ready to take over at any time.

***Entering/Exiting a Motorway with Navigate on Pilot***

You need to change lanes manually when entering or exiting a main motorway. Please take over your vehicle by toggling the turn signal lever hard as required by the reminder, and turn your vehicle in time to enter or exit the main motorway safely.

Your vehicle will remind you to take over it when entering a main motorway. . At this point, you need to pay attention to your surroundings, toggle the turn signal lever hard to exit Navigate on Pilot, and take over the vehicle to enter the motorway manually.

The vehicle will remind you of the ramp ahead when you are about to drive from the motorway onto a ramp, and remind you again to take over the vehicle when you are close to the ramp. At this point, you need to pay attention to your surroundings, toggle the turn signal lever hard to exit Navigate on Pilot, and take over the vehicle to exit the motorway manually.

### Note

When entering or exiting a main motorway, your vehicle will try Auto Lane Change (ALC) if you gently toggle the turn signal lever. However, it may fail due to the special road structure. Therefore, you are not advised to gently toggle the lever, but rather take over the vehicle to enter or exit the main motorway manually.

### Note

Before making a lane change or driving on or off a ramp, please check the side mirrors to ensure your surroundings are safe for the lane change and the driving complies with the applicable traffic regulations.

### Warning

Do not rely on Navigate on Pilot to decide which lane you should drive in. Please pay attention to the route and road conditions to make sure the vehicle can drive in the correct lane safely.

### Warning

Navigate on Pilot (NOP) may fail to make a lane change in time. Please pay attention to the route and road conditions, and be ready to manually drive on or off a ramp or make a lane change at any time.

### ***Cancel or abort a lane change***

To cancel or abort a lane change, engage the opposite turn signal.



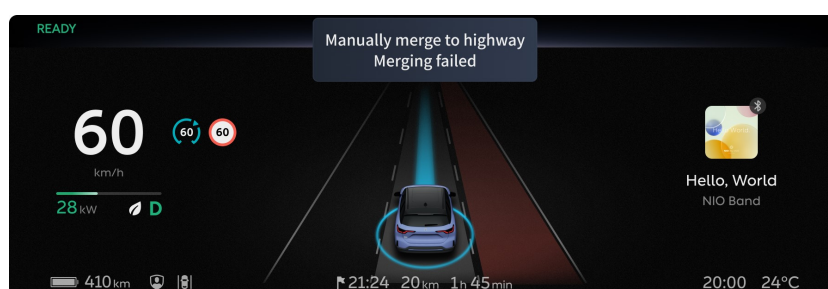


Any of the following conditions will stop a lane change, and the vehicle will warn you to immediately take over control via the digital instrument cluster and an audio alert:

- Navigate on Pilot detects that the surrounding environment is not safe for a lane change.
- Steering Assist is canceled due to the steering wheel being taken over, unclear lane lines, sharp curves, or any other reason.
- Adaptive Cruise Control and Steering Assist are canceled at the same time due to the Pilot button being pressed, the brake pedal being pressed, or any other reason.

### ***Take over reminder***

If Navigate on Pilot cannot continue to keep your vehicle on the navigation route, you will be prompted via an audio alert and message to immediately take over control of the speed and steering.



### ***Head-Up Display***

1. The set cruise speed
2. Navigate on Pilot status icon
3. Current driving speed
4. Navigation information display: When Navigate on Pilot is activated, the navigation arrow and progress bar will turn blue.

5. Navigate on Pilot smart lane change reminder: When the vehicle is executing a smart lane change, the direction indicator on the heads-up display will point to the corresponding direction.


### ***Pilot with NOMI***

Before enabling Navigate on Pilot, please enable Pilot with NOMI reminders in settings. When NOMI is not in a conversation, it will help you use Navigate on Pilot safely and efficiently with audio reminders and facial expressions and remind you of taking over the vehicle before driving on or off a ramp.

It is recommended to enable Navigate on Pilot and Pilot with NOMI simultaneously, so that you can be timely reminded of the feature activation or deactivation status and the timing to drive on or off a ramp manually.

### ***Deactivating Navigate on Pilot***

You can deactivate Navigate on Pilot by:

- Pressing  on the steering wheel, which also deactivates Pilot.
- Pressing the brake pedal, which also deactivates Pilot.
- Turning the steering wheel to take over control.
- Disabling Navigate on Pilot quick access on the navigation page.
- Exiting navigation.

Navigate on Pilot will be automatically deactivated in the following situations, in which case you must immediately take over control:

- The operating conditions for Steering Assist are not met. For details, please refer to "NIO Pilot" in the User Manual.
- Navigation cannot function normally.
- The vehicle leaves a road section where Navigate on Pilot is available.
- The driver's hands are off the steering wheel for an extended period.
- The hazard warning lights are on.
- A system fault occurs.

### **Caution**

If Navigate on Pilot is canceled, NIO Pilot will be engaged if the operating conditions and limitations are met. Please note that Pilot cannot automatically

adjust the set cruise speed or drive according to the navigation route. You need to manually adjust the cruise speed or take over the vehicle.

When Navigate on Pilot is canceled, NIO Pilot will also be canceled if the operating conditions and limitations are not met. You should take over control of the brake pedal, accelerator pedal, and steering wheel immediately after Pilot exits to control the speed and steering of the vehicle.

### **Warning**

Navigate on Pilot may suddenly be canceled due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

Navigation may fail to function as intended in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Navigation fails to receive real-time information updates due to network connection failure.
- Navigation exits unexpectedly due to routing failures.

In some situations, Navigate on Pilot may fail to identify the environments or targets correctly. Please pay close attention to your surroundings and the road, always hold the steering wheel, and be ready to take over control at any time. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- There are vehicles approaching fast from behind.
- There are vehicles driving next to yours in heavy traffic.
- There are vehicles quickly cutting into the ramp from the side.
- There are vehicles merging into the adjacent lane from the other side of the lane.
- There are vehicles driving on the edge of the target lane.
- There are guard rails and traffic barriers near the intersection.

## Warning

Navigate on Pilot cannot recognize and respond to stationary obstacles (such as road barriers and warning triangles). If there is an accident, construction area or road closure up ahead, please take over control immediately.

Navigate on Pilot is only available on motorways and may not function as intended in other road sections, including but not limited to:

- Special areas where Navigate on Pilot is not allowed by laws and regulations.
- Road sections where Navigate on Pilot cannot function normally due to loss of GNSS signal, such as in a long tunnel.
- Road sections in service areas.
- Road sections near complicated intersections or with frequent accidents where Navigate on Pilot may be restricted.

In some situations, Steering Assist and Navigate on Pilot may be deactivated and you should be prepared to take over control at any time. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The vehicle is navigating sharp curves.
- Lane lines are unclear, worn, missing, overlapping, or obscured by shadows cast by other vehicles, buildings, or landscape features.
- The section has no lane lines, such as non-standard roads and construction areas.
- The lanes are not clearly divided, such as where lanes merge or diverge.
- The road section has special lane lines, such as deceleration lines or diversion lines.
- There are edges or other high-contrast lines on the road instead of lane lines, such as road joints or curbs.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to changes in height, such as on sloped roads.
- Lane lines cannot be or are incorrectly identified due to lighting conditions, such as strong light which leads to reflective lane lines, and poor visibility or insufficient light due to bad weather or at night.
- The lanes are too wide or too narrow.

In some situations, the camera system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of or even cause the unintended deactivation of Navigate on Pilot. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered with direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

In some situations, the radar system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of or even cause the unintended deactivation of Navigate on Pilot. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- The radar's performance is impaired due to the rain, snow, fog, haze, and other weather.
- False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.

Navigate on Pilot will only respond to vehicles that meet certain conditions. Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles

- Bicycles, motorcycles, and tricycles

Some targets will not be responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Other non-vehicle objects

### Caution

- Navigate on Pilot cannot guarantee the recognition of special-shaped vehicles. Please pay extra attention, especially at night, to targets, such as vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- Navigate on Pilot may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

Navigate on Pilot is not recommended in special or complicated road conditions, including but not limited to:

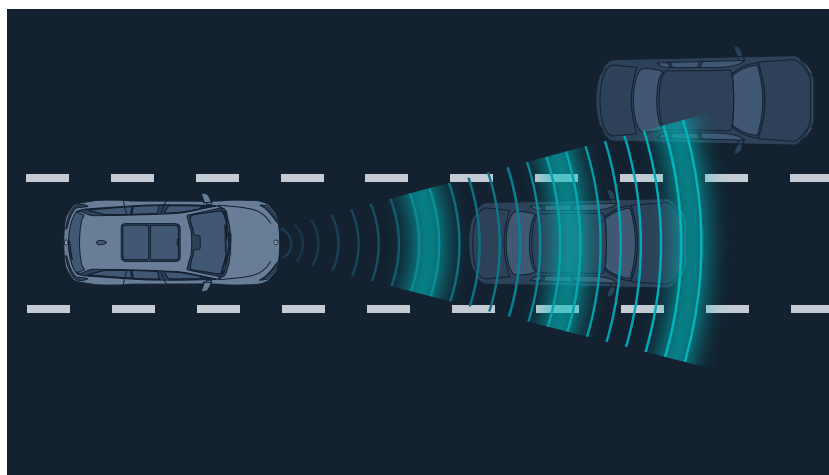
- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Complicated traffic conditions, such as motorways with heavy or slow traffic.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can maintain the vehicle at the set speed and a set distance with the lead car. Adaptive Cruise Control uses the trifocal camera and millimeter-wave radars to monitor the lead vehicle in your lane and adjusts the speed of your vehicle accordingly.

This system includes the start-stop function that can follow the lead vehicle to a full stop (within a certain deceleration limit). If the lead vehicle starts to move again within a short period of time, your vehicle will automatically resume following. If the lead vehicle stops for too long, your vehicle will resume following only after confirmation.

Adaptive Cruise Control is mainly suitable when you drive long distances on dry, smooth, and standard straight roads, such as motorways, expressways, and long straight main roads.



### Warning

As a driving assist feature, Adaptive Cruise Control cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control controls the speed, but not the direction, of your vehicle.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Adaptive Cruise Control if it is safe. You should always be ready to take over if you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for Adaptive Cruise Control, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for maintaining an appropriate distance and speed and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

### Warning

The following behaviors are prohibited when driving:

- Relying solely on the system
- Using the feature in bad weather conditions
- Using the system in an environment where there are many pedestrians, bicycles or animals

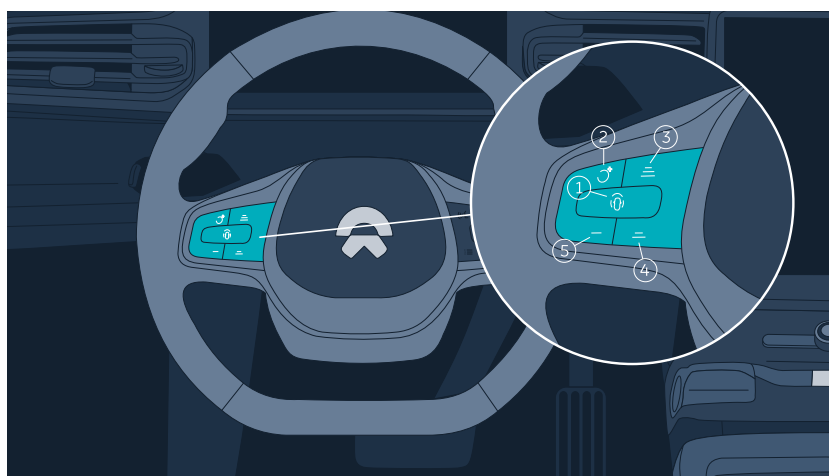
- Using the system on non-standardized roads
- Hands off the steering wheel
- Eyes off the road

### Warning

As a feature for driving comfort, and not for preventing collision, Adaptive Cruise Control has a limited maximum deceleration that is less than the maximum deceleration required by Automatic Emergency Brake and normal driving scenarios. Therefore, never rely solely on Adaptive Cruise Control to decelerate the vehicle when avoiding a collision.

Adaptive Cruise Control may fail to stop your vehicle when its speed relative to the lead vehicle is greater than 50 km/h. In this case, exit Adaptive Cruise Control immediately for your safety. Do not rely Adaptive Cruise Control to bring your vehicle to a full stop following the stationary vehicle or the lead vehicle in this situation.

### Enabling Adaptive Cruise Control



1. : Activate or deactivate Adaptive Cruise Control
2. : Increase the cruise speed or resume Adaptive Cruise Control
3. : Increase the following distance
4. : Reduce the following distance
5. : Reduce the cruise speed

When the operating conditions are met, press on the left to activate Adaptive Cruise Control.



Adaptive Cruise Control can be activated at a speed of 15-160 km/h with no vehicles in front, or at 0-160 km/h with a vehicle in front.



- The cruise speed is set at 30 km/h when the vehicle speed is below 30 km/h.
- The cruise speed is set at the current speed when the vehicle speed is above 30km/h.


When activated, Adaptive Cruise Control maintains the set cruise speed when you release the accelerator pedal.

- When there is a lead vehicle in front of you, Adaptive Cruise Control will adjust the speed according to the speed and distance to the lead vehicle. The maximum speed will not exceed the cruise speed.
- When there are no vehicles ahead, Adaptive Cruise Control will quickly adjust the speed of your vehicle to the cruise speed.

When Adaptive Cruise Control is enabled, you can take over control of the vehicle quickly at any time by fully pressing the brake pedal. In this case, Adaptive Cruise Control will cease responding to the target vehicle and you will have full control of your vehicle. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle will return to the cruise speed.

When Adaptive Cruise Control accelerates the vehicle, the accelerator pedal does not move. When Adaptive Cruise Control brakes the vehicle, the brake pedal moves.

If Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated by pressing  or the brake pedal, it can be reactivated by pressing  and will resume the previously set cruise speed.

Five seconds after following the lead vehicle to a stop, Adaptive Cruise Control can be activated again by pressing  or the accelerator pedal. In this case, it will resume the previously set cruise speed.

### Note


Operating conditions for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC):

- The trifocal camera and millimeter-wave radars are operating normally with a clear field of view.
- All Adaptive Cruise Control components are free of faults
- Your vehicle meets all safety conditions, including:
  - The driver is seated.

- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
  - All doors are closed.
  - The gear is shifted into DRIVE.
  - The brake pedal is not pressed.
  - Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.
  - Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not manually disabled.
- The vehicle speed is no higher than 160 km/h.

### ***Deactivating Adaptive Cruise Control***

Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated in the following situations:

- The steering wheel button  is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The driver continuously presses the accelerator pedal for about one minute to take over control.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than five minutes.

Adaptive Cruise Control will also be deactivated when required conditions are not met. In this case, you must take over the vehicle immediately.





When Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated, your vehicle may decelerate due to power regeneration and no longer follow the lead vehicle.


### **Warning**

Adaptive Cruise Control may be canceled suddenly due to unexpected circumstances. Please always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and be prepared to take over at any time.

### ***Adjusting Cruise Speed***

When Adaptive Cruise Control is activated:

- Press  or  on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/- 1 km/h.
- Press and hold  or  on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/- 5 km/h.

- Press the accelerator pedal and press  to set the cruise speed to the current speed if the current speed is greater than the set cruise speed, or to increase the cruise speed by 1 km/h if the current speed is less than the set cruise speed.

The maximum cruise speed you can set is 160 km/h.



The minimum cruise speed you can set is 30 km/h, but the system can follow the lead vehicle to a full stop (0 km/h).

### Warning

The maximum set speed is the theoretical top speed for Adaptive Cruise Control. When enabling and setting Adaptive Cruise Control, please comply with traffic safety laws and regulations, including but not limited to vehicle speed.

### ***Adjusting the Time-Distance to the Lead Vehicle***

When Adaptive Cruise Control is activated or awaiting activation, the following time-distance can be set to one of five grades.

- Press  to increase the following time-distance by one level.
- Press  to decrease the following time-distance by one level.

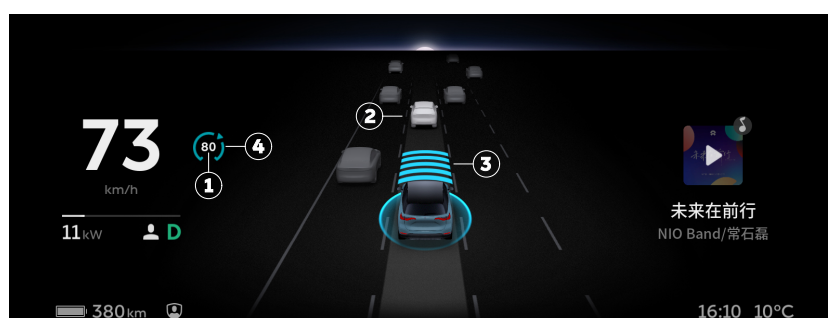
### Caution

When the time distance to the lead vehicle is set shorter, Adaptive Cruise Control will respond more aggressively, which may cause a level of discomfort.

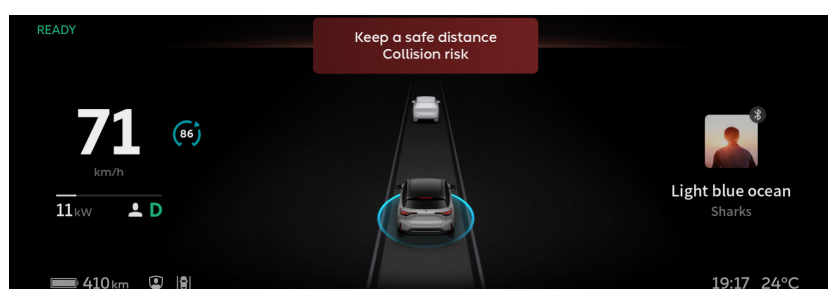
### Warning

It is your responsibility to determine and maintain a safe following distance at all times. Do not rely solely on Adaptive Cruise Control to maintain an accurate or appropriate following distance.

### ***Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster***



1. The set cruise speed
2. The target lead vehicle
3. The following distance
4. Adaptive Cruise Control status icon
  - Icon not shown: Adaptive Cruise Control cannot be activated as the required conditions are not met
  - Icon in gray: Adaptive Cruise Control is awaiting activation
  - Icon in white: Adaptive Cruise Control is activated



If the digital instrument cluster displays the alert as shown above, it means that a safe distance can no longer be guaranteed with the maximum deceleration that Adaptive Cruise Control can exert and there may be a risk of collision. In this case, you must immediately take over control of the vehicle.

### Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.


### Warning

If you encounter a dangerous situation, do not wait for a warning before taking action and take over immediately.

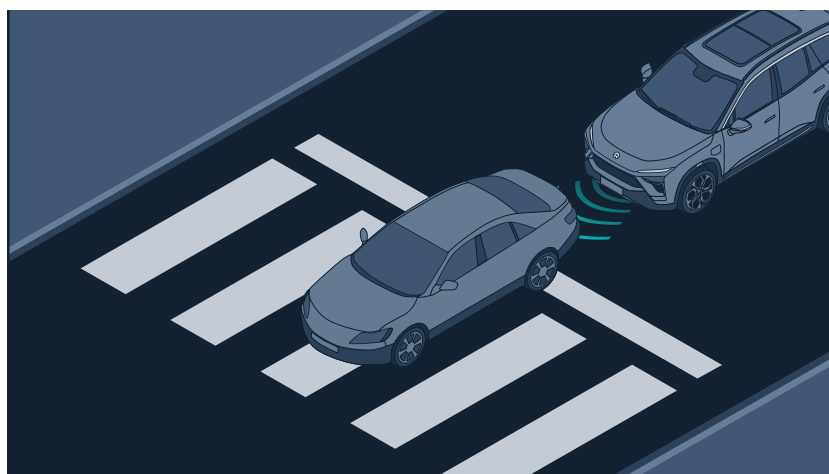
### ***Lead Vehicle Start Alert***

When Adaptive Cruise Control follows the lead vehicle to a full stop:

- If the lead vehicle starts, Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically start the vehicle to follow. You need to ensure it is safe to follow the lead car to avoid any collisions.

- If the lead vehicle starts after five seconds, Adaptive Cruise Control automatically starts the vehicle to follow. Before that, it will emit a sound to remind you.
- If the lead vehicle starts after five seconds and the system detects obstacles that may affect driving, the digital instrument cluster will remind you that "The lead vehicle started", and you need to ensure it is safe to follow the lead vehicle, and press  or press the accelerator pedal to reactivate Adaptive Cruise Control to follow.
- Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated if the lead vehicle remains stopped for more than five minutes.

After following the lead vehicle to a full stop, Adaptive Cruise Control can only restart your vehicle when a distance of over four meters is maintained.

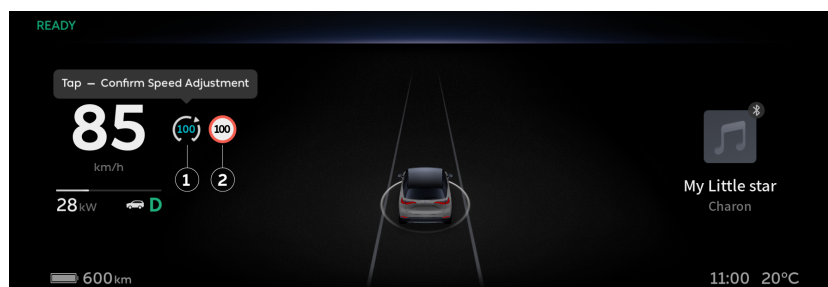


### Warning

Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect other vehicles or road users in all situations and may be ineffective, inappropriate, or late due to multiple factors.

You must pay attention to the traffic and road conditions at all times and never rely on Adaptive Cruise Control to start your vehicle to follow the lead vehicle. Otherwise, personal injury or vehicle damage may be caused.

## Smart Speed Assist



1. The indicator of the set cruise speed
2. For more details, refer to "Traffic Sign Recognition and Speed Limit Warning" in the User Manual.

When the system detects that the speed limit information has changed and is over 10 km/h higher than the set speed, the cruise speed indicator on the instrument cluster will flash for a period of time. In this case, press the “Resume/+” button on the steering wheel to quickly adjust the cruise speed to the newly detected speed limit.

When the system detects that the speed limit information has changed and is over 10 km/h lower than the set speed, the cruise speed indicator on the instrument cluster will flash for a period of time. In this case, press the “-” button on the steering wheel to quickly adjust the cruise speed to the newly detected speed limit.

### Caution

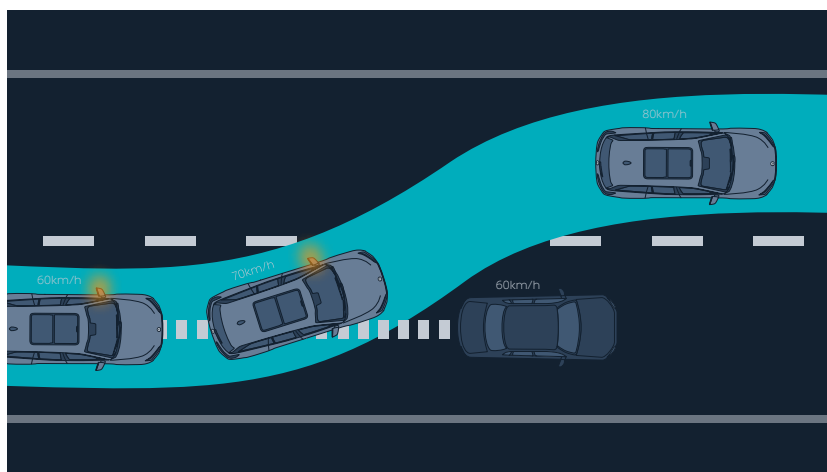
When the speed setting icon no longer flashes, short press the "Resume/+" or "-" button on the steering wheel to change the cruise speed by +/-1 km/h. For details, refer to "Adjusting Cruise Speed".

### Warning

Intelligent Speed Assist is only a supplement to, and does not function as a substitute for, your visual observation. Never rely solely on Intelligent Speed Assist to set the cruise speed and vehicle speed. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road conditions, and drive at an appropriate and safe speed in compliance with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

## ***Overtaking Assist***

When following the lead vehicle with Adaptive Cruise Control, if you engage the left turn signal and turn the steering wheel to attempt to overtake the lead vehicle, Overtaking Assist will assist you in accelerating with the maximum speed as the set cruise speed.



Operating conditions for Overtaking Assist:

- Adaptive Cruise Control is enabled and a lead vehicle is detected.
- The speed is over 50 km/h but not above the set cruise speed.
- There is no lane line or a dashed line on the target lane.
- A safe distance is kept between your vehicle and the lead vehicle.
- Hazard warning lights are off.
- Turn signals are operating correctly.

When the above-mentioned conditions are met, fully engage the left turn signal to activate Overtaking Assist. When you turn the steering wheel left, Adaptive Cruise Control will continue to maintain a safe distance to the lead vehicle, but allow you to get slightly closer than the set distance. When changing lanes, Adaptive Cruise Control will accelerate the vehicle without the accelerator pedal being pressed, but the maximum speed will not exceed the set cruise speed.

### **Caution**

Your vehicle may decelerate when Overtaking Assist is in operation due to the lead vehicle in the current or target lane, which is highlighted on the digital instrument cluster.

Overtaking Assist is deactivated and Adaptive Cruise Control remains activated in the following situations:

- The lane change is completed.
- Overtaking Assist is active for too long.
- The turn signal lever is toggled back before a lane change.

### Caution

When the operating conditions for Adaptive Cruise Control are not met, Overtaking Assist and Adaptive Cruise Control will cancel.

### Caution

Overtaking Assist only assists in adjusting the vehicle's driving speed, and cannot control the steering. You must manually control the steering at all times.

### Caution

Overtaking Assist is unable to distinguish your intention to overtake from your intention to turn left.

### Warning

Overtaking Assist only detects the vehicle in front of you. In order to ensure your safety, you must take the initiative to inspect your surroundings before and during the process of overtaking.

### Warning

When using Overtaking Assist, you should be aware of the possibility of sudden acceleration or a lack of acceleration, and always be prepared to press or fully press the accelerator pedal to take over. Do not rely solely on this feature to overtake other vehicles.

### Warning

Overtaking Assist may fail to operate as intended in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- Approaching a left-hand exit
- Driving on winding roads
- The front vehicle's status in the current or target lane changes suddenly, e.g. sudden deceleration



- Obstacles to the side or rear of the vehicle

### ***Overtaking Right Prevention***

On motorways or elevated roads, if Adaptive Cruise Control detects that there is a vehicle to your left front going faster than 85 km/h in the same direction, Overtaking Right Prevention will be activated. The target vehicle will be highlighted on the instrument cluster, and Adaptive Cruise Control will prevent the vehicle from overtaking the target vehicle. You can adjust the following time-distance to the lead vehicle.

Overtaking Right Prevention is deactivated in the following situations:

- There is no target vehicle on the left front.
- The speed of the target vehicle is below 70 km/h.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive Cruise Control is deactivated.

### **Warning**

Disabling Overtaking On The Right may miss or incorrectly identify left front vehicles. Disabling Overtaking On The Right cannot guarantee that the vehicle will not overtake on the right. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions and road conditions, be ready to control the vehicle speed, and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

In some situations, the camera system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of or even cause the unintended deactivation of Adaptive Cruise Control with a message that reads "Camera view limited. ACC deactivated" on the digital instrument cluster. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The position of the camera is changed.
- The camera is obstructed or stained.
- The performance of the camera is reduced at night.
- Visibility is poor in dim environments, such as at dawn, dusk, night, or in a tunnel.
- The view of the camera is interfered with sudden changes in brightness, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.

- The view of the camera is interfered with large shadows cast by buildings, landscape features, or large vehicles.
- The view of the camera is interfered with direct light.
- Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, haze, and other bad weather.
- Visibility is poor due to exhaust gas, splashes, snow, or dust kicked up by vehicles in front of you.
- The camera is obstructed by water, dust, small scratches, grease, dirt, wipers, frost, or snow on the windshield.
- The road is wet.

In some situations, the radar system may fail to recognize obstacles, which may affect the performance of or even cause the unintended deactivation of Adaptive Cruise Control. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- Radars are misplaced, blocked, or covered with dirt, ice, snow, metal plates, tape, labels, leaves, or other obstructions.
- Radars or the surrounding areas are damaged by collisions or scratches.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog, and other extreme weather which may impair radar performance
- False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.

Adaptive Cruise Control will only respond to vehicles that meet certain conditions. Some targets may not be recognized or responded to, including but not limited to:

- Vehicles crossing perpendicular to your vehicle
- Oncoming vehicles
- Bicycles, motorcycles, and tricycles

Some targets are not responded to, including but not limited to:

- Pedestrians
- Animals
- Traffic lights
- Walls
- Barriers
- Other non-vehicle objects

### Caution

- This feature does not guarantee the recognition of special-shaped targets, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention, e.g. vehicles with a covered rear or irregularly-shaped rear, vehicles with a rear below a certain height, and unladen carriers.
- This feature may miss stationary or slow-moving vehicles, especially at night when the driver needs to pay extra attention.

Recognition and response may be delayed if the target is not right in the front in some situations, including but not limited to:

- Adaptive Cruise Control does not respond to targets that are in sensor blind spots. For example, Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect targets in the blind spot at the corner or on the side of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is approaching or navigating a curve, the target may be incorrectly selected or missed, resulting in unintended acceleration or deceleration.
- The target may be lost or the distance to the lead vehicle may be misjudged when the vehicle is on a slope. Driving downhill will increase the vehicle speed so as to exceed the cruise speed.
- When only a part of the vehicle in the adjacent lane cuts in front of you (especially large vehicles such as buses and trucks), the target may not be identified and trigger a response. Therefore, you must immediately take over control.
- When your vehicle suddenly cuts behind the lead vehicle, or when other vehicles abruptly cut in to or out of the lane in front of you, the target may not be promptly identified. Therefore, you must immediately take over control.

### Caution

- In rare cases, this feature may accelerate your vehicle even when it is not necessary or intended due to a change in, or loss of, the target (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- In rare cases, this feature may apply the vehicle's brakes when it is not necessary or intended due to the detection of vehicles or objects, or a change in, or loss of, a stationary target in the adjacent lane (especially when cornering or changing lanes).
- When following the lead vehicle, if your vehicle or the lead vehicle switches out of the current lane, acceleration may be restricted by this feature for

a certain period of time for your safety. You can take over by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Warning

This feature does not guarantee that the target can be accurately recognized in all situations. Please take over promptly if you find that the target lead vehicle shown on the digital instrument cluster does not match the actual situation. i.e.

- A vehicle is in front of you, but the digital instrument cluster shows none.
- No vehicle is in front of you, but the digital instrument cluster shows a vehicle.

We do not recommend using Adaptive Cruise Control in special or complex road conditions which may affect the performance of or even cause the unintended deactivation of Adaptive Cruise Control. Such conditions include but are not limited to:

- Water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Large numbers of pedestrians, bicycles, or animals on the road.
- Complex and changing traffic flows, such as busy intersections, motorway ramps, and congested roads.
- Winding roads and sharp turns.
- Uphill or downhill roads.
- Bumpy roads.
- Narrow roads.
- Tunnel entrances and exits.
- Non-standard roads.
- Roads without center medians.
- Construction areas.

If the relative speed between your vehicle and the lead vehicle is too high, the limited control capabilities of Adaptive Cruise Control may be insufficient to promptly maintain the appropriate distance in some situations, Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The front vehicle makes sudden moves (such as an abrupt turn, acceleration, or deceleration).
- Other vehicles suddenly cut in or out of the lane in front of you.
- Your vehicle suddenly cuts behind a vehicle in front.

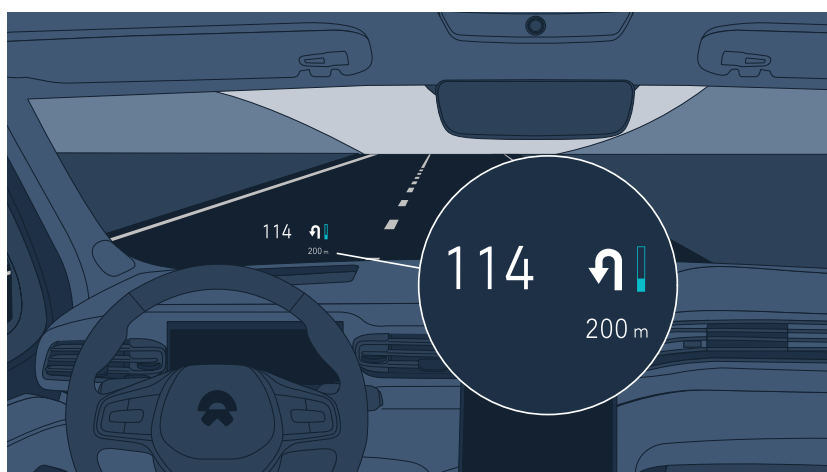
- Your vehicle rushes towards a stationary or slow-moving target at a high speed.

Braking force may not be sufficient in some situations, Such situations include but are not limited to:

- The brakes do not fully function (such as when brake components are too cold, hot, or wet).
- Improper maintenance (such as excessive brake or tire wear, or abnormal tire pressure).
- Driving on special roads (such as sloping roads or roads with water, mud, potholes, snow, or ice).

### Enhanced Head-Up Display (HUD)

When driving, the Enhanced Head-Up Display shows your speed and other information on the windshield above the digital instrument cluster.



Enhanced Head-Up Display can display the following information: speed, navigation directions, traffic signs, cruise signs, and Autohold.

### Caution

At certain angles, sunlight may lead to tiny bright specks on the windshield when refracted and reflected by the front windshield and Heads-Up Display. These specks may disappear with changes in light angle, driving direction, slope, etc.

When driving in the same direction for a long time, you can adjust the height of the Heads-Up Display to get rid of these specks.

### Setting Enhanced HUD

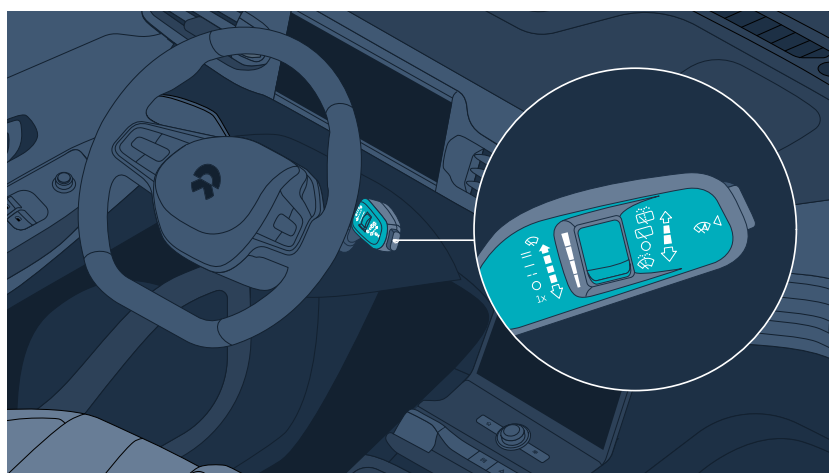
Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Display > HUD** to set this feature.

- Enable HUD
- Auto-Brightness
- Height


Set heights are automatically memorized by the system.

### Front Wipers

The front wipers clean the front windshield. You can set front wipers to different modes by toggling the lever on the right of the steering wheel.



	Single wipe	Front wipers wipe once	Toggle down the lever once
	Off	Front wipers are turned off	Toggle the lever to this option
	Intermittent wipes	Front wipers wipe intermittently	Toggle the lever to this option
	Consecutive wipes	Front wipers wipe continuously at a low speed	Toggle the lever to this option

		Front wipers wipe continuously at a high speed	Toggle the lever to this option
---	--	--	---------------------------------



When intermittent wipes is enabled, you can adjust the frequency with the speed switch on the lever. Turn up for a higher frequency and down for a lower frequency.


### Warning

In winter, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen and the ice or snow in front of the windshield has been cleared before turning on the wipers.

### Warning

Use sufficient washer fluid when wiping the windshield. Ensure that the windshield is wet when wipers are in operation.

### ***Front Windshield Cleaning***

Pull the right lever towards you and hold, select  to turn on front windshield cleaning and set the front wipers to wipe at a low speed. Release the lever to stop spraying washer fluid.

Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Cleaning Mode**. Then, the wipers will wipe two more times.

### Caution

To avoid damaging the washer pump, do not use the washer if the washer fluid is insufficient.

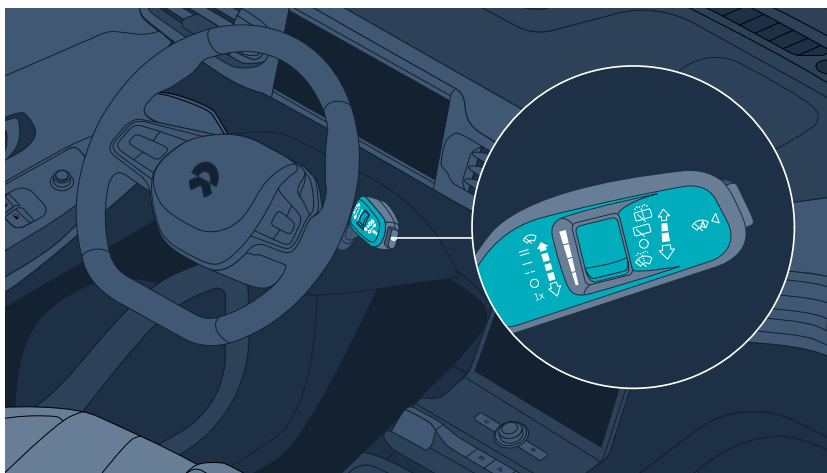
### Warning


In bad weather conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen or attached to the windshield.

### Rain Sensor

The rain sensor detects rainfall on the windshield and adjusts the wipers automatically.

#### ***Enabling/Disabling the Rain Sensor***



Press the rain sensor button  on the end of the right lever to enable the rain sensor. Press it again or toggle the lever up and down to disable the sensor.

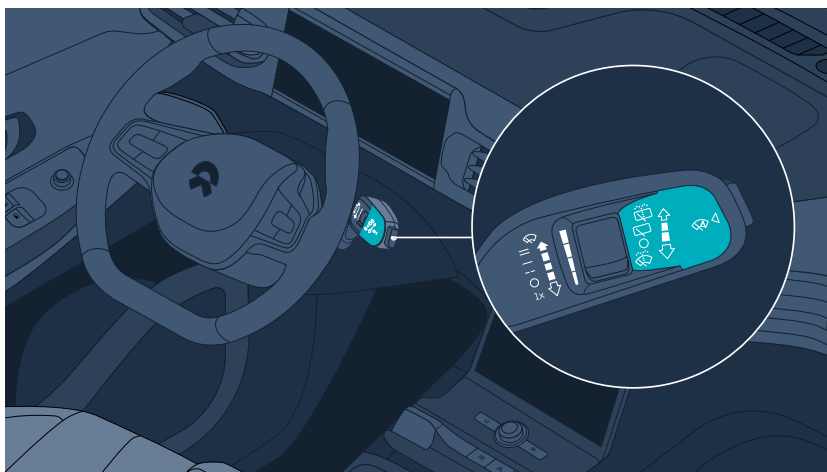
### Caution

To avoid damage to the wipers, ensure that the rain sensor is disabled when entering an automatic car wash machine.


### Rear Wiper and Washer

The rear wiper and washer clean the rear windshield. You can set the rear wiper to different modes by toggling the lever to the right of the steering wheel.





Push the lever forward to  wipe at a low speed.

Push the lever further forward and hold to  spray washer fluid and wipe at a low speed. Release the lever to stop spraying and keep wiping.

Pull the lever back to stop wiping.

### ***Enabling/Disabling Rear Wiper in Reverse***

Shifting into REVERSE when front wipers are turned on will turn on the rear wiper. Shifting out of REVERSE will turn off the rear wiper.

When Auto Rear Wiper is enabled and the front wipers are turned on, the rear wiper operates automatically when reversing.

Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Auto Rear Wiper** to enable this feature.

### **Exterior Lights**

Swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and tap **Headlights** to adjust exterior lights.

 Headlights on

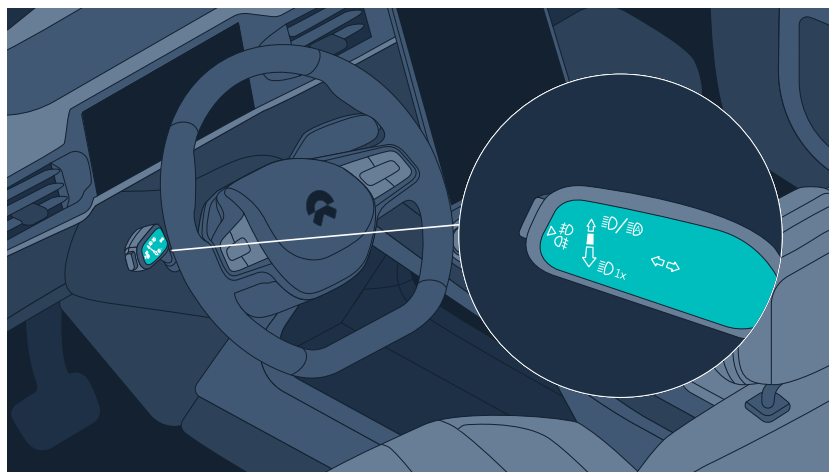
 Position lights on

 Headlights is automatically turned on or off according to sensors.

 Headlights off

### **High Beam and Low Beam Headlights**

You can set the headlights on high beam or low beam with the light control lever on the left of the steering wheel.



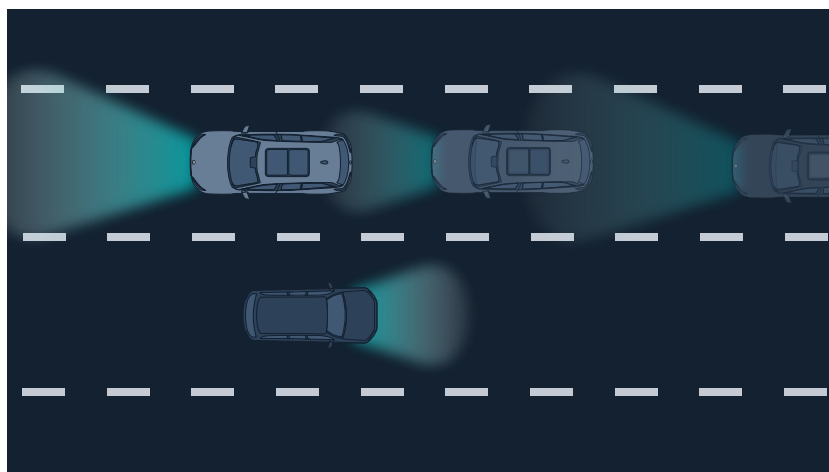
- Push the lever away from you and release to turn on Auto High Beam. Push the lever again to turn on the high beams.
- Pull the lever towards you and release to turn off the high beams. To briefly flash the high beams, pull the lever towards you.

### Caution

Auto High Beams are only available when the headlights are set to Auto mode, or the feature is turned on.




### ***Auto High Beam***

Your vehicle detects and monitors the headlights and taillights of vehicles in front of you and street lights with the front camera. This allows the vehicle to intelligently turn off the high beams when you overtake or pass other vehicles or enter well-lit areas to avoid dazzling other road users. High beams will then be turned on again when there are no vehicles in front of you or the surrounding area is dark.



- High beams on: dark environments without other vehicles or road users in front of you.
- High beams off: bright environments or with other vehicles or road users in front of you.

You can check the following information on the digital instrument cluster:

- Auto High Beam on 
- High beams on 
- Low beams on 

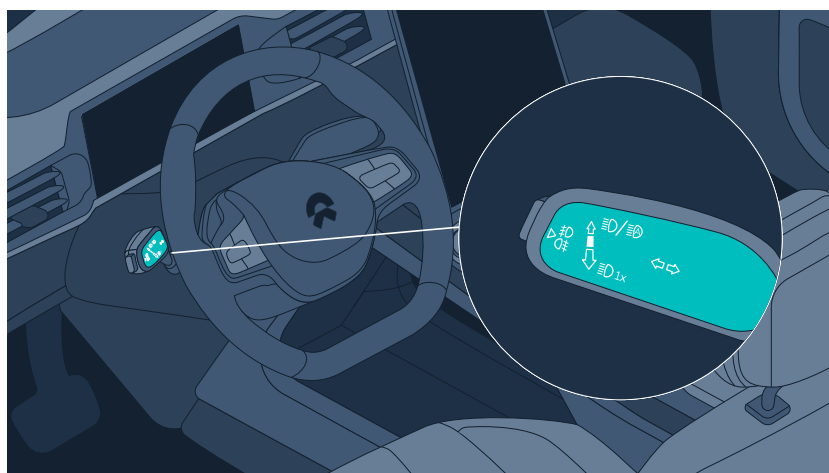
### Note


When Auto High Beams are activated, pull the lever towards you to turn on high beams immediately. Releasing the lever will switch the headlights back to low beams and return Auto High Beams to standby status.

### Warning

As a driving assist feature, Auto High Beams cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. The driver should always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Enabling/Disabling Auto High Beam***



1. Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Headlights** to enable  Auto High Beam.

2. Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Auto High Beam** to enable or disable this feature.
3. Push the lever away from you and release to activate Auto High Beam. This feature automatically switches between high beams and low beams when driving at over 40 km/h.
4. Push the lever again or pull it back to cancel Auto High Beam.

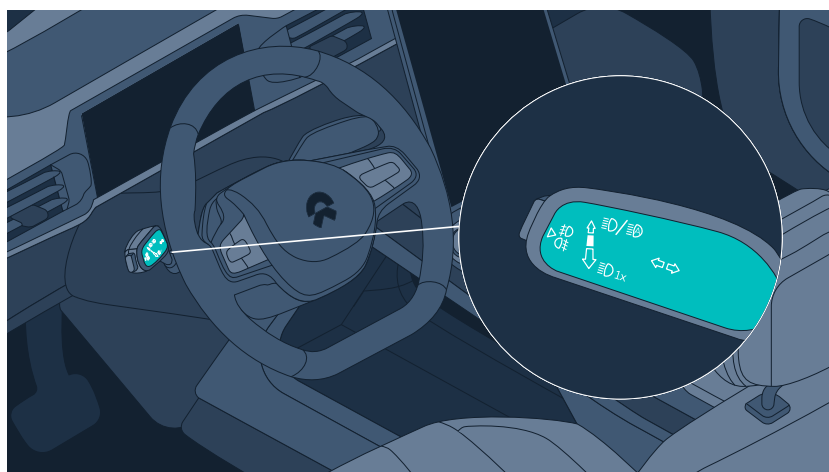
Auto High Beam may not automatically control the headlights in some situations, including but not limited to:

- When turn signals are on.
- When the steering wheel is turned too fast.
- When navigating a sharp curve.
- When the wiper speed is set to maximum.
- When fog lights are on.

### Warning

This feature may be impaired in heavy rain, snow, fog and other extreme weather conditions, or when the camera is blocked. Please drive with caution.

### Turn Signals



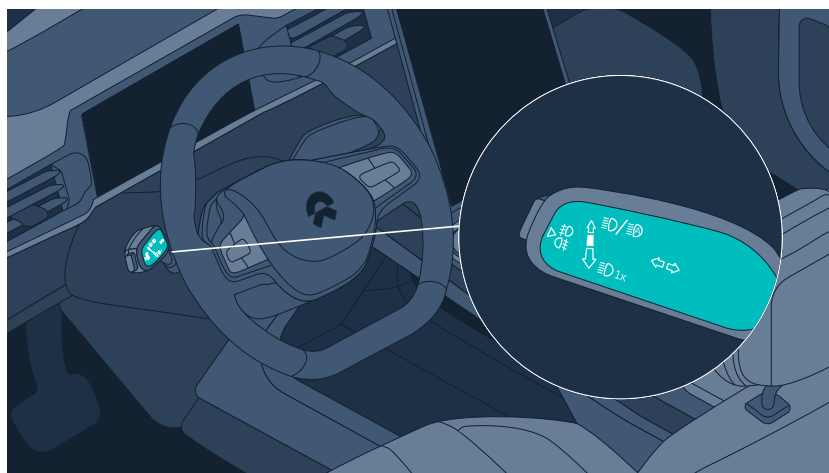
- Left: push the lever down
- Right: push the lever up

The turn signals stop operating when the steering wheel returns to the center position or the lever is moved back to the center.

When a turn signal is operating, the corresponding icon lights up on the digital instrument cluster with clicking sounds.

### **Fog Lights**

Press the button on the end of the left lever to turn on the front and rear fog lights. Position lights are automatically turned on when fog lights are on.



Sequence:

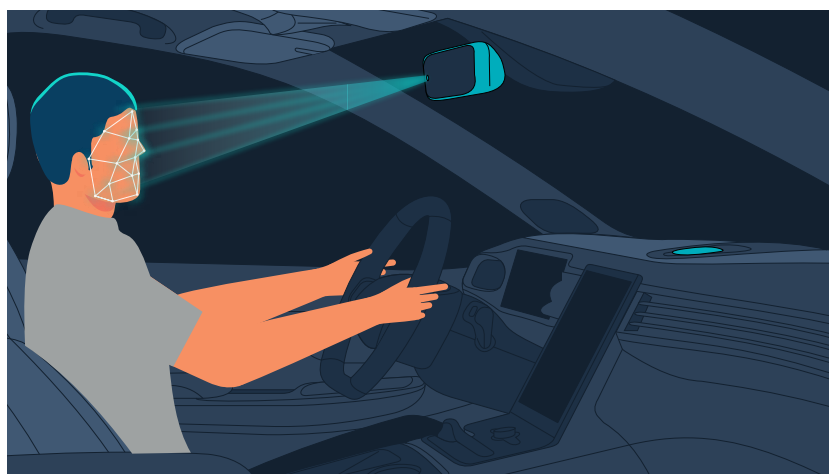
- First press: front fog lights on.
- Second press: rear fog lights on.
- Third press: rear fog lights off.
- Fourth press: front fog lights off.

Press again to repeat the sequence.

When fog lights are on, the corresponding icon is displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### **Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD)**

Driver Drowsiness Detection (DDD) uses a smart visual system to sense the driver's level of concentration during driving and reminds the driver to take a rest in time.



With Driver Drowsiness Detection enabled and its activation conditions met, if the driver is distracted or drowsy, NOMI will remind the driver with facial expressions and voice prompts according to the level of drowsiness, and the digital instrument cluster will also remind the driver to stay focused.

### **Warning**

Driver Drowsiness Detection cannot operate under all conditions and is only designed to assist driving. The driver should always bear the ultimate responsibility for driving safely.

Therefore, it is of great importance that you pay attention when driving and take regular breaks. When a driver is alerted or feels fatigued, they should adjust their behavior or pull over safely as soon as possible to take a break.

### ***Enable/Disable Driver Drowsiness Detection***

Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Driver Drowsiness Detection** to enable or disable the feature. You can also enable or disable the feature by

voice commands, such as "turn on/off driver drowsiness detection", "turn on/off drowsiness detection", or "turn on/off DDD".



When the feature is enabled, it will be activated when the vehicle speed is at or above 22 km/h.

Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Driver Drowsiness Detection Sensitivity** to select Low or High.

### ***Personalized Calibration***

A personalized calibration when the vehicle is in PARK is recommended during your first use of this feature.

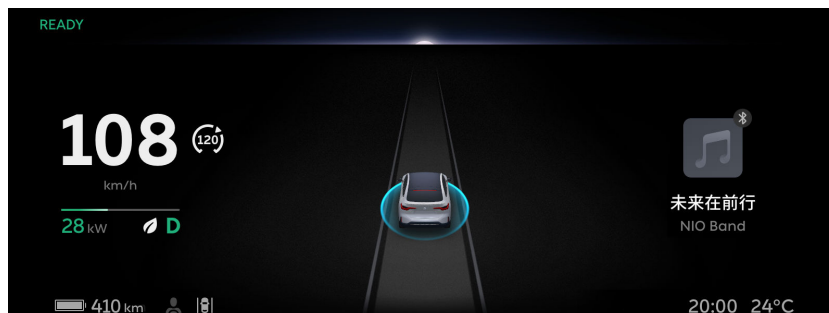
Go to Settings from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driver Assist > Personalized Calibration**, including adjusting the rear-view mirror. Please follow NOMI's voice instructions and maintain the normal driving posture until the NOMI prompts about the calibration completion. Then save the personalized calibration results into the current user account.

The driver can recalibrate the system to update personalized settings. by using the voice command "**Recalibrate**" and save the new personalized calibration results into the current user account.

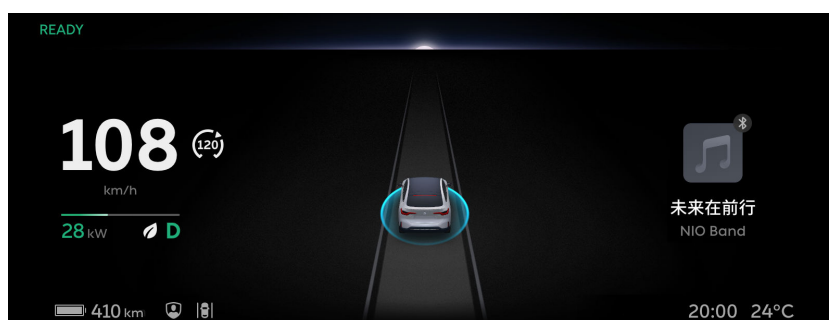
Once a calibration result is saved to the current account, if the driver or the position of the rear-view mirror, driver's seat, or steering wheel is changed, the accuracy of detection and alert will be impaired. If you find that drowsiness detection is constantly inaccurate, you need to recalibrate the feature so that the system will learn your customary posture when driving.

### Displays on the Digital Instrument Cluster

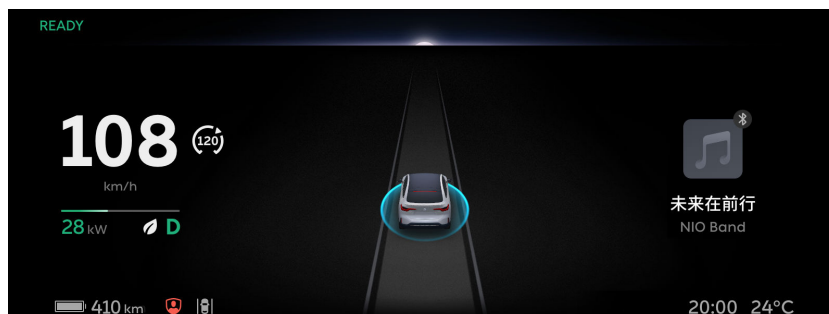
- Not activated



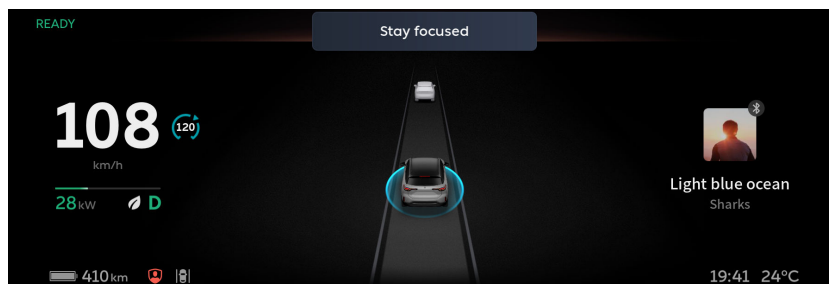
- Activated



- Level-one alert

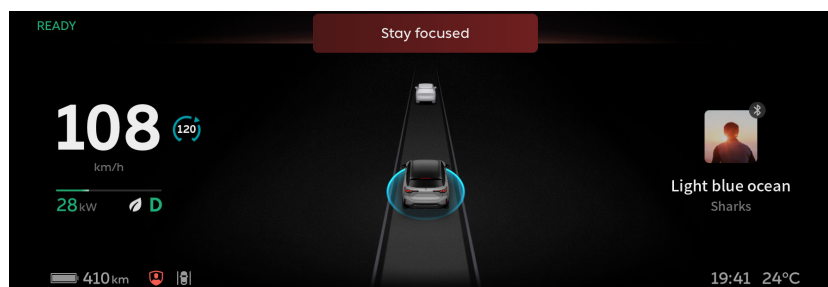


- Level-two alert



- Level-three alert





## Caution

The camera will not record or share any images, audio or videos.

## Caution

When detection is abnormal due to factors such as the driver's face being obstructed, the system will turn off automatically after one minute. In this case, all personalized calibration results will become invalid. If the system is reactivated, the driver will need to perform the personalized calibration again.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

In some cases, Driver Drowsiness Detection may not detect the driver's drowsiness or distraction. In this case, the system may fail to give the corresponding alerts or may be partially nonfunctional. Such situations include but are not limited to:

- At night or in a dark environment.
- Under direct and strong light, such as sunlight or the headlights of an oncoming car.
- The driver's seat has been adjusted.
- The rear-view mirror or steering wheel has been adjusted.
- The rear-view mirror is obstructed by objects such as dash camera, films, or stickers.
- The driver's eyes are covered by sunglasses, polarized glasses, or eyeglass frames.
- The driver is wearing accessories, such as a hat, scarf, or headscarf, that change the contours of the head.
- The driver is wearing a mask.

In other cases, Driver Drowsiness Detection may still remind you to take a break while you are not at all tired.

## Range Assurance

The digital instrument cluster displays the power bar, battery percentage, remaining mileage, and other high voltage battery information.

### Caution

When the battery level is lower than 15%, the power bar will turn red and an alert will appear on the digital instrument cluster.

### *Driving on Low Battery*

When the battery level is lower than 10%, the discharge power of the high voltage battery is restricted, which will impair vehicle performance and reduce the maximum speed. In this case, the digital instrument cluster will remind you to charge the battery as soon as possible.

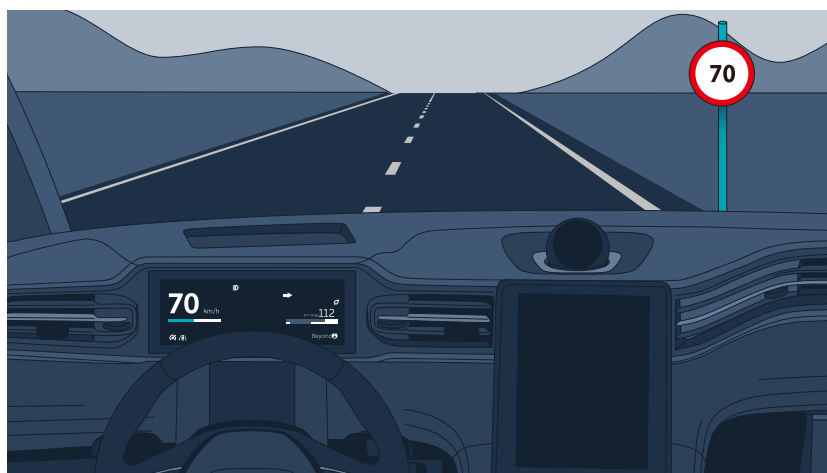
### *Driving at Low Temperatures*

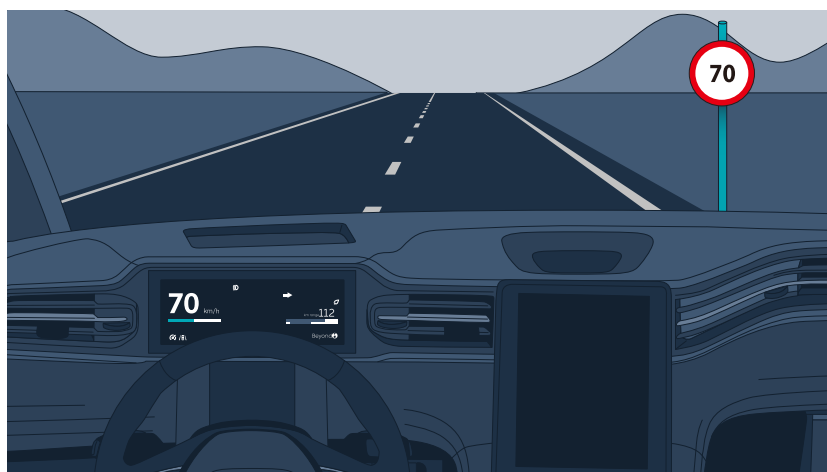
At temperatures around  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ , your vehicle can start and drive normally, but the performance will be impaired due to the low temperature of the high voltage battery.

## Traffic Sign Recognition and Speed Limit Warning

Traffic Sign Recognition combines speed limit information from the navigation map with speed limit signs recognized by the trifocal camera to help you observe the speed limit when driving.

Speed Limit Warning alerts you when you exceed the speed limit.





### Caution

For now, Traffic Sign Recognition only detects speed limit signs and does not respond to other traffic signs.

### Warning

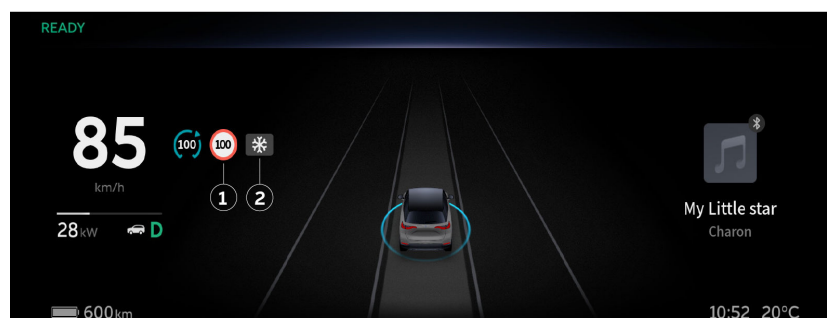
Traffic Sign Recognition and Warnings is for your reference only, and cannot substitute your visual inspection. Never rely solely on the speed limit information recognized by Traffic Sign Recognition.

### Warning







As a driving assist feature, Traffic Sign Recognition and Warnings cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to the traffic conditions, road environment, and speed limit signs, and drive at an appropriate and safe speed.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)***



1. Speed limit indicator:

- The speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster combines the speed limit information from the navigation map with the speed limit signs recognized by the trifocal camera.
  - No speed limit information is displayed when neither speed limit information source is available.
2. Supplementary indicator: if the current speed limit is also restricted by other conditions, a supplementary indicator will also be displayed on the instrument cluster:
- : Trailer Mode
  - : No Localization Services
  - : Rainy Weather/Wet Road
  - : Unclear Condition
  - : Off Road
  - : Snowy Weather/Icy Road

### ***Enabling/Disabling Speed Limit Warning***

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Driver Assist > Speed Limit Warning** to enable or disable the feature.

With this feature enabled, you can adjust the speed prompt:

- Speed Limit: when the current driving speed exceeds the speed designated on the traffic sign.
- +5 km/h: when the current driving speed is 5 km/h higher than the speed designated on the traffic sign.
- +10 km/h: when the current driving speed is 10 km/h higher than the speed designated on the traffic sign.

When the driving speed exceeds the speed limit, the indicator will turn red; if the speed limit information is from the traffic surveillance camera, the indicator will flash.

The speed prompt will stop after 10 seconds, or the current speed is lower than the speed limit.

## Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

Traffic Sign Recognition and Speed Limit Warning may fail to operate as intended or be restricted in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The trifocal camera is obstructed.
- The map information is outdated or inaccurate.
- GPS data cannot be accessed.
- Road signs are faded, damaged, blocked, covered by ice, snow, or dust, or are along curved roads.
- Multiple speed limit signs are in a line, or there are different speed limit signs on adjacent lanes.
- Other unclear traffic signs may be misidentified by Traffic Sign Recognition as speed limit signs.

## Driving on a slow speed section

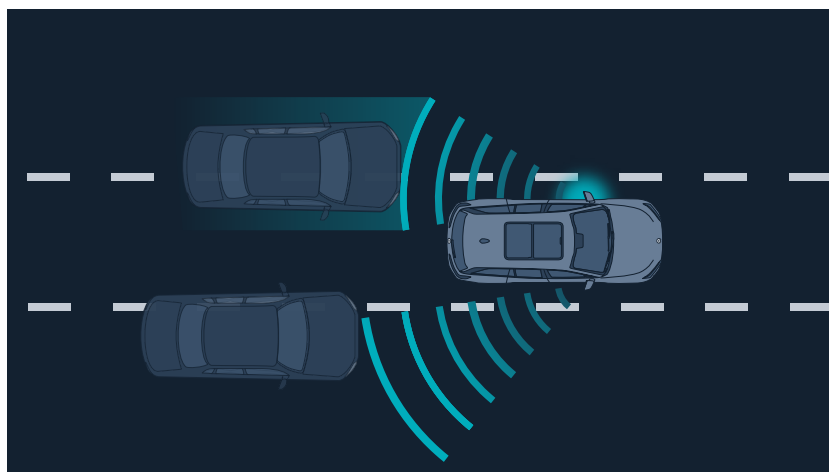
### Blind Spot Detection (BSD) and Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist prevent your vehicle from colliding with vehicles in adjacent lanes during lane changes, reducing the risk of accidents.

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist are only activated when you are driving above 12 km/h.

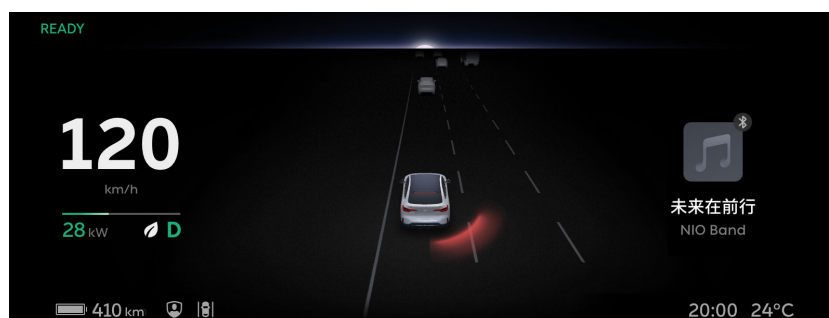
### Caution

The detection range of this function is 3.5 meters from the sides of the vehicle and 70 meters from the rear.



Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **ADAS > Lane Change Assist**, and then select an appropriate warning type.

When this feature is enabled and activated, the following visual reminder is shown on the digital instrument cluster when a vehicle is approaching from behind.



When a vehicle is detected in the driver's blind spot or fast approaching from behind, a visual alert is shown on the corresponding side mirror. In this case, if

you toggle on the turn signal to the corresponding side, you will be alerted not to change lanes in one of the following ways:

- Check lights
- Sound + Light

### Caution

The chime may not be heard if the environmental noise is too loud, such as when the audio system is played at high volumes or the surrounding environment is too noisy.

### Caution

Information displayed on the digital instrument cluster can only be used as a reference and cannot perfectly reflect the real traffic conditions. Therefore, do not rely on the information displayed on the digital instrument cluster.

### Caution

When you drive on a road with sharp curves, wide lanes or an uneven surface, Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist may not be able to warn you about vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Blind Spot Detection and Lane Change Assist may give false warnings in the following situations:

- Driving near protective fences
- Driving on/under a bridge, or through a tunnel
- Driving besides bushes, trees, etc.
- When there are wire poles, street lights or low concrete walls along the road
- Driving near construction areas such as factory buildings, ports, etc.
- Driving on urban roads or multi-lane intersections

### Warning

- Radars are mounted on or behind the bumper. Keep the bumper clean and free of mud, ice, metal plates, stickers, labels and leaves. Failure to do so may impact the performance of the radars.
- If this feature does not function properly due to a collision, scratches, radar failure or malfunction, please contact NIO as soon as possible.

- If the radar malfunctions for a long period of time and fails to receive any fault-related alerts, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- This feature only detects and alerts you to vehicles and large motorcycles or objects, and may have a delay or even fail to detect or alert you to objects such as pedestrians, bicycles or skateboards.
- This feature does not alert you to stationary objects. False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog and other extreme weather conditions may impair radar performance. Please drive with caution.
- Never use this feature in Tow Mode.

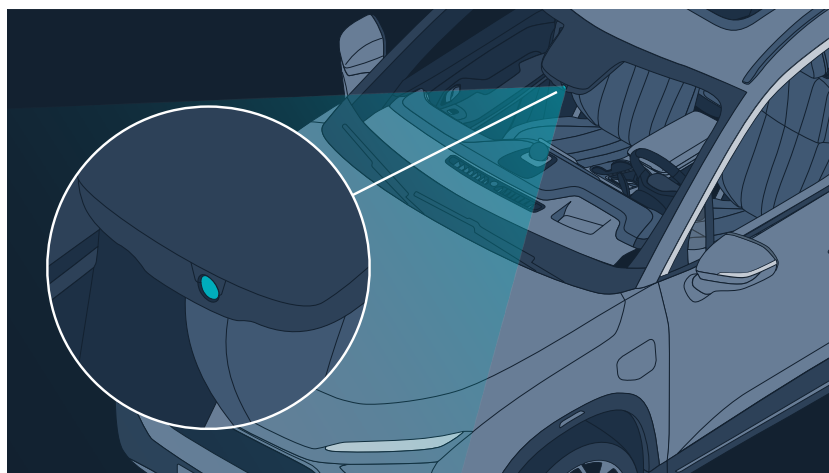


## Driving into the garage

### Dash Camera

You can use the dash camera to take videos of your driving, which can be used as evidence in case of a traffic accident.

The dash camera has loop and emergency recording modes.



Using a dash camera may be an invasion of the privacy rights of other natural persons in some circumstances. You need to check the local laws and regulations on the use of dash camera. Please be aware that you can be held liable for violations of local laws and regulations if you are using dash camera inappropriately.

### Caution

DVR does not work when the vehicle is parked and powered off.

### Caution

The Digital Video Recorder does not record audio.

### Caution



The loop and emergency videos will not be uploaded to the cloud, but locally stored in the vehicle only.

### Caution

The faces and license plates recorded by the dash camera are protected by related privacy laws as personal information.

### ***Loop Recording***

Enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Safety > Dash Camera** to enable or disable the feature.

-  is displayed at the top of the center display when recording is enabled.
-  is displayed at the top of the center display when recording is disabled.

The dash camera can store up to eight hours of loop recording. When the memory is full, it automatically overwrites the oldest videos. To back up specific or important videos, insert a USB drive, select the file, and touch **Edit > Transfer** to manually export the video.

When DVR is enabled, the camera is turned on and continuously records in a loop until DVR is disabled.

The recording will be stored in **Photos > Dash Camera**.

### ***Emergency Recording***

With Emergency Recording enabled, the dash camera will record videos in the memory in a circular manner. If Automatic Emergency Braking is triggered or airbags are deployed, emergency videos will be saved.

The videos 30s before the emergency and 60s after the emergency will be saved. The recording will be stored in **Photos > Emergency Videos**.

### ***Quick Video Record***

When you encounter an exciting moment, you can tap Quick Video Record to take a video and save it.

Swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and tap **Quick Video Record** to start recording.

- When the dash camera is on, the previous 30 seconds and the following 60 seconds will be recorded.
- When the dash camera is off, only the following 60 seconds will be recorded.

The recording will be stored in **Photos > Emergency Videos**.

## Emergency Braking

If the brake pedal malfunctions, you can activate Emergency Braking by pressing the PARK button, which will bring the vehicle to a stop as soon as possible under normal circumstances.

- Press and hold the PARK button to activate Emergency Braking.
- Release the PARK button or press the accelerator pedal to cancel Emergency Braking. To reactivate the feature, press the button again.

### Caution

Only activate Emergency Braking in emergency situations where the brake pedal malfunctions or is stuck.

### Warning

When driving in winter, or on roads with sharp curves or uneven surfaces, activating Emergency Braking may cause the vehicle to drift or slip. Please drive with caution.

## Navigating to Destination

### Navigating to Parking Space with Charger

Search for a power swap station on the map or select one in the Charging Assist:

- If within the service range of the station, tap to order;
- If outside the service range, navigate to the station. The order will be automatically placed when you approach the station.

### Caution

- The locations of your vehicle and the NIO app are checked during order placement. An order cannot be placed successfully unless your vehicle is within 200m of the power swap station.
- In the event of an order placement failure due to unavailable vehicle network, please try again after the network resumes or consult the field specialist.
- Please read the Agreement and Disclaimer before placing an order.

When the order is placed, a Power Swap No. will be generated for queuing. You can check the charging status, your position in the queue, and estimated wait time on the order page of the NIO app or the center display.

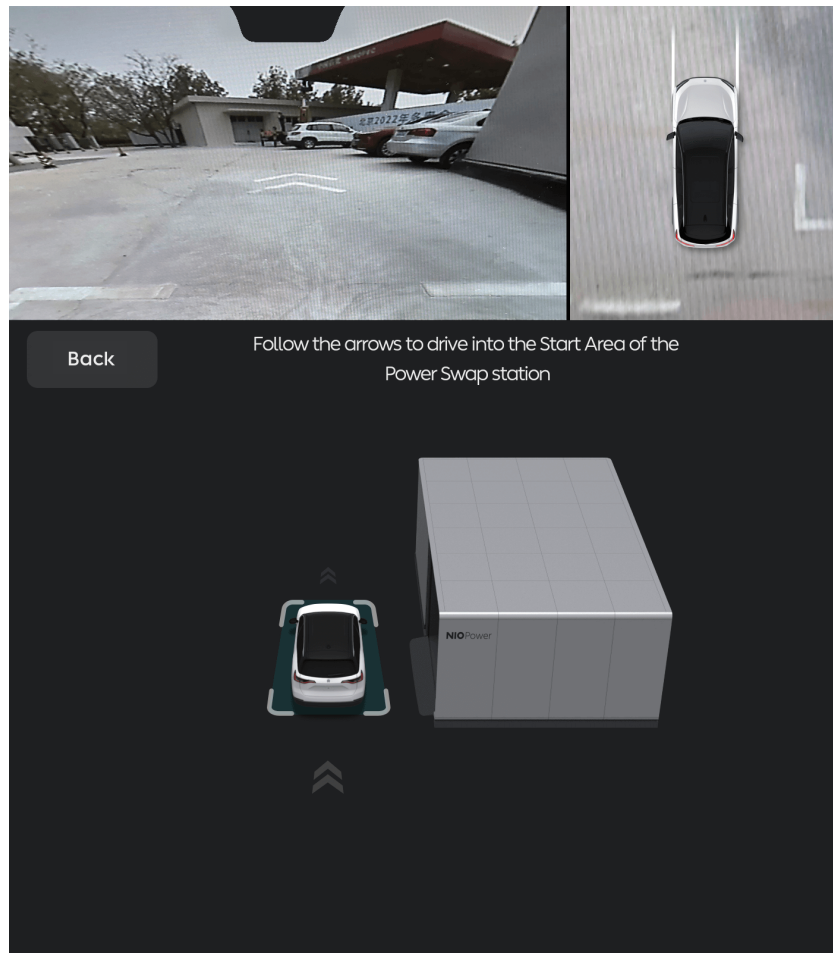
When the vehicle in front completes the power swap and leaves the station, you will get notified to pull in for a power swap. Tap "Activate Power Swap" on the center display to start parking.

### Caution

- Please wait for your turn near the power swap station and pay attention to the queuing status on your center display or NIO app. If you miss your turn, please contact the field specialist in time.
- If you have to leave the power swap station for some reason, please pay attention to the queuing status on the NIO app or cancel the order in time.
- Please avoid the lane in front of the station when waiting for power swap.

### ***Parking into Station***

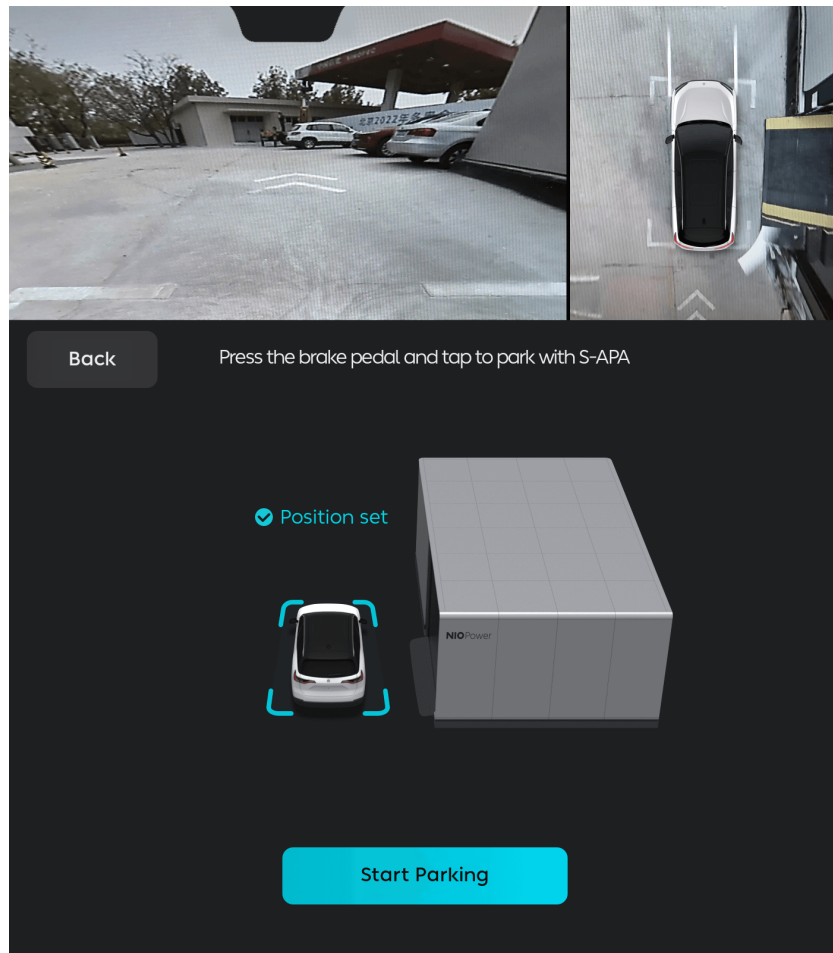
Tap "Activate Power Swap" and drive into the start area of the station as instructed on the center display at a speed lower than 18 km/h.



### Caution

- A high speed may cause positioning detection failure. Please keep the speed below 18 km/h.
- Please drive as instructed by the arrows on the ground and avoid vehicles and pedestrians around.
- If positioning detection fails, please contact the field specialist to take over your vehicle and manually reverse for power swap.

In the start area, press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle when the instrument cluster and NOMI prompt that the positioning is completed. Wait for the positioning detection.



Make sure to buckle up and close the doors while waiting in the start area.

Tap "Start Parking" and start driving into the station as instructed when "Release the brake pedal and the steering wheel" appears on the center display.

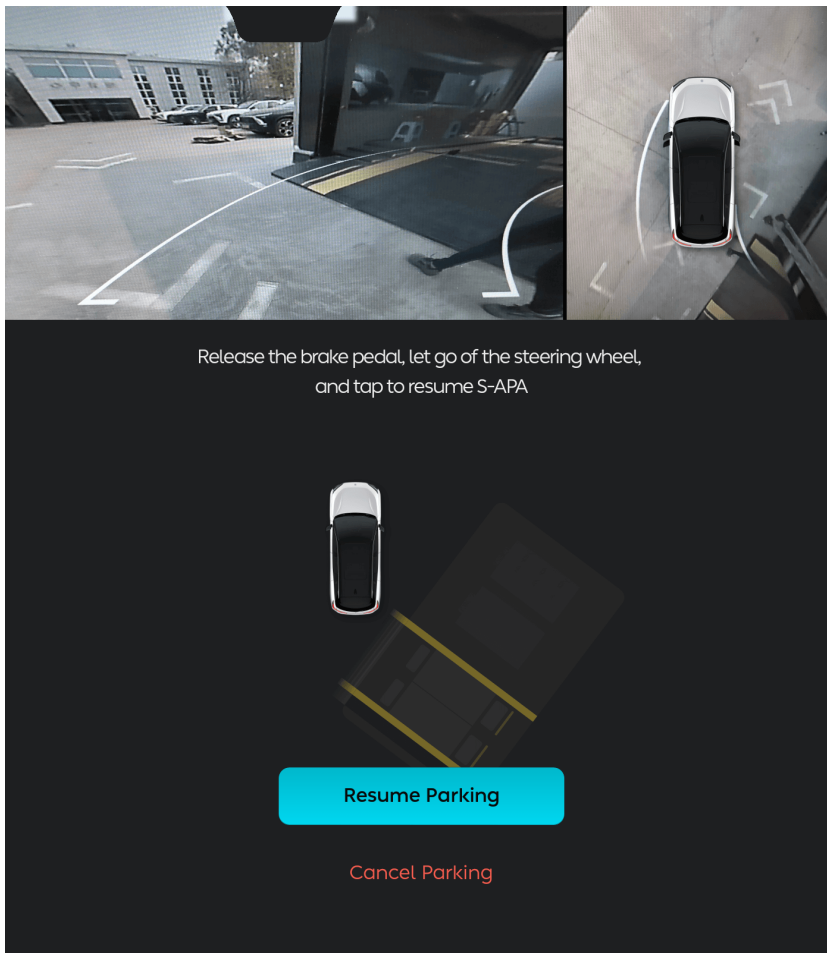


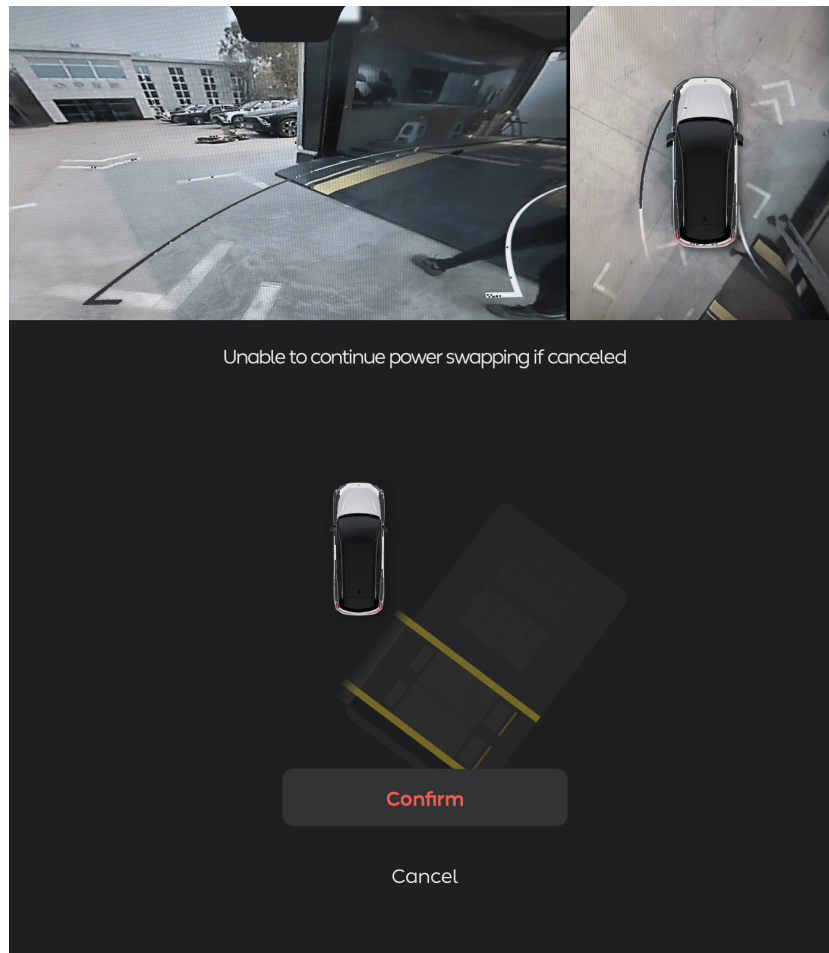
- If the parking is paused due to an obstacle, the process will resume when the obstacle is removed.



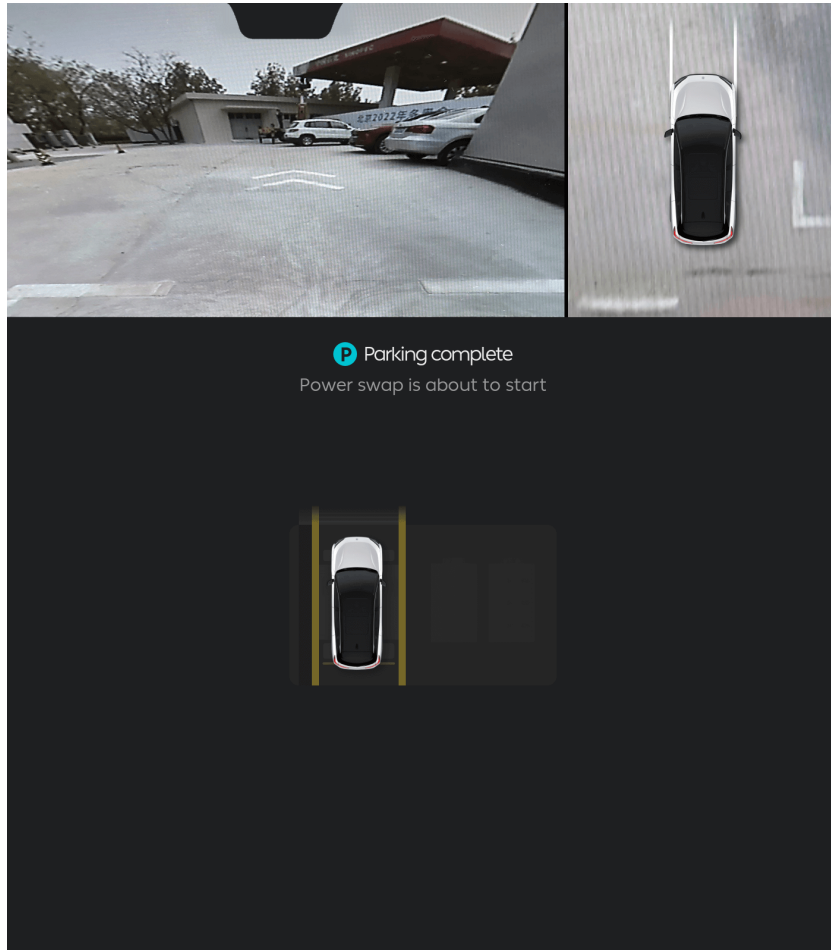
- If the parking is paused when the brake pedal is pressed accidentally, you can resume the process manually after confirming that the surroundings are clear of obstacles.







If the parking cannot be resumed, select "Cancel Parking" and exit your vehicle. The field specialist will manually swap the power for you.



After the vehicle is parked in place, follow the instructions on the center display for the power swap.

### Caution

Before or during parking into the power swap station, please always pay attention to your surroundings to confirm that there are no passing vehicles, pedestrians, children, etc. and ensure parking safety.

Please do not take over the accelerator pedal, unbuckle the seat belt, leave the driver's seat, or open the door during parking into the power swap station.

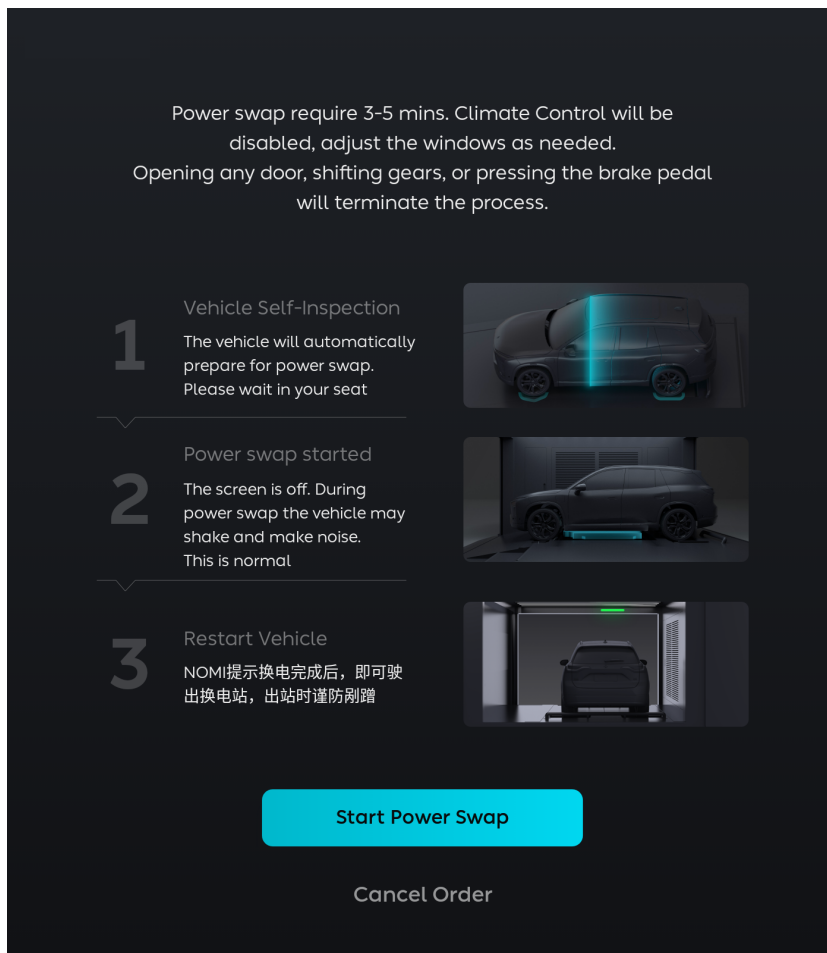
## Starting/Ending Power Swap

Power swap require 3-5 mins. Climate Control will be disabled, adjust the windows as needed.  
Opening any door, shifting gears, or pressing the brake pedal will terminate the process.

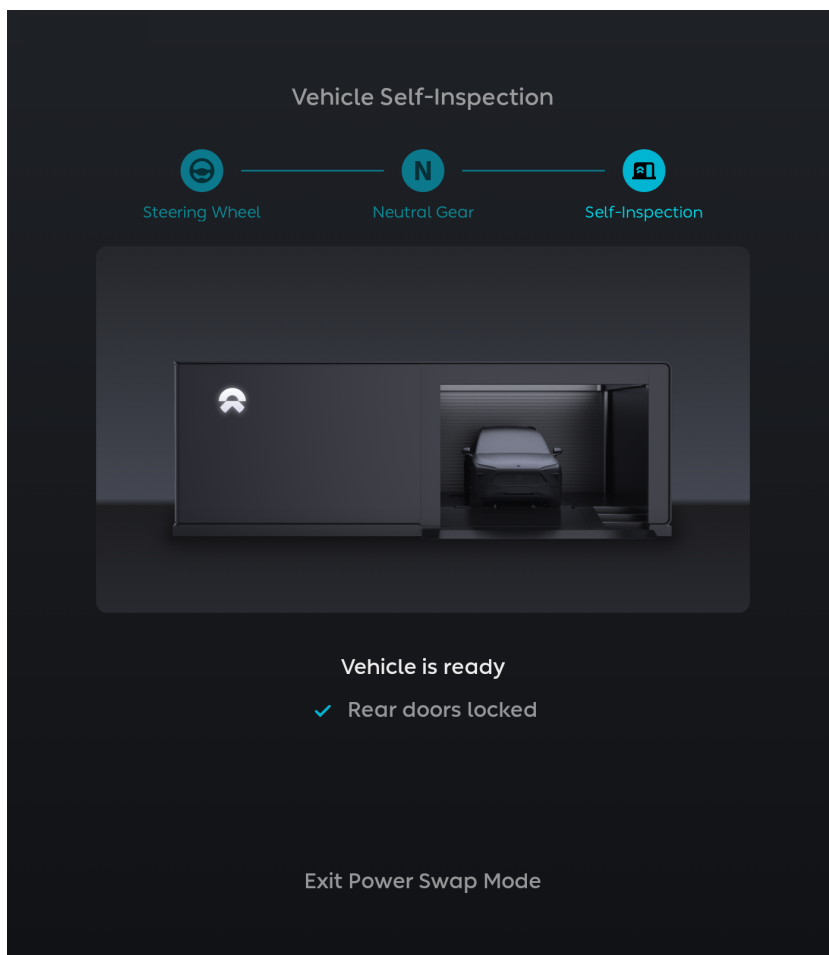
- 1** Vehicle Self-Inspection  
The vehicle will automatically prepare for power swap.  
Please wait in your seat
- 2** Power swap started  
The screen is off. During power swap the vehicle may shake and make noise.  
This is normal
- 3** Restart Vehicle  
NOMI提示换电完成后，即可驶出换电站，出站时谨防剐蹭

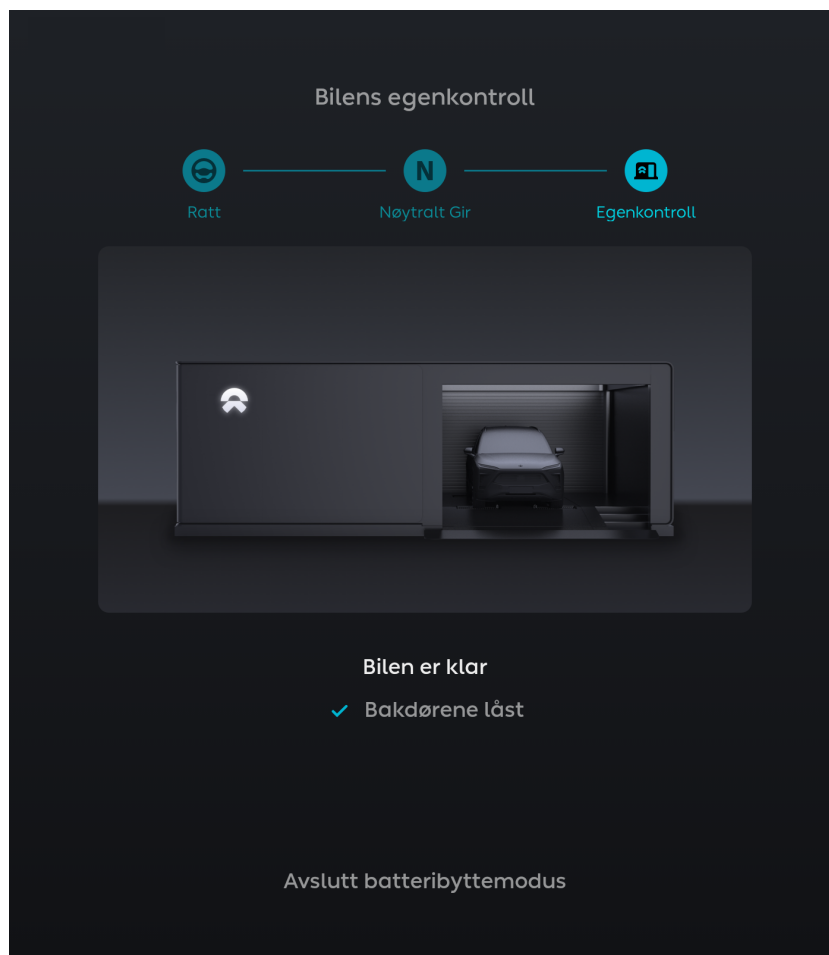
Start Power Swap

Cancel Order



Power swap can be started with one tap after the vehicle is parked in place. Please carefully read the instructions on the center display and tap "Start Power Swap".





Your vehicle will automatically enter the Power Swap Mode and the center display will go off.

### Warning

If your vehicle is not parked in place or failed to be automatically adjusted, please adjust your vehicle as instructed by the field specialist.

The windows or air conditioning cannot be adjusted during the power swap. Please adjust them to proper positions in advance.

During the power swap, it is normal that the vehicle jerks slightly with some noise and some warning lights are on temporarily.

During the process, do not try to open any door, shift gears, press the brake pedal, or perform other actions, which may cancel the power swap abnormally.

When the power swap is completed, the center display will light up with a prompt and the indicator in the station will turn green. You can then drive out of the station.

**Caution**

Please pay attention to any vehicles or pedestrians in front for safety before exiting the power swap station.

## Parking Setting

### Parking Assist

Parking Assist monitors the surroundings of the vehicle using ultrasonic sensors when the vehicle is driving at a low speed to help you park safely.

In the parking process, audio and visual alerts are emitted to indicate the distance between the front or rear of your vehicle and the obstacle.

Distance	Audio alert frequency	Visual alert color
1.2-1.5 m	None	White
0.9-1.2 m	Once per second	White
0.6-0.9 m	Twice per second	Orange
0.3-0.6 m	Three times per second	Orange
Less than 0.3 m	High-frequency beeps	Red

### Warning

Parking Assist serves as a reference only, and cannot substitute your visual observation.

As a driving assist feature, Parking Assist cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Parking Assist only after your safety is ensured.

It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Enabling/Disabling Parking Assist***

You can enable Parking Assist in the following ways:

- Swipe right on the home page to visit Quick Access and tap **Surround View** to enable this feature.
- Enter the application launcher and touch **Parking Camera**.
- Shift into REVERSE.

You can tap the upper right of the interface to turn off the audio alert.



**Caution**

Parking Alert will be automatically canceled when your vehicle is in PARK or moving faster than 18 km/h.

**Caution**

The range of the vehicle's front and rear detection cannot exceed 150 centimeters.

**Warning**

Obstacles that are located in the area around the doors on both sides of the vehicle cannot be detected.

**Warning**

The vehicle may provide prompts such as "Front parking radar fault", "Rear parking radar fault", "Parking radar system fault", and other information due to ultrasonic sensors being restricted in certain situations, including but not limited to:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors being damaged, misplaced, or blocked (by mud, ice or snow).
- Rain, snow, fog, haze or other bad weather affecting the performance of the ultrasonic sensors.
- The sensors receiving interference from other electronic equipment or devices.

**Warning**

Ultrasonic sensor detection may be restricted for certain obstacles, including obstacles that are low or narrow, or which come from the top or side of the vehicle. In these cases, you should always pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so may result in property damage or personal injury. These obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, and animals
- Open parking locks, low stone blocks, low cylinders, thin rods, pointed objects, potholes, etc.
- Height restriction barriers, height bars, or suspended structures
- Obstacles on the side of the vehicle's body that may cause a collision or scratches
- Bicycles, corners of walls and square columns in parking lots, etc.

### ***Side Distance Indication System (SDIS)***

Side Distance Indication System monitors the road ahead through ultrasonic sensors when the vehicle is driving at a low speed. When an obstacle is close to the vehicle, the Parking Camera is automatically activated to help with parking or driving on narrow roads.

#### **Warning**

Side Distance Indication System serves as a reference only, and cannot substitute your visual observation.

As a driving assist feature, Side Distance Indication System cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions. You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Side Distance Indication System if it is safe.

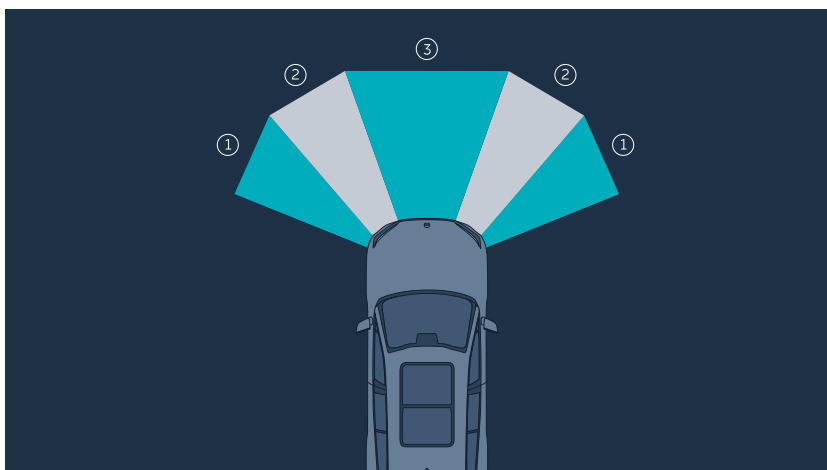
It is always your responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven in a safe manner and comply with applicable traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Enabling/Disabling Side Distance Indication System***

Side Distance Indication System can be enabled or disabled by the setting button on the Parking Camera interface.

The Parking Camera is activated automatically when the following conditions are all met:

- The vehicle is in DRIVE.
- The speed does not exceed 18 km/h.
- There are obstacles in any of the front areas at a distance from the vehicle as in the following table.



Area	Distance
1	Within 50 cm
2	Within 60 cm
3	Within 80 cm

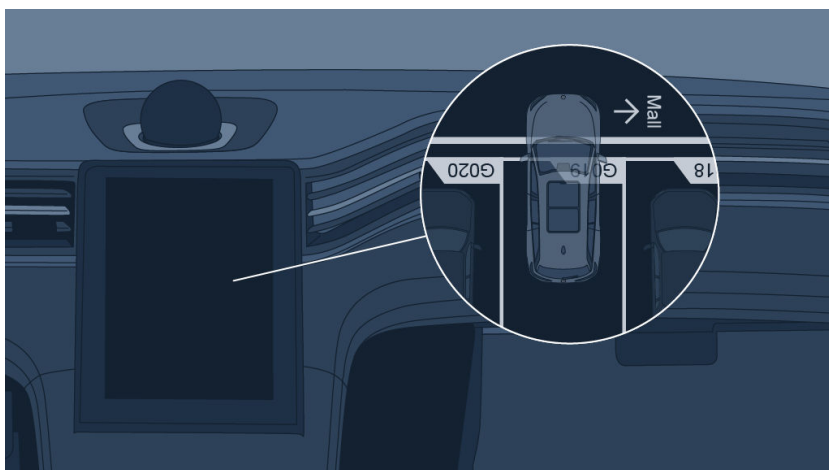
You can tap the upper right of the interface to turn off the audio alert.

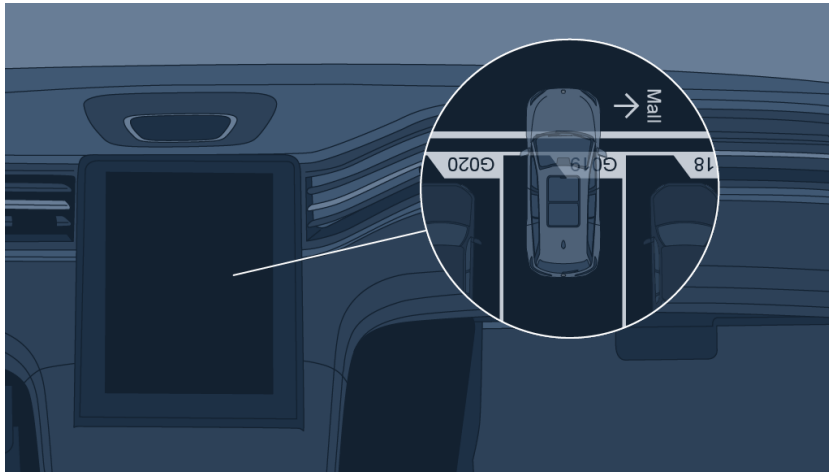
### Automatic Deactivation of the Parking Camera

- The Parking Camera interface will be automatically closed after 4.5 seconds since you have passed the obstacle.
- After the Parking Camera interface is opened, pinch with five fingers to exit the interface. This will disable the Side Distance Indication System for three minutes, after which it will be enabled again.
- If you want to re-enable Side Distance Indication System within 3 minutes, simply increase your speed to above 18 km/h. When the operating conditions are met again, the Parking Camera will be automatically activated.

### ***Surround View Plus***

This feature enables you to easily see the road conditions in the vehicle as if your vehicle chassis turned transparent, by taking the road images in advance with cameras and transmitting them to the center display in the vehicle.





You can enable this feature in the Parking Camera Settings interface.

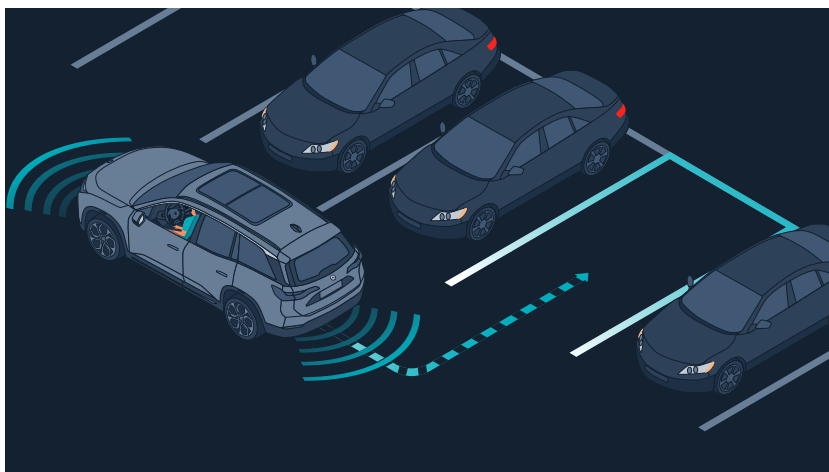
### Caution

The Dynamic Transparent Chassis cannot detect possible environmental changes under the chassis when the vehicle is stationary. Please drive with caution and always pay attention to your surroundings to avoid damage to the vehicle.

### Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist (S-APA) with Fusion

Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist with Fusion (S-APA with Fusion) detects lines on the road or a parking space between two vehicles with surround view cameras and ultrasonic sensors to help you park.

S-APA with Fusion works for parallel and perpendicular parking, but not for angled or 3D parking.



### Caution

If a surround view camera fault or abnormal calibration occurs, Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist can still be used, but the system can only identify

parking spaces between two parked vehicles with ultrasonic sensors and cannot identify parking space line markings.

### **Warning**

Do not use Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist on roads which are sloped or uneven.

### **Warning**

The performance of Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist depends on the capabilities of the surround view camera and ultrasonic sensors to detect and identify the environment.

### **Warning**

You should pay special attention to pedestrians, children, and animals near your vehicle, and other fine, pointed, low or suspended obstacles undetected by the ultrasonic sensors, such as parking locks, low stone blocks, low cylinders, thin rods, pointed objects, corners of walls, and square columns in parking lots, etc.

### **Warning**

As a driving assist feature, Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

You must always pay attention to traffic and road conditions, and make your own decision on whether to use Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist if it is safe.

You should always be ready to take over if you find that the conditions of the traffic, road or the vehicle are not suitable for Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist, or there are other unsafe factors. You always bear the ultimate responsibility for parking safely and complying with current traffic laws and regulations.

### ***Enabling Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion***

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion works as follows:

1. Search for a parking space: Go to the dual-view image interface and enable parking space search. Drive slowly forward at or below 18 km/h and stop the vehicle when the digital instrument cluster shows that a parking space is found. Brake the vehicle and select a safe and appropriate parking space.
2. Park the vehicle: After selecting a safe and appropriate parking space, start parking following the instructions on the screen. You need to continuously pay attention to your surroundings to ensure that the process is safe.

3. Complete parking. The dual-view image interface displays "Parking completed".


The detailed operation procedure is as follows:

1. Search for a parking space.

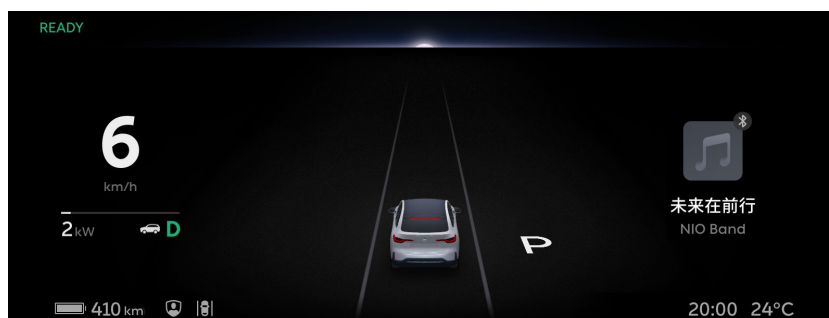
When searching for a parking space, the vehicle should meet the following conditions:

- The speed is below 18 km/h.
- The vehicle is in DRIVE.
- All doors are closed.
- The driver is seated.
- Adaptive Cruise Control/Pilot is disabled.
- The ultrasonic sensors and surround view cameras function normally with a clear view.
- The system is operating properly.
- Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System, and Electronic Stability Program are not triggered.
- Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Program are not disabled.

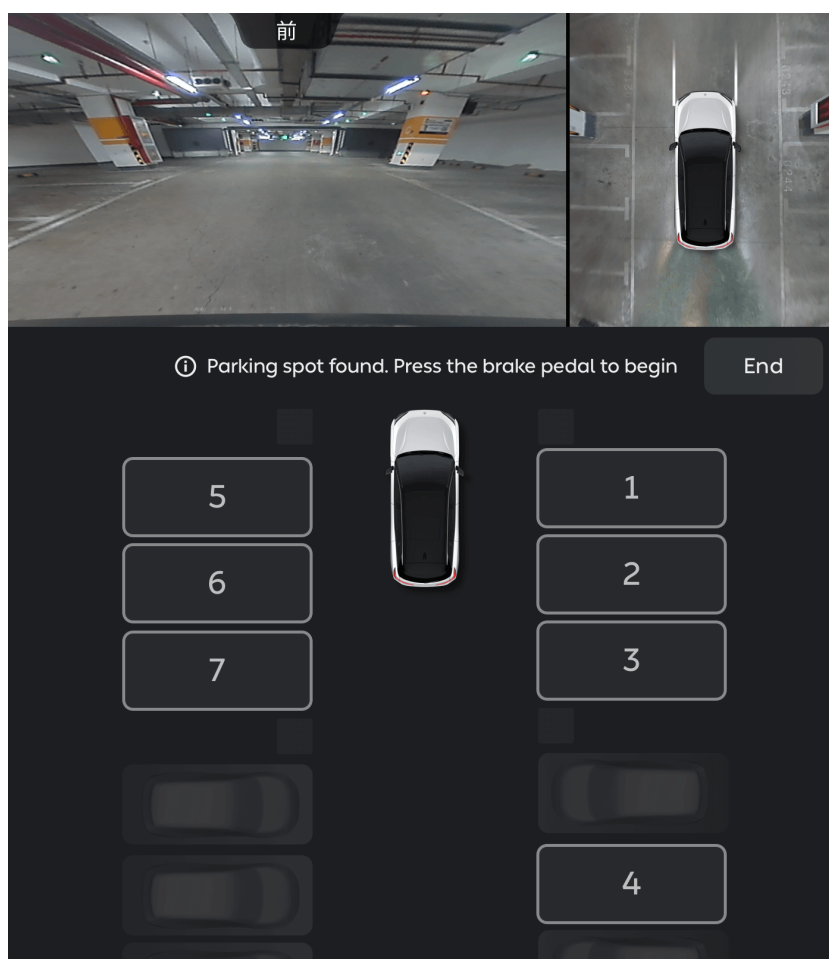
When the above conditions are met, you can enable parking space search in one of the following ways:

- When the parking camera is not on, tell NOMI "I want to park" to go to the dual-view image interface and start parking space search.
- Swipe right on the home page of the center display to open the Quick Access interface. Then, tap **S-APA with Fusion** to enter the dual-view image interface and start parking space search.
- Tap Parking Camera to go to the 360° surround view interface, switch to the dual-view image interface, and tap  in the upper-left corner to start parking space search.

After starting parking space search, maintain a distance of 0.5-1.5 meters between your vehicle and the target parking space and drive forward at or below 18 km/h to search for a parking space.



When a white letter "P" is displayed on the left or right side of the My Vehicle icon during a parking space search, it indicates a parking space on the corresponding side has been found. If the white letter "P" appears on both sides of the icon, it indicates parking spaces have been found on both sides.



In this case, stop the vehicle and confirm that the parking space is safe and appropriate. If there are multiple parking spaces available, you can manually select one on the dual-view image interface.

### Note

After the vehicle starts searching a parking space, if you shift into REVERSE and backup the vehicle, it will continue searching.

**Caution**

When the vehicle's speed is above 18 km/h, the parking space search will be automatically canceled.

**Caution**

When searching for parking spaces, parking may not be successful if the vehicle's direction has significantly deviated from the direction of the road.

**Caution**

Parking spaces on narrow roads or spaces that are too narrow may not be selected due to a lack of space, such as parking spaces with columns, parking spaces with short parking distance, or narrow parking spaces.

**Warning**

You must always check and confirm if the detected parking space is safe and suitable for parking. Do not rely solely on Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist to search for suitable parking spaces. The system may misidentify parking spaces on roads, at entrances, in bushes, etc. You need to determine if the parking space is suitable. Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist cannot determine if the detected parking space is legal. You need to confirm if the space is permitted for parking before starting to park.

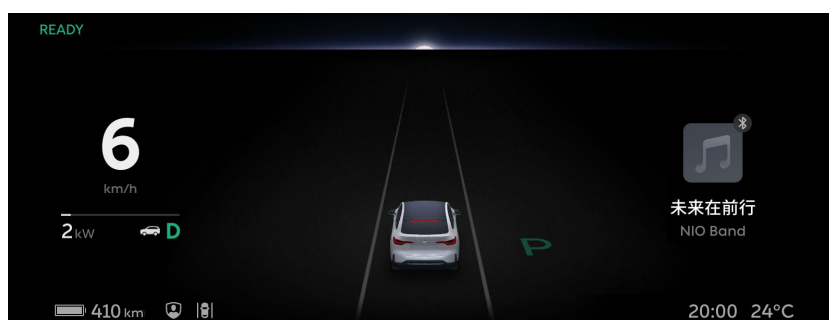
2. Park the vehicle





After a safe and appropriate parking space is selected, fasten your seat belt and release the steering wheel and the brake pedal as instructed to proceed to S-APA with Fusion. During the parking process, the interface displays the current gear and the remaining distance in the current gear for your reference. You need to continuously pay attention to your surroundings to ensure that the process is safe.

After a parking space is selected, tap the parking space again before releasing the brake pedal to deselect the current parking space.



When the vehicle is parked in the selected parking space, the letter "P" on one side of the My Vehicle icon will turn green on the digital instrument cluster. When S-APA with Fusion is activated, the turn signal for the target parking space will be turned on.

### Caution

Please only release the brake pedal when you receive the prompt “Release the brake pedal and the steering wheel” on the center display. Otherwise, Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist will cancel and the vehicle will move backwards.

### Warning

Before releasing the brake pedal, make sure that your hands and arms do not interfere with the steering wheel to avoid any injuries caused by its rapid movement. When parking, always be prepared to apply the brakes to cancel the process or take over.

### Warning

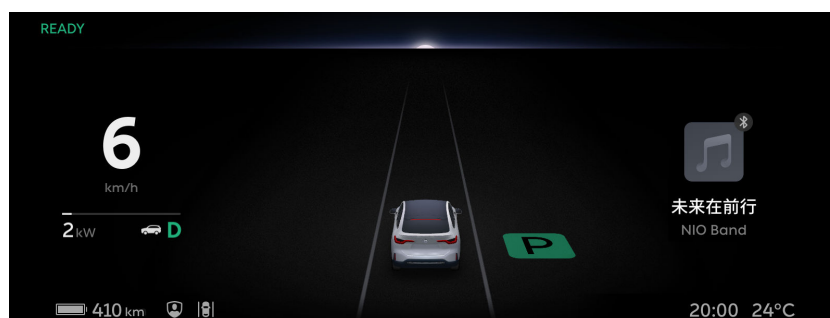
Parking in a narrow parking space may affect the performance of the sensors, which can increase the risk of damaging the vehicle or surrounding objects.

### Warning

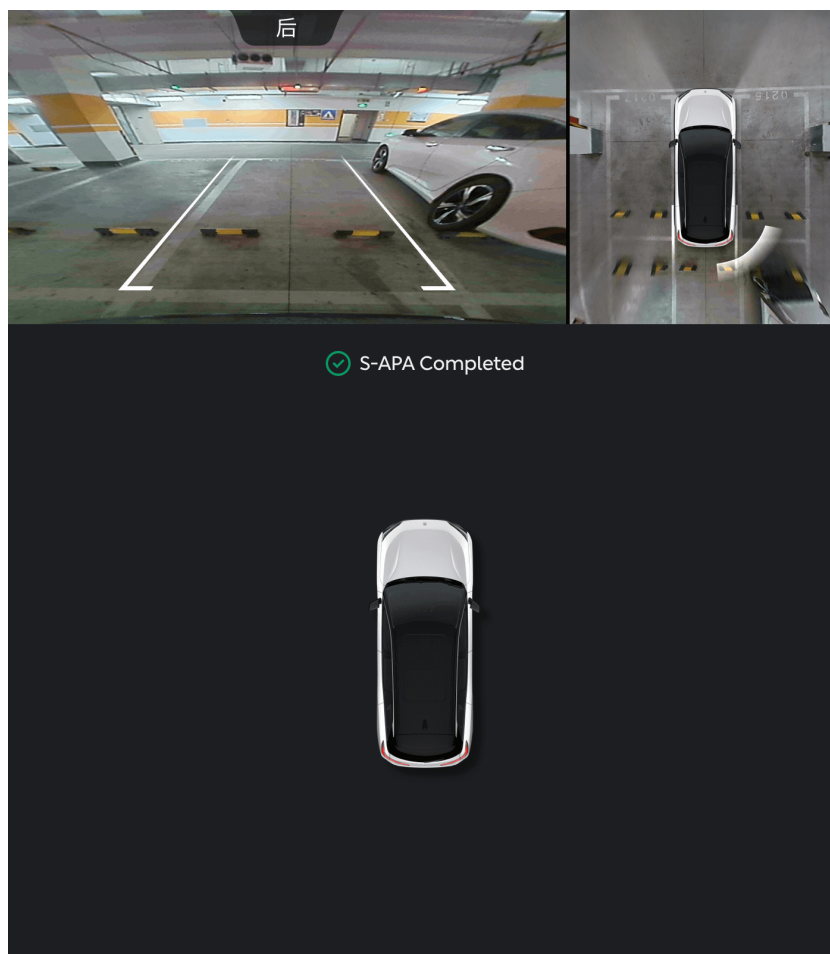
You are responsible for driving safely. Always pay attention to your surroundings when parking, ensure that the parking process is safe, and be prepared to take over at any time. In particular, you should pay special attention to pedestrians, children, or animals near your vehicle, and other fine, pointed, low, or suspended obstacles the ultrasonic sensors may not be able to detect.

The center display only shows available parking spaces that Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist is capable of parking in, which are subject to both the size of the parking space and its surroundings. If you spot any obstacles that suddenly appear around the car while parking, take over immediately as the system may not apply the brakes in time.

### 3. Complete parking



When the dual-view image interface reads "Parking completed", parking is completed and the letter "P" on one side of the icon of your vehicle in the instrument cluster will turn green.



After parking, you may need to make further adjustments to ensure that your vehicle is in the optimal parking position.

Before leaving your vehicle, please ensure that the Electric Parking Brake is on and the gear is shifted into PARK.

### **Caution**

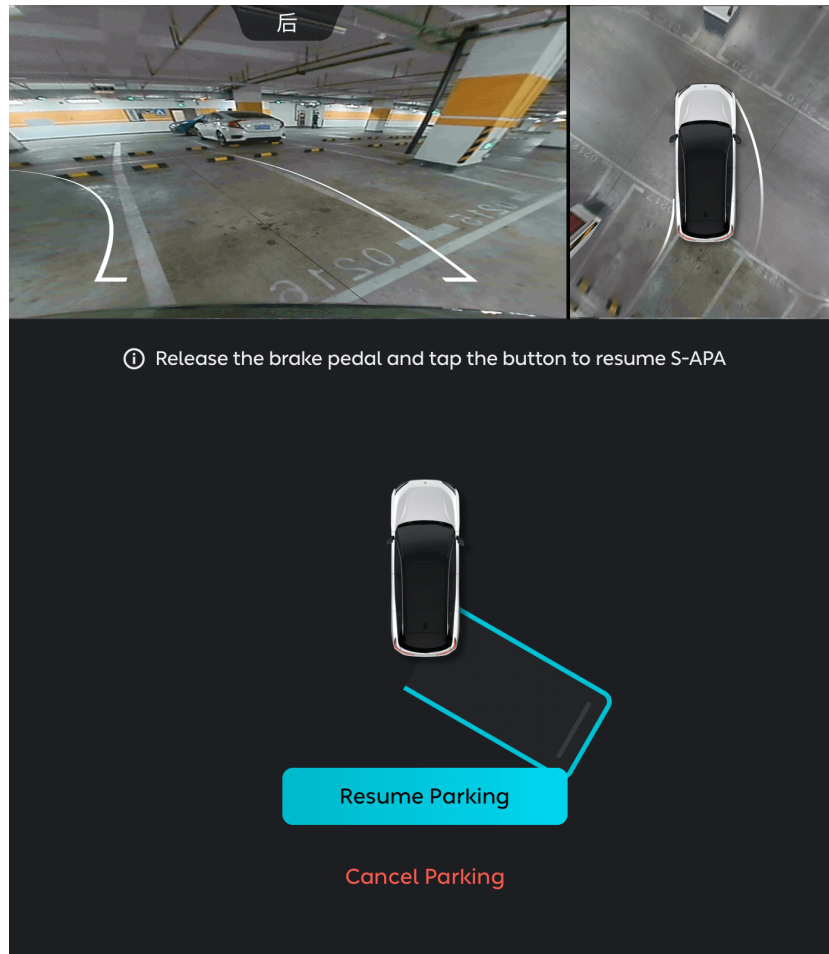
Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist may finish earlier due to the surroundings. In this case, you may need to adjust the vehicle's position manually.

### ***Pause Parking***

You can pause a parking operation by pressing the brake pedal.

When the vehicle is backing vertically into the parking space in the S-APA with Fusion Mode, the system will pause the parking if it detects any safety risks or finds

it unable to ensure the parking result, and will request you to confirm whether to continue with the parking.



To resume the parking, you need to check your surroundings to make sure it is safe to park, release the brake pedal, and tap "Resume parking" on the center display.

### Caution

Parking may be impaired if you pause too many times during the parking process.

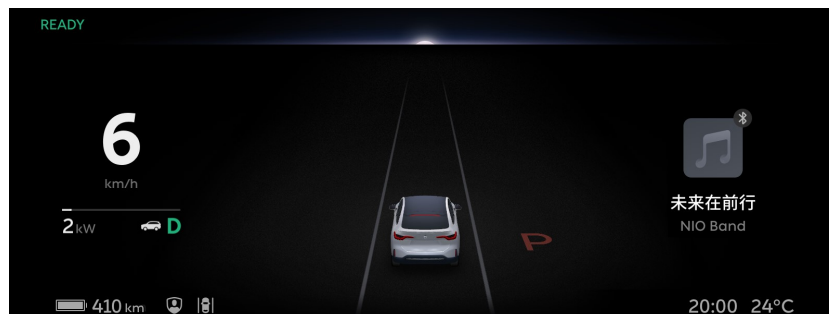
### ***Canceling Shiftless Automatic Parking Assist***

You can manually cancel parking. After canceling S-APA, immediately take over control of speed and steering. S-APA is canceled in the following ways:

- Press the brake pedal and shift gears.
- Tap "Cancel parking" on the dual-view image interface after parking is paused.
- Close the dual-view image interface.
- Swipe the reminder on the screen upward.

In addition, S-APA is canceled in the following situations and you must immediately take over control:

- The vehicle is too close to obstacles.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- The speed is above 9 km/h.
- The hood, tailgate, or any door is open.
- The Electric Parking Brake is on.
- Anti-Lock Braking System, Traction Control System, or Electronic Stability Program is triggered.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt or leaves the seat.
- The parking operation is paused for more than 30 seconds.
- The parking operation is paused too many times.
- Too many back and forth adjustments are made.
- Parking times out.
- The system has a fault.
- The driver interferes with steering wheel movement.



When S-APA with Fusion is canceled unintentionally, the letter "P" on the instrument cluster will be in red.

### ***Precautions and Restrictions***

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may fail to operate as intended in some road conditions, including but not limited to:

- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion on inclined or sloped roads. Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion is only for level roads.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion on uneven roads or steps. S-APA with Fusion is only for flat surfaces.

- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when there is water, mud, potholes, snow, ice, speed bumps, or obstacles on the road.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if the curb is made of special material or cannot be detected. Otherwise, improper parking may lead to damage to the tire rim. In such cases, immediately take over control.

Ultrasonic sensor detection may not fully function for certain obstacles, and you must be prepared to take over control at any time. Failure to do so may result in property loss or personal injury. Such obstacles include but are not limited to:

- Pedestrians, children, and animals
- Thin, pointed, low-hanging obstacles, such as parking locks, low stone blocks, low cylinders, short thin rods, and sharp objects
- Corners of walls or columns in parking lots

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may fail to operate at all or as intended due to the limitations of ultrasonic sensors in some situations, including but not limited to:

- One or more ultrasonic sensors are damaged, mispositioned, or blocked (by mud, ice, or snow).
- Rain, snow, fog, haze, or other weather conditions that affect the performance of ultrasonic sensors.
- The sensors suffer interference from other electronic equipment or devices.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may fail to operate at all or as intended due to the limitations of surround view cameras in some situations, including but not limited to:

- The surround view cameras are mispositioned due to damage to the left or right side mirror or the front or rear end of the vehicle.
- The surround view cameras are stained (by dirt, ice, or snow) or obstructed.
- There is strong sunlight or dappled shade of trees.
- There is poor lighting (darkness), severe reflection on the road surface, or poor visibility (due to rain, snow, or fog).
- The parking space is too narrow or wide, or is tiled.
- The parking space lines are damaged, unclear, covered, or overlapping.
- There is a round or square pillar near the parking space.

- The parking space is on a corner.
- The system may fail to exclude parking spaces with no parking lines, traffic cones, a no parking sign or parking space lock, or private parking spaces.
- The system may fail to exclude parking spaces with obstacles, such as pedestrians, bicycles, tricycles, short objects, or bricks.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may fail to operate as intended in some vehicle conditions, including but not limited to:

- S-APA with Fusion may fail to operate as intended in some road conditions, including but not limited to:
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when a trailer is connected to the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or spare tires.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion if loaded goods protrude from the vehicle.
- Non-original tires or low tire pressure can affect wheel maneuvers. Ensure that your tires are original and the tire pressure is normal before enabling S-APA with Fusion.

Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion may fail to operate as intended in some parking space conditions, including but not limited to:

- When the target parking space is close to roadside fences, high walls, street lights, trees, bushes, pillars, these obstacles may affect the parking result and even cause vehicle damage.
- Parking may be affected when the target parking space is on a curve.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion for angled parking.
- Do not use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion when there is a parking space lock, traffic cone, shopping cart, lamp pole, or other obstacles in the target parking space.

Some conditions may cause poor visibility. Do not use S-APA in conditions including but not limited to:

- One of the two side mirrors is blurred, damaged, or in an abnormal position.
- The surround view cameras are blurred, damaged, or in abnormal positions.
- Visibility is poor due to bad weather (such as rain, snow, fog, or haze).

- Visibility is poor at night or due to insufficient light.

Do not repeatedly use Shiftless Advanced Parking Assist with Fusion in some situations, including but not limited to:

- High-speed driving or multiple parking operations may trigger overheat protection for the steering system. Do not use S-APA repeatedly for an extended period.

### **Side Mirror Auto-Tilt**


When you shift into REVERSE, the side mirrors tilt down for a better viewing angle of the two sides of the vehicle.

Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Auto-Tilt When Reversing** to enable or disable this feature.



## Getting ready to get off

### Powering Off


When you reach your destination and shift into PARK, the parking brake automatically engages. At this time,  is displayed on the digital instrument cluster, indicating that Electric Parking Brake is on.

When you lock the vehicle from the outside, it powers off automatically and turns off the center display and instrument cluster.



You can shift into PARK as follows:

- Press the PARK button to the side of the gear selector on the center console.
- Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Electric Parking Brake** .

When  is displayed on the digital instrument cluster, the braking system is not functioning properly. In this case, please drive with caution and promptly contact NIO.

### Warning

Ensure that the vehicle is in PARK before you get out of the vehicle. Failure to do so may cause injury or damage if the vehicle moves.

### Closing Windows

#### **Quick Window Controls**

You can quickly adjust your windows with the following settings:

- **Close:**Fully close all four windows.

- **Ajar:** Open the left front window and right rear window by 10%.
- **Open:** Fully open all four windows.
- **Memory:** Save the current window positions. Press and hold to reset the memory.

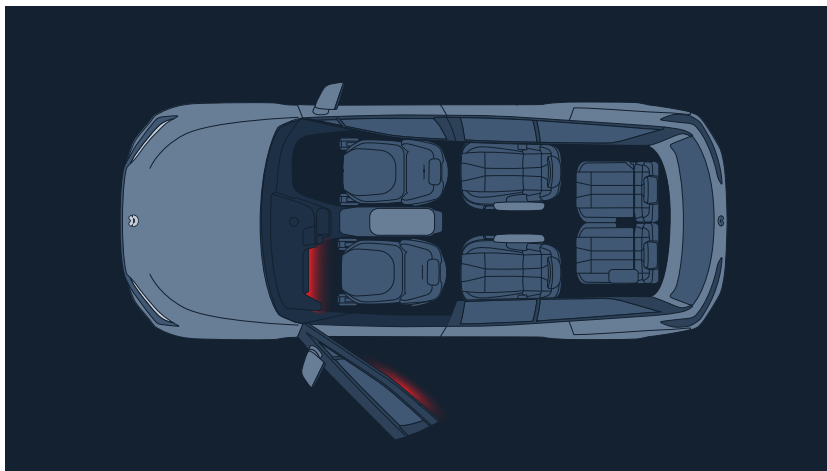
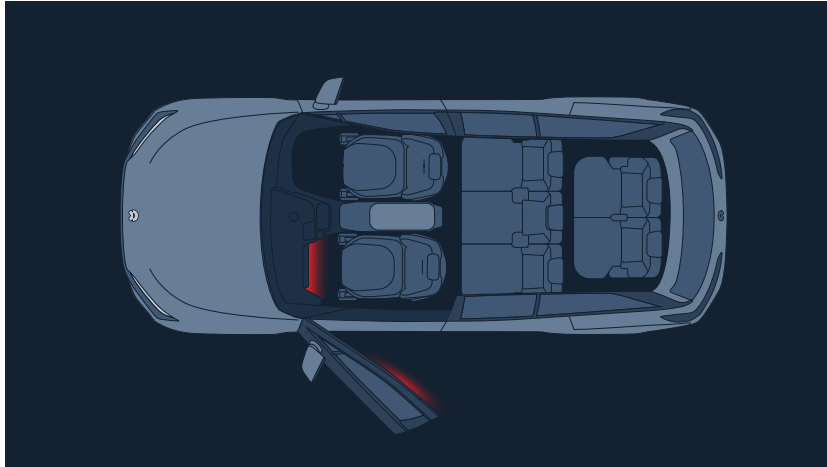
### **Privacy Glass**

The rear windows of your car are made of privacy glass to ensure your privacy. When the rear windows are closed, the backseats are not visible from the outside.

## After getting off

### Side Door Open Warning (SDO)

The Side Door Open Warning prevents you or the passenger from colliding with other vehicles in adjacent lanes when opening the door and exiting.



Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **ADAS > Side Door Open Warning** to enable or disable this feature.

When enabled, the vehicle alerts you by:

- Turning the ambient lighting to red.
- Displaying icons on the side mirrors.
- Emitting audio alerts.
- Displaying “Mind the traffic behind” on the instrument cluster

**Note**

The detection range for this feature is 2.5 meters from the outermost side of the vehicle and 70 meters from the rear. The maximum driving speed that can be detected is 70 km/h.

**Caution**

This feature only activates when the driver is present and a door is open.

**Caution**

The chime may not be heard if the environmental noise is too loud, such as when the audio system is played at high volumes or the surrounding environment is too noisy.

**Warning**

- Radars are mounted on or behind the bumper. Keep the bumper clean and free of mud, ice, metal plates, stickers, labels and leaves. Failure to do so may impact the performance of the radars.
- If this feature does not function properly due to a collision, scratches, radar failure or malfunction, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- If the radar malfunctions for a long period of time and fails to receive any fault-related alerts, please contact NIO as soon as possible.
- This feature only detects and alerts you to vehicles and large motorcycles or objects, and may have a delay or even fail to detect or alert you to objects such as pedestrians, bicycles or skateboards.
- This feature does not alert you to stationary objects. False warnings may be generated by certain metal fences, median strips or concrete walls.
- Heavy rain, snow, fog and other extreme weather conditions may impair radar performance. Please drive with caution.
- Never use this feature in Tow Mode.

## Lock Vehicle

### Locking From the Outside

Before leaving the vehicle, you need to lock the vehicle with the smart key fob.

When all doors are closed, press the lock button on the smart key fob to lock the vehicle. If successful, the turn signals flash once and the horn honks once to indicate that the vehicle is locked. To enable/disable the lock confirmation sound, enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Sounds > Ringer & Alerts > Lock Confirmation Sound**.

### Caution

When the key fob battery is low, use the emergency key to lock the driver's door. All other doors will be locked at the same time.

When the driver's side door is closed and the passenger's side door is opened, you can press the lock button on the smart key fob outside the vehicle to lock the vehicle. When all the doors are closed, the turn signals flash once and the horn honks once to indicate that the vehicle is locked.

### Note

After closing the driver's door and locking the vehicle, if you accidentally leave the smart key fob in the vehicle when closing another door then the anti-lockout feature will activate automatically. In this case, the vehicle will unlock automatically, the turn signals will flash three times, and the horn will honk three times.

When the vehicle is in PARK, enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Locks > Auto Window Close**. In this case, when you lock the vehicle from the outside (using key fob, NFC or mobile app, without a key, or via Walk-Away Lock), all the windows and the sunroof will close automatically with anti-pinch protection engaged. When the windows and the sunroof are closing, if you press the lock button on the key fob or mobile app, the windows and sunroof will stop closing.

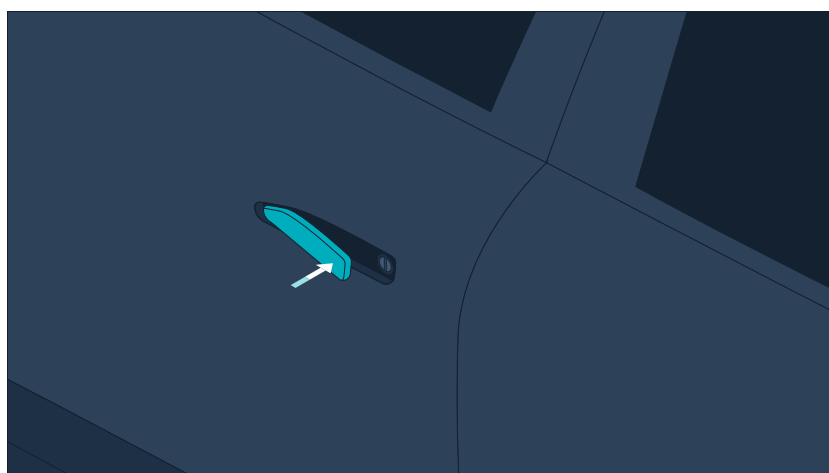
### Note

- When turning on Auto Window Close, please ensure the vehicle is locked.

- For occupants' safety, when a front seat is occupied, if the vehicle is locked, the windows and the sunroof will not close. Please do not leave occupants or pets in the locked vehicle.
- If the vehicle is locked while a window is rising, the window will stop rising. In this case, unlock the vehicle first, then lock the vehicle again, and the windows will close automatically.

## Keyless Locking

When you carry an authenticated smart key fob (in your pocket or bag), you can lock the vehicle by pressing the rear end of any exterior door handle.



### Note

When locking the vehicle without a key, you should put the vehicle in PARK, and ensure all doors, hood and liftgate are closed.

If the key fob is left in the vehicle or a door is open (including the hood or the liftgate), the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the rear end of an exterior door handle. In this case, the horn honks to remind you to take the key fob with you or close the open door.

### Caution

When locking the vehicle without a key, avoid pressing too hard on the exterior door handle.

## Walk-Away Lock

The vehicle automatically locks when you are around 8-10 meters away from the vehicle and carrying an authenticated key fob. When the vehicle is locked by

Walk-Away Lock, the horn honks, the turn signals flash, and the side mirrors fold automatically if Auto-Fold is enabled.

Walk-Away Lock is set to off by default. To turn on/off the Walk-Away Lock, enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Locks > Walk-Away Lock**. Please only use Walk-Away Lock in familiar and safe areas. After Walk-Away Lock is turned on, be sure to carry an authenticated smart key fob with you and check that the vehicle is successfully locked as you walk away.

### **Warning**

- When Walk-Away Lock is turned on, ensure that no child or pet is left in the vehicle so as to avoid any accidents.
- When using Walk-Away Lock, please ensure the vehicle is locked via the lock sound or visual checks (headlights, side mirrors or the NIO app), so as to protect the property inside your vehicle.
- When there is another authenticated smart key fob in the vehicle or any other condition for locking is not met (such as a door, the hood, or the liftgate not being closed or turning Walk-Away Lock off on the center display), Walk-Away Lock will fail.
- Please do not place your smart key fob close to a mobile phone, Bluetooth headset, or other communication devices. Otherwise, the vehicle may be locked by mistake due to signal interference.
- Equipment with a strong magnetic field such as DC chargers or high voltage substations may interfere with the smart key fob's signal, which may lock the vehicle by mistake in certain cases. It is recommended to carry your smart key fob with you to avoid any inconvenience caused by the unintended locking of the vehicle.

### **Locking with the NIO App**

You can remotely unlock the doors when you are still away from the vehicle by tapping Doors in My Car on NIO app.

To lock the doors on the NIO app, ensure that the following conditions are met:

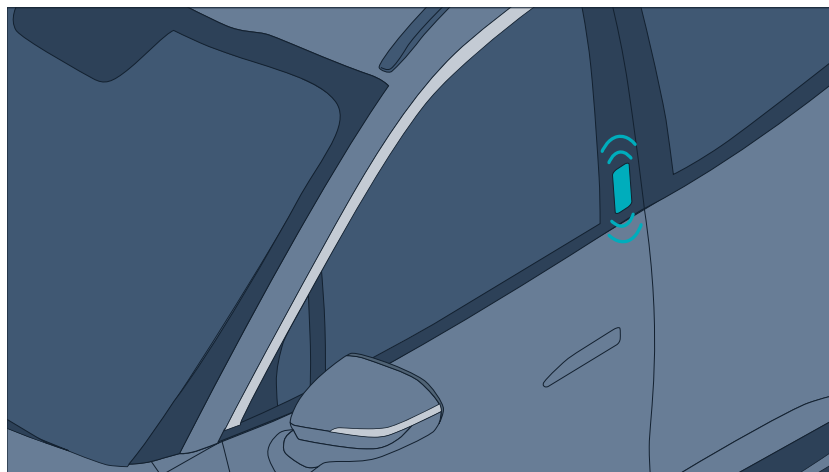
1. The user must be the vehicle's owner or a user authorized by the owner.
2. The vehicle is in PARK and all doors are closed.
3. The vehicle is connected to the Internet.

**Note**

If you are unable to lock the doors using the NIO app, please contact NIO for assistance.

**Locking With NFC**

When the vehicle is in PARK and the doors, hood, and liftgate are closed, you can lock the vehicle using the NFC card or .



Place the NFC card close to the NFC detection zone on the driver's side B pillar and hold it for 10 seconds to lock the vehicle automatically. If successful, the door handles will retract automatically with a locking sound.

**Caution**

- The NFC's detection range is less than 10 millimeters. It is recommended to place your mobile phone or NFC card near the NFC detection area for a short period of time to lock the vehicle.
- After locking the vehicle via NFC, you can still unlock it using other methods (e.g. your smart key fob or emergency key). We recommend carrying your smart key fob with you.
- Please keep your NFC card safe. Protect it from impact, bending, high temperatures, strong vibration and damage from liquids.
- You cannot use the NFC feature during vehicle updates. Please carry the smart key fob with you to lock the vehicle.



## Locking From the Inside

When the vehicle is unlocked and all doors are closed, you can lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central lock. After locking, a Vehicle Locked icon appear on the center display and the button turns green



## Drive-Away Lock

The vehicle automatically locks while driving.

If the vehicle is unlocked and all doors, hood, and liftgate are closed, the vehicle is locked automatically while driving at a speed over 15 km/h.

### Note

Drive Away Locking will only be activated once the vehicle transitions from being stationary to moving.

## Anti-Theft Alarm System

After the vehicle is locked (including the hood and liftgate) from the outside with the smart key fob, NIO app, NFC key or emergency key, the anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically.

When someone tries to open the door without carrying an authenticated smart key fob (or carries one without a valid authorization), the anti-theft alarm will be triggered. At this time, the turn signals flash and the horn honks. You can unlock the vehicle from the outside with the smart key fob, NIO app or NFC key to deactivate the anti-theft alarm.

### Caution

If the key fob's battery is low and you need to unlock the vehicle with the emergency key, please place the key fob level on the front cup holder next to the center console within 15 seconds and ensure the button on the side of the key fob is facing the rear of the vehicle. Next, sit in the driver's seat and close the driver's side door or press the brake pedal. Otherwise, the anti-theft alarm will be activated.



### Emergency Locking

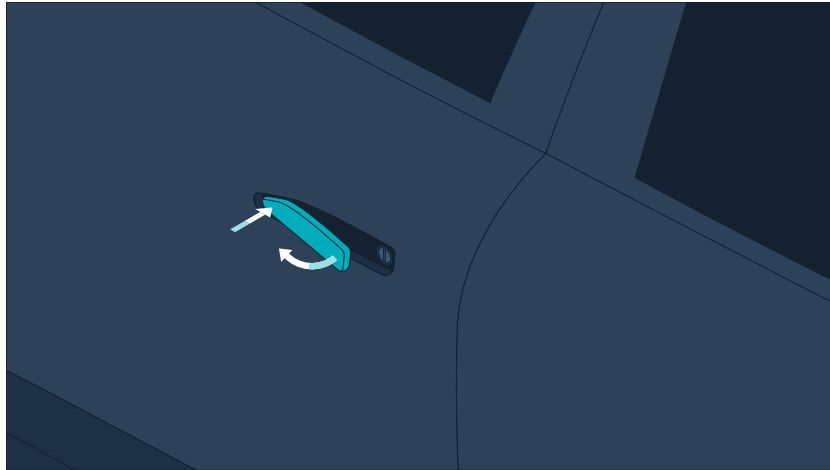
When you are unable to lock the vehicle from the outside with one of the aforementioned methods, you can use the emergency key to lock the driver's door. All other doors will be locked at the same time.

### Caution

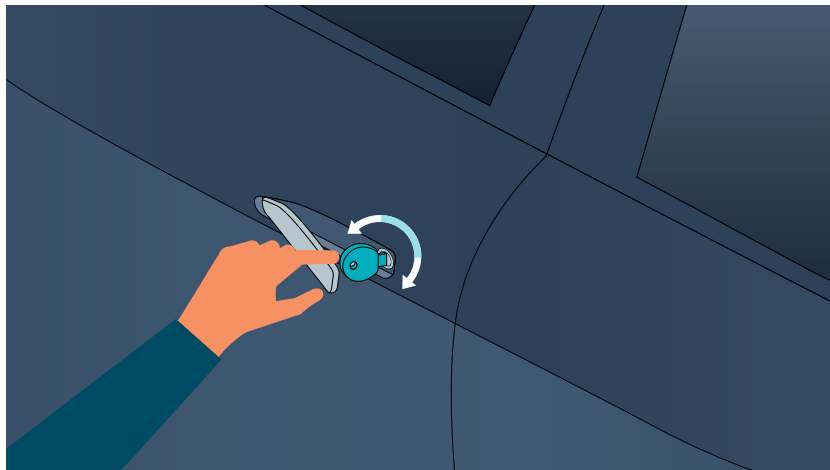
Do not leave the emergency key in your vehicle. Please keep it safe in case of emergency.

To use the emergency key:

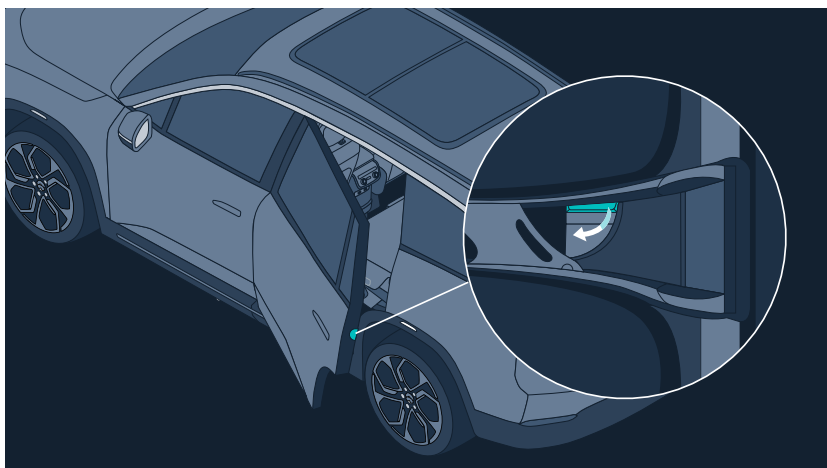
1. Push the front end of the exterior handle on the driver's door.



2. Pull the door handle and insert the emergency key into the lock. Rotate the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



When the 12V battery level is low, only the driver's side door will be locked by the emergency key. If you want to lock the other doors, you can toggle the switch at the keyhole down and close the door to lock it. In this case, the door cannot be opened from outside.



## Side Mirror Folding

### Side Mirror Auto-Fold

When the vehicle is locked from the outside, the side mirrors fold automatically. When the driver is seated on the driver's seat (with the driver's side door closed and the brake pedal pressed), the side mirrors unfold automatically. If the mirrors are folded manually, they will unfold automatically when the driving speed exceeds 40 km/h.

To turn on/off the feature, enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Side Mirrors > Auto-Fold When Vehicle is Locked**.

### Side Mirror Manual Fold and Heating

When driving on narrow roads (at below 40 km/h), you can manually fold or unfold the side mirrors. The side mirrors are equipped with a heating feature to quickly dry rain or snow on them.



1. Folding side mirrors  
Turn the side mirror knob to the folding position to fold the side mirrors, and turn the knob to other positions to unfold them.
2. Controlling side mirror heating  
Turn the knob to the heating position from another position to turn on the side mirror heating. The heating will not be turned on if the knob stays in the heating position.  
The side mirror heating automatically turns off after 30 minutes.

**Auto-Dimming Rear-View Mirror**

When the driver's seat is occupied, the rear-view and side mirrors feature auto-dimming (not available when the vehicle is in PARK or the front reading lights are on) to reduce the glare of headlights from vehicles behind you.

When the driver's seat is occupied, the rear-view features auto-dimming (not available when the vehicle is in PARK or the front reading lights are on) to reduce the glare of headlights from vehicles behind you.

# Charging

## Charging Instructions

You can charge the vehicle before leaving it. In order to maintain the vehicle in good condition, please promptly charge the vehicle when the battery level is low.

### Caution

The vehicle can only be charged in PARK. It cannot be charged in DRIVE or REVERSE, or during software updates.

The charge port is on the right side of the vehicle. The vehicle can be charged in two ways:

1. By standard charging (AC), which takes a longer time to charge the vehicle.
2. By fast charging (DC), which takes a shorter time to charge the vehicle.

### Warning

- To avoid accidents, do not charge the vehicle near any flammable gases or liquids and make sure to charge the vehicle in a ventilated area.
- During charging, stay a safe distance from the charger to avoid any risks due to high voltage. Do not touch the charging connector's metal pins or the charge port. Doing so may result in injury.
- Minors are prohibited from using the charging equipment or approaching it during charging.
- Charging equipment which shows signs of damage, rust, moisture or foreign matter should not be used for charging the vehicle.
- Unauthorized modification or disassembly of the charging connector or equipment is prohibited.
- Please use charging equipment that complies with local standards when charging the vehicle. Otherwise, it may result in a charging failure or cause damage to the vehicle, the charging equipment, or personal injury.
- Do not charge the vehicle in heavy rain or extreme weather conditions. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- Before charging, please check the charging connector and the vehicle's charge port for any deformation, burn marks, or erosion. If any abnormality is found, do not charge the vehicle. Otherwise, it may result in damage to

the vehicle, the charging device, or personal injury. Please contact NIO if necessary.

- Before charging, please check the charging connector and the vehicle's charge port for any dirt or foreign matter. The connector should be kept clean and failure to do so may result in a charging failure or damage to the vehicle's charge port.
- If the charging equipment malfunctions, please contact the charging equipment manufacturer. Do not attempt to fix it yourself.
- After rain, please check if there is water in the charge port before charging the vehicle. Do not charge the vehicle when there is an obvious indicator of water in the charge port. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- Do not use high pressure washers to clean the charge port while charging. Doing so may result in a charging failure or cause damage to either the vehicle or the charging equipment.
- During fast charging, patients who are dependent on cardiac pacemakers should stay away from the vehicle in order to avoid electromagnetic interference between the cardiac pacemaker and the charging equipment. .
- If the vehicle has a peculiar smell or emits smoke while charging, stop charging and contact NIO immediately.
- Do not remove the charging connector before charging is completed. Doing so may cause an electric arc.

### Caution

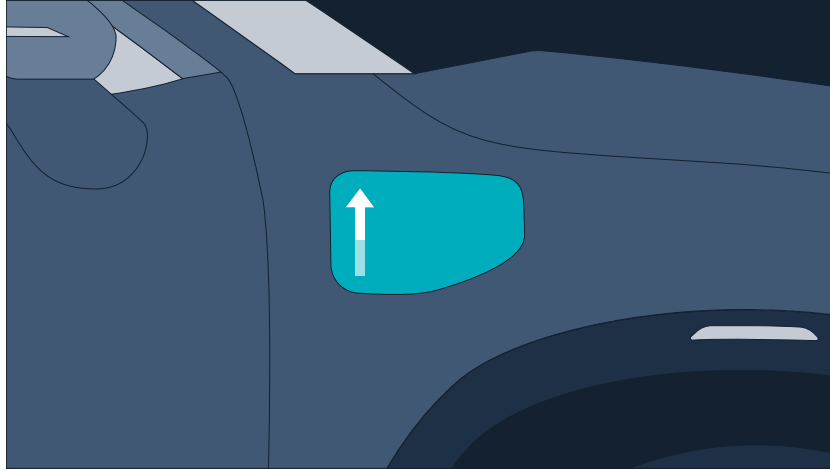
- Do not carry out slow charging and fast charging simultaneously. Doing so may damage the vehicle.
- If the environmental temperature is too high or too low, the charging time will be affected. If the vehicle is kept in a low temperature environment for a long period of time, the battery capacity will be affected.

### Charging

You can charge your vehicle with Power Home, a public charger, or portable charging connector.

## Charging Process

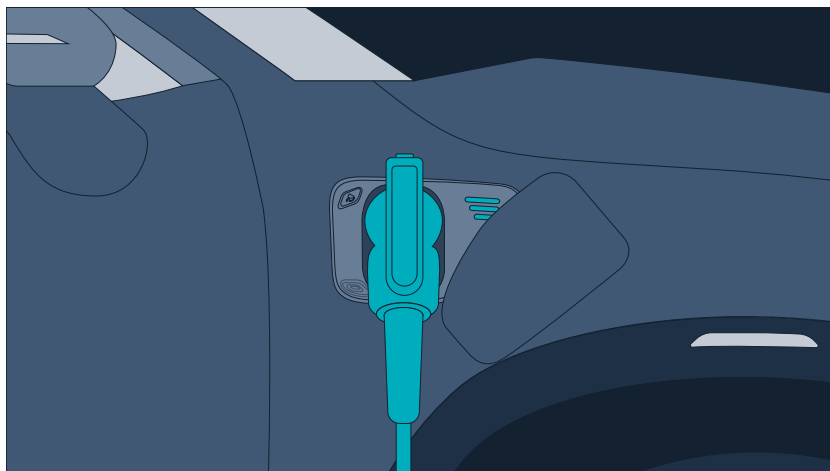
1. Shift into PARK, press the charge port cover, or swipe right on the center display and tap Charge Port to deploy the charge port cover. The charge port indicator is in solid blue.



### Caution

Do not forcefully adjust the charge port cover when it is active or open. Doing so may damage the cover.

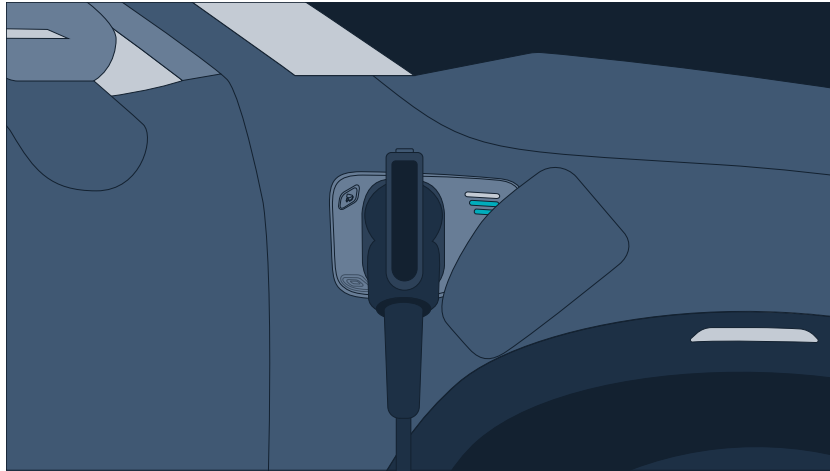
2. Check if the charging equipment and connector are in good condition and plug the charging connector into the charge port on the vehicle. At this time, the charge port and charging connector start pairing. A blue charge port indicator lights up to indicate the charge port is operating correctly. If the charge port and charging connector fail to pair correctly or pairing times out, the indicator will flash blue and then go out. In this case, plug the charging connector again.



3. Power on the charging equipment to start charging. You can check the current charging status by touching My ES8 > Battery on the center display or on the

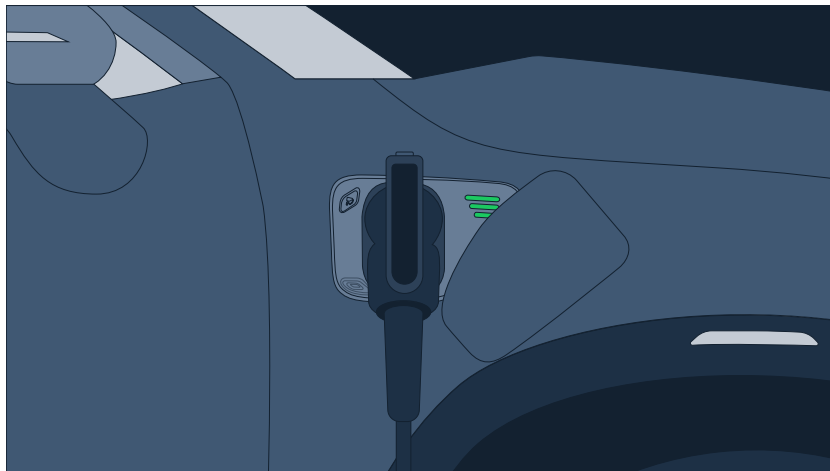


NIO app. The blue charge port indicator will indicate the current charging progress.



4. If you need to stop the charging manually, you need to unlock the vehicle and stop the charging by touching **My ES8 > Battery** on the center display or on the NIO app). Then, remove the charging connector after the charge port indicator turns into solid green.

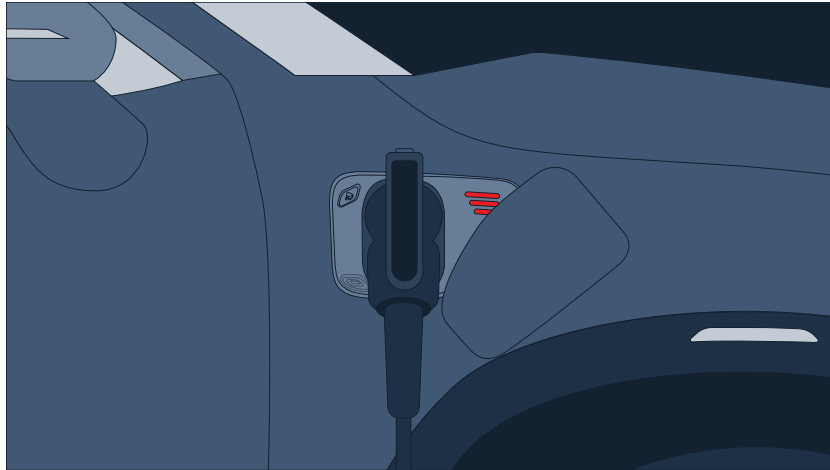
When charging completes, you need to unlock the vehicle using your key fob or from the center display before removing the charging connector.



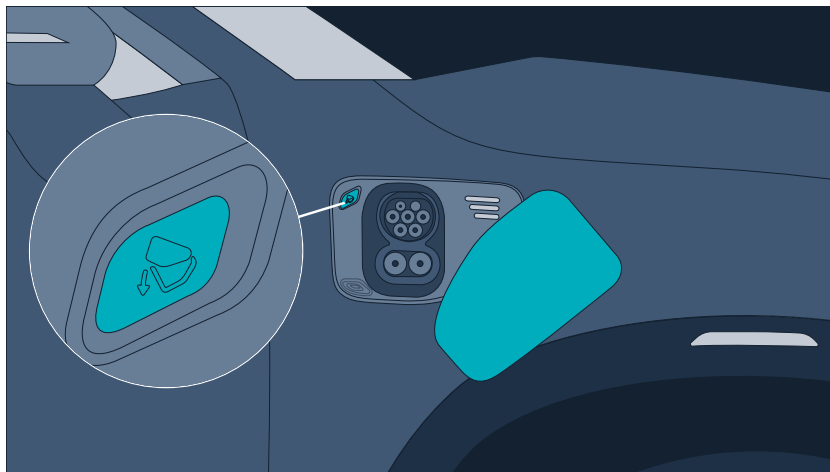
### Caution

During AC charging, whether the vehicle is locked or not, the charging connector cannot be removed from the vehicle. In this case, do not forcibly unplug the connector.

5. If the charge port indicator flash red during the charging process, try another charger. If it continues to flash red, stop charging immediately and contact NIO.



6. After removing the charging connector, return it to its original position and press the close button near the charge port or tap the Charge Port on the center display to close it automatically.



### Note

When charging the vehicle using NIO Power Home, the charge port cover will automatically open when you take off the charging connector from the charger and will automatically close when you remove the connector from the vehicle. If the charge port cover catches the charging connector while closing automatically, press and hold the Close button for five seconds, after which it will open automatically.

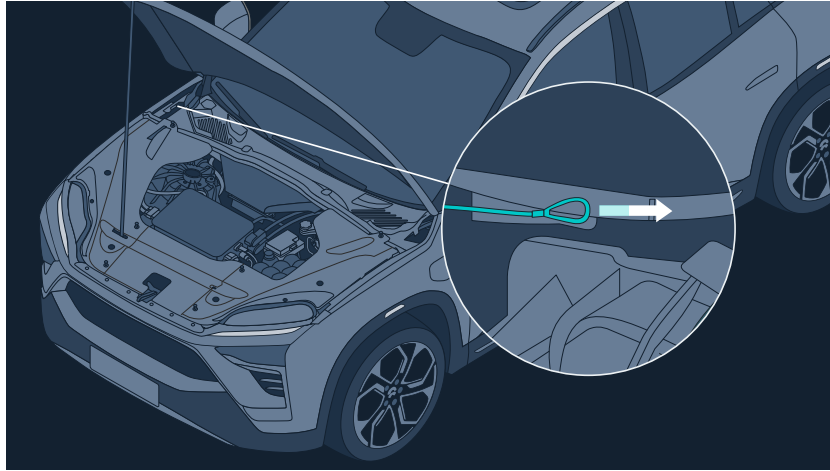
### When Unable to Remove the Connector

If the charging connector cannot be removed after the vehicle is unlocked, please try the following steps:

1. Ensure that the charging connector unlock button is popped up by firmly plugging the connector in, lock and then unlock the vehicle again, press and

hold the charging connector unlock button for one to two seconds, and then unplug the connector after the indicator on the charge port turns solid green.

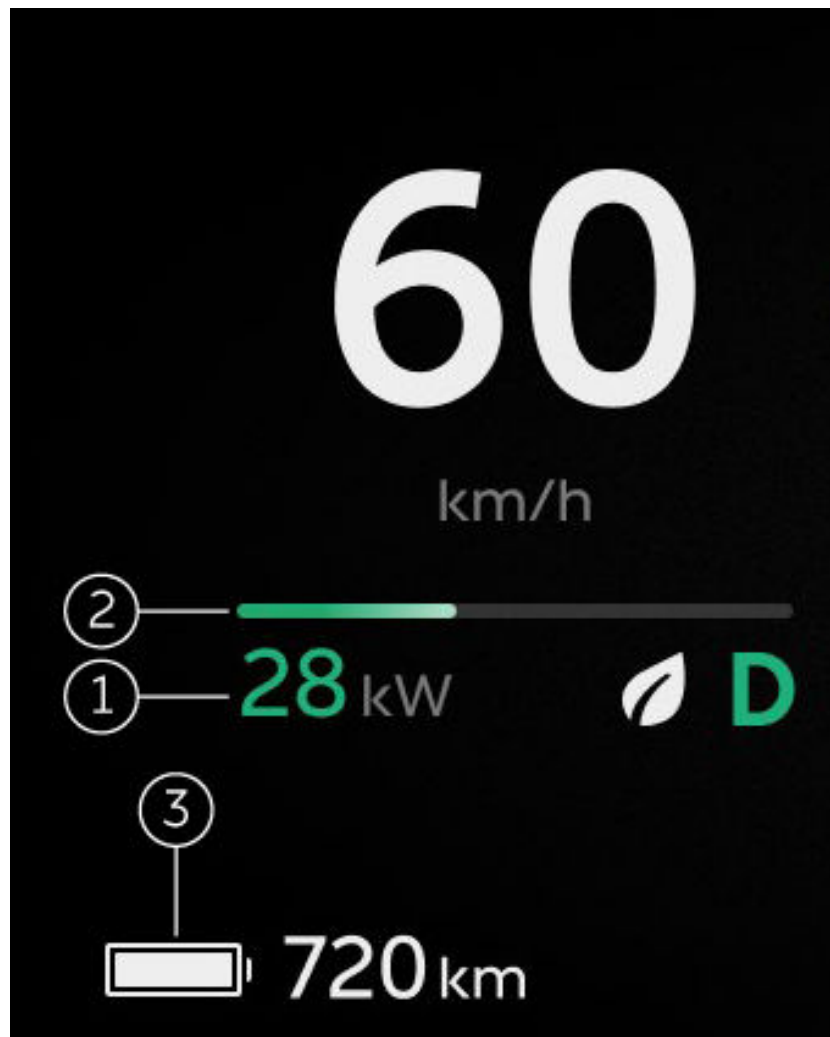
2. Open the hood, pull the emergency unlock cable to unlatch the charge port, and try to remove the charging connector.



3. If the problem persists, please stop charging immediately and contact NIO.

### **Battery Level and Charging Display**








The current state of the high voltage battery and battery-related warning messages are displayed on the digital instrument cluster.



1. Current power  
Indicates the current power of the high voltage battery or power gained through regenerative braking.
2. Energy bars  
The blue energy bar indicates the power of the high voltage battery. The green energy bar indicates the power gained through regenerative braking.
3. Remaining range  
Indicates the estimated driving range available.  
When the remaining driving range is less than 60 kilometers, the icon will turn yellow; when the remaining driving range is less than 10 kilometers, the icon will turn red.

You can press the menu button on the right side of the steering wheel and select "Vehicle Info" to check the current and voltage of the high voltage battery.

The battery-related indicators on the digital instrument cluster are:

Indicator	Description
	<p>Low battery level Indicates that the high voltage battery level is low. Please promptly charge the battery or contact NIO when necessary.</p>
	<p>High voltage battery cutoff Indicates that the vehicle's high voltage power is off. Please contact NIO when necessary.</p>
	<p>12V battery charging fault Please contact NIO immediately when this indicator lights up.</p>
	<p>High voltage battery fault Please stop the vehicle and contact NIO immediately when this indicator lights up.</p>
	<p>High voltage battery overtemperature Please stop the vehicle and contact NIO immediately when this indicator lights up.</p>
	<p>Icy/Snowy road Indicates that the current ambient temperature is too low and may affect high voltage battery performance.</p>
	<p>Charging cable connected Indicates that a charging cable is connected.</p>

## Battery Warmup

The charging speed of high voltage batteries tends to decrease at low temperatures such as in winter. When Battery Warmup is turned on, the battery can be pre-heated before the vehicle arrives at the charging point (charging station ) to improve the charging efficiency.

### ***Low-Temperature Battery Warmup***

Low-Temperature Battery Warmup is turned on by default. To turn it off, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display and select **Battery**. With this feature on, if a charging station is set as the destination or a waypoint for navigation, the vehicle will automatically pre-heat the battery for improved charging efficiency when there is enough power to get to the station. Low-

Temperature Battery Warmup can be used to preheat the battery and will not cause energy waste.

In the Navigation Mode, Low-Temperature Battery Warmup will be automatically activated when the following conditions are met, with the preconditioning status displayed on the top status bar of the center display:

- A charging station or a service area with a charging station is set as the navigation destination or a waypoint.
- The driver is seated.

You can manually turn off this feature by selecting "Turn Off This Time" (on by default next time) or "Turn Off".

The preconditioning process will end automatically when any of the following conditions is met (the feature remains on):

- The charging connector is connected.
- The navigation is turned off or the navigation to the charging station is stopped.
- The power is not enough to cover the remaining 20 km to the destination with preconditioning turned on.

### ***Manual Battery Warmup***

Manual Battery Warmup is turned off by default. It is recommended that you turn it on at low temperatures on the **Battery** page on the center display if you are familiar with the route to the charging point and can get there without navigation. This allows the high voltage battery to be pre-heated for improved charging efficiency.

You can turn on or off this feature on the center display, and preconditioning status will be displayed on the top status bar of the center display.

The preconditioning process will end automatically when any of the following conditions is met (the feature remains off):

- The charging connector is connected.
- The battery has been pre-heated to the set temperature and maintained for 1 hour.

**Caution**

- Enabling battery warmup may consume some power. Please plan your travel properly or turn it off as needed.
- When Low-Temperature Battery Warmup is activated, manual preconditioning will not be available.
- Manual Battery Warmup cannot determine the remaining range with preconditioning turned on. Please make sure that the power is enough for the trip to the destination before turning on this feature.

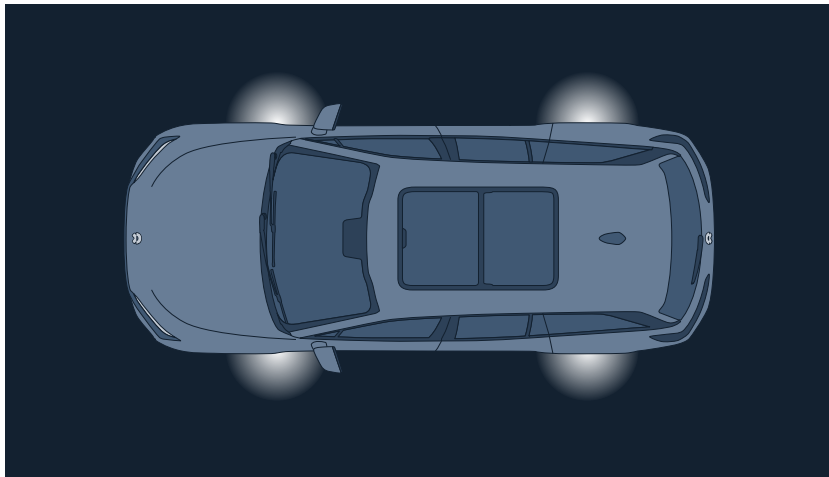
## Leave Vehicle

### Follow Me Home

When you walk away from the vehicle after locking it and preparing for charging, the Follow Me Home will illuminate the road ahead of you.

When you leave your vehicle at night, the low beams and position lights turn on to illuminate the road ahead for you. Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Lights > Courtesy Headlights**, and set how long the lights stay on after locking.

If you have turned on the wheel arch lights by touching **Lights > Wheel Arch Lights**, the wheel arch lights will be turned on automatically when the vehicle is locked to improve the visibility of the surrounding environment.





## Vehicle Maintenance

### Vehicle Health Status

Please check the vehicle status regularly to keep it in the best condition. You can touch **My ES8 > Health** on the center display to check vehicle health status.

On this interface, the vehicle performs a self-inspection and displays the current health status.

### Maintenance Instructions

To ensure that the vehicle can operate normally and bring a good driving and riding experience, you need to conduct regular vehicle maintenance.

In light of the complexity of vehicle systems and the after-sales service requirements of electric vehicles, we recommend you to bring your vehicle to NIO's service center for routine maintenance regularly and required inspection annually. If you have any inquiries about the vehicle inspection, please contact NIO at any time.

If your vehicle is left unused for a long time or has been flooded, we recommend you to bring your vehicle to NIO's service center for a comprehensive inspection and maintenance. If you have any inquiries, please contact NIO.

### Regular Maintenance

Regularly maintaining your vehicle is very important to keep its performance, usage cost and service life in a good condition. We recommend you bring your vehicle to NIO's service center for routine maintenance regularly.

### *Daily Inspection*

Conducting daily vehicle inspections is very important to ensure driving safety and reduce vehicle failures. Before you hit the road, please check the following items. If you identify any problems, contact NIO immediately.

- Check the status of the high-voltage battery on the center display or the NIO app.
- Check all exterior lights, speakers, turn signals, and hazard warning lights.
- Check the windshield wipers and washer system.
- Check the braking system, including the parking brake.
- Check the seat belts.

- Check if there are any warning indicators or information on the instrument cluster.
- Check the tire pressure and tread wear of each tire.
- Check whether there are any abnormal fluids under the vehicle (water condensation from the air conditioning system is normal).
- Check whether there are pollutants on the vehicle that may damage the paint (such as bird droppings, resin, road tar, insects, industrial dust, etc.).
- Check whether all switches can function normally.

### ***Maintenance Plan***

In normal driving conditions, it is recommended that you arrange vehicle maintenance according to the following service intervals to ensure that your vehicle is always in its best condition.

According to the overall market performance of NIO's vehicles, NIO may adjust maintenance plan and service intervals, and update the User Manual accordingly. Always refer to the latest maintenance plan.

- A standard inspection and service carried out by NIO every 12 months or every 20,000 kilometers.
- Replace front wiper blades every 12 months or every 20,000 kilometers, and rear wiper blade (if any) if necessary.
- Inspect coolant levels every 12 months or 20,000 kilometers, and refill coolant if necessary.
- Inspect brake discs every 12 months or 20,000 kilometers, and replace the disc if necessary.
- Inspect brake pads every 12 months or 20,000 kilometers, and replace the pad if necessary.
- Replace air filter every 12 months or 20,000 kilometers.
- Replace gearbox oil every 200,000 kilometers.
- Inspect brake fluid level every 12 months, and replace brake fluid every 36 months.
- Inspect 12V battery every 12 months, and replace it every 24 months.

If you often drive your vehicle in the following harsh environments, additional maintenance or shorter service intervals may be required. For details, please contact NIO.

- Driving in dusty environments.
- Driving in extremely cold environments (below -20°C) or extremely hot environments (above 40°C).
- Driving in humid environments or wading through water frequently.
- Driving in salty or corrosive environments.
- Braking frequently or driving in mountainous areas.
- Frequently driving for special heavy-duty purposes.
- Unauthorized installation or modification.

### **Event Data Recording System**

Many electronic components in the vehicle retain data to temporarily or permanently store technical information about the vehicle status, events, and faults. This technical information usually includes the status of the following components, modules, systems, and environments:

- Status of the vehicle and its individual components, such as wheel revolutions/speed, deceleration, and lateral acceleration.
- Functional status of important system components, such as seatbelt buckles.
- Vehicle responses under special driving conditions, such as airbag deployment or stability control system intervention.
- Data for a period of time before and after a collision (which triggers airbag), such as braking, acceleration, and steering.

This data is only a natural attribute for identifying and fixing faults and optimizing vehicle features. It cannot be used to reproduce movements on the road. When performing service-related tasks, such as repair, servicing, warranty inspection, and quality assurance, service personnel and manufacturers can read this technical data from the memory of events and fault data with special diagnostic devices. After troubleshooting, the system deletes or continues to overwrite the information in the memory storage.

When using the vehicle, these technical parameters and other information related to the vehicle, such as accident records, vehicle damage, and evidence (which may require the intervention of a specialist), can be read through the diagnostic devices at NIO.

**Note**

NIO will not disclose any information recorded in the system to a third party without your permission or consent.

**System Update**

Your vehicle comes with a remote update system. When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, you can enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **General > System Update** to update the vehicle system software and keep your vehicle's systems up to date. You will be notified when a software update is available. You can choose to start the update immediately or . During the update, the center display shows the time needed to complete the process (which depends on the size of the update package).

**Caution**

- System updates are only available when the vehicle is logged in with the owner's account.
- A system update can only be started when the vehicle is in PARK (the gear selector is shifted to P) and connected to the Internet.
- System updates will consume a certain amount of power. Before starting an update, please ensure that the vehicle's battery level is above 20% and plan your travel arrangements accordingly.
- If you start a system update while charging, the vehicle will stop charging automatically. After the system update is complete, you can manually resume charging.
- During a system update, all of the vehicle's features except for locking/unlocking with the smart key fob will not be available. You cannot drive the vehicle during a system update.
- System updates may provide new features, changes to existing features, or changes to the way in which some features operate. Please read the release notes carefully after any update to learn more about new or updated features. If you are unfamiliar with any function in a system update, please use the function with caution to avoid injury or property damage due to misuse.
- If the system update is unable to start or is not successful, contact NIO immediately.

- Do not modify vehicle components or change the software of the vehicle without authorization. Failure to comply may result in injury or property damage.

## Reset All Settings

When you need to sell the vehicle, you can erase all content and settings by entering Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **General > Reset All Settings**.

The following data and settings will be erased, including vehicle settings (such as settings for seats, side mirrors, air conditioning, etc.), driving settings (such as driver assist, driving mode, etc.), NOMI settings, system settings (such as time, date, etc.), Navigation settings, media playlists, photos and videos, etc.

## Caution

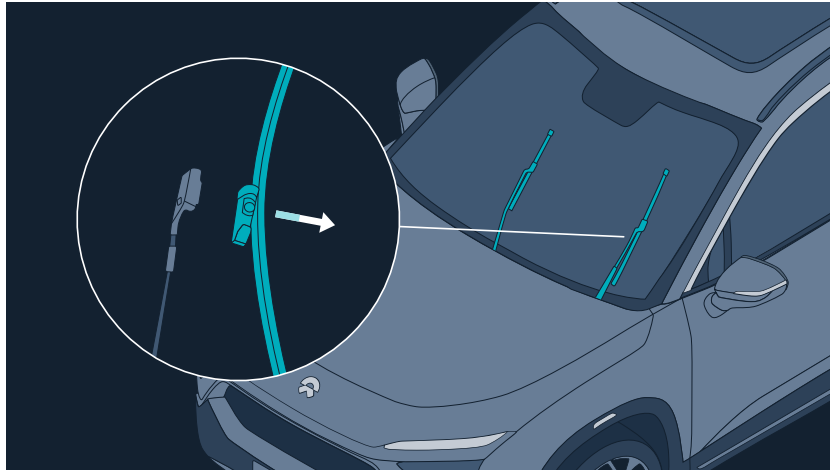
- Only the vehicle owner can reset all settings. The operation can only be performed when the vehicle is stopped.
- When resetting all settings, the instrument cluster and the center display will go black and blink. Do not drive the vehicle when resetting the system. Otherwise it may cause unpredictable consequences.
- After resetting, the vehicle will be restored to the inactivated state. You need to reactivate the vehicle to use it.
- Resetting will erase all your settings, application data and all content, including photos and videos, stored in the vehicle. It is recommended to back up your important files before resetting. You can enter the **Album on the center display** , select files you need and choose **Export to USB**.
- Resetting will not erase your personal data stored in the cloud, such as driving habits, frequent navigation addresses, and music playlists.

## Wiper Blade Replacement

### Replacing Front Wiper Blades

The front wipers can clean raindrops and stains on the windshield (when used together with windshield washer fluid). The procedure to replace the front wiper blades is as follows:

1. Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Front Wiper Service Mode** to move the front wipers to the replacement position.
2. When the front wipers move to the replacement position, they can be lifted up. Press and hold the lock button on the front wiper blade and slide the blade down perpendicular to the wiper arm to remove the wiper blade.

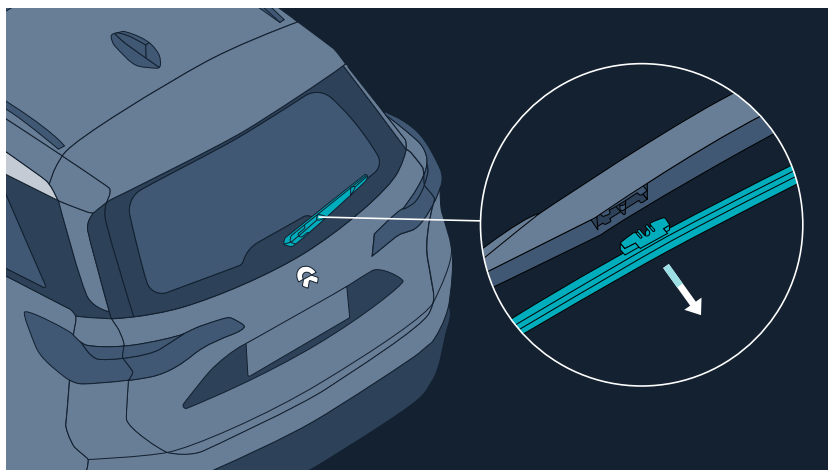


3. Insert the new wiper blade until you hear a click sound to confirm that the front wiper blade is securely installed.

### Replacing Rear Wiper Blade

The rear wiper cleans raindrops on the rear windshield. The procedure to replace the rear wiper blade is as follows:

1. Lift the rear wiper arm and remove the rear wiper blade.



2. Install a new wiper blade and pull the wiper blade to confirm that it is securely installed.

## Add Fluid

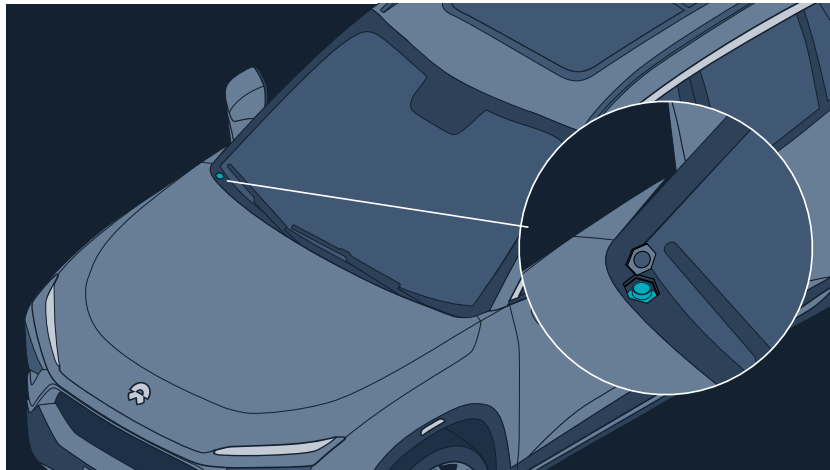
### Refilling Windshield Washer Fluid

Windshield washer fluid is used to maintain good visibility through the windshield. The procedure to refill the windshield washer fluid is as follows:

1. Open the washer fluid container cover and cap, and add an appropriate amount of washer fluid (we recommend you stop refilling when the fluid level is about to reach the inlet).

#### Caution

When topping up the windshield washer fluid, please fill the reservoir carefully to avoid spilling and wipe up any spills immediately.



2. After refilling the fluid, close the cap and cover securely.

### Refilling Coolant

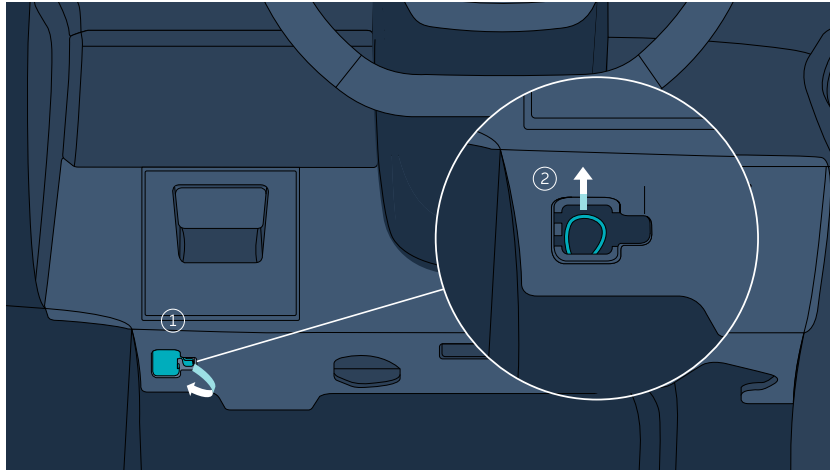
#### Warning

To avoid the risk of high voltage electric shock when opening the hood, please contact NIO to top up the vehicle's coolant.

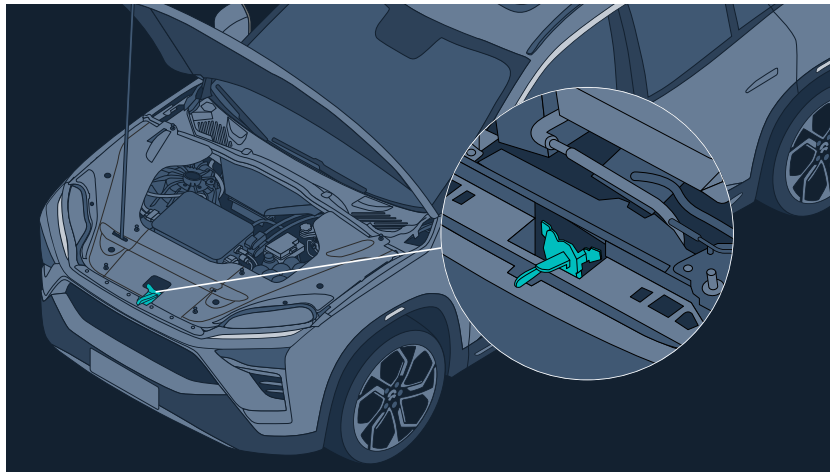
The coolant maintains the operation of the vehicle power system within an appropriate temperature range. The procedure to refill coolant is as follows:

1. Open the hood handle cover in the cabin (Figure 1) and pull the release cable to unlatch the hood (Figure 2).

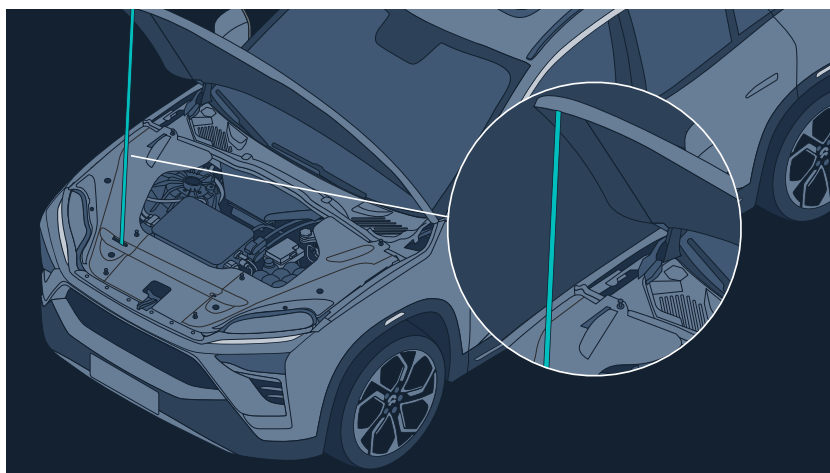




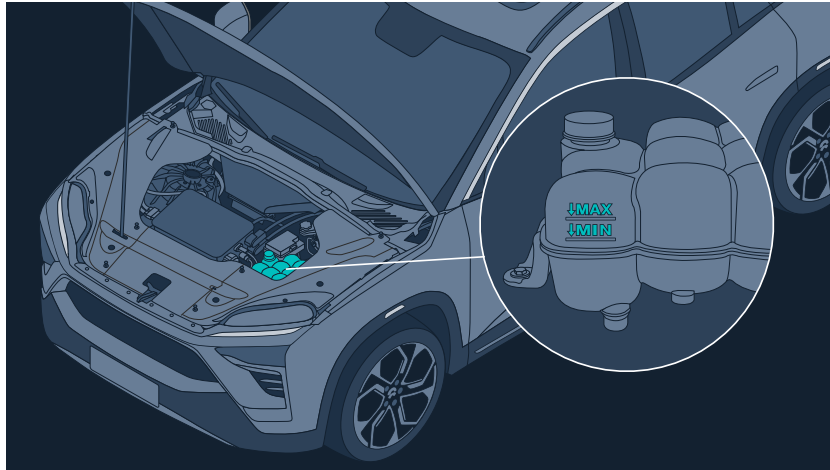
2. Toggle the hook under the hood to release it and lift the hood up.



3. Take out the hood prop rod from the clip and position it appropriately to support the hood.



4. Open the coolant cap and add an appropriate amount of coolant (above the MIN and below the MAX indicators).



5. Close the coolant cap tightly. When closing the hood, hold the hood with your hands and lower it to an appropriate angle. Then, push the hood down firmly until it is completely closed.

### Caution

Do not slam or drop the hood.

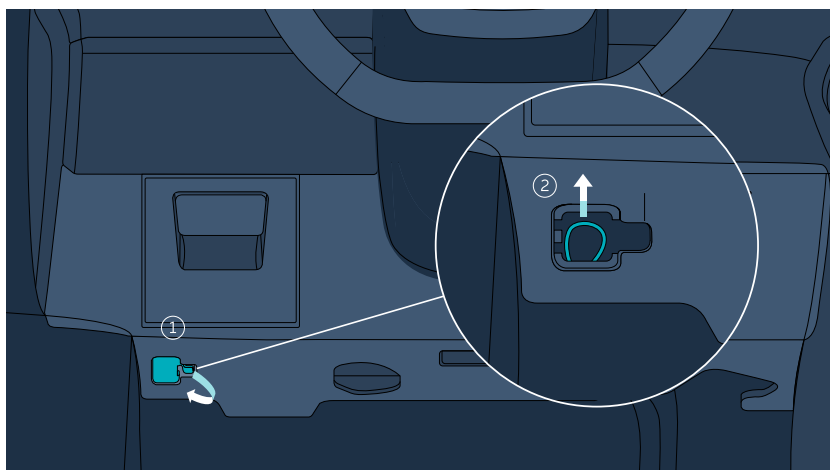
### Refilling Brake Fluid

### Warning

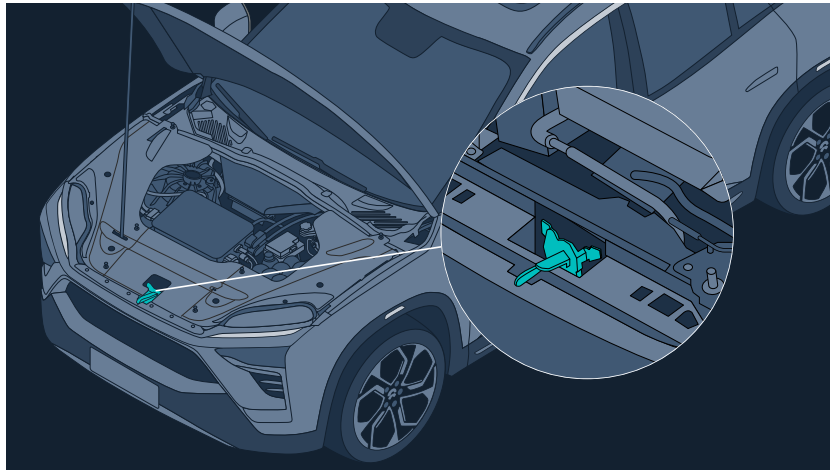
To avoid the risk of high voltage electric shock when opening the hood, please contact NIO to top up the vehicle's brake fluid.

Brake fluid is the medium for transmitting brake pressure in the hydraulic brake system. The procedure to refill brake fluid is as follows:

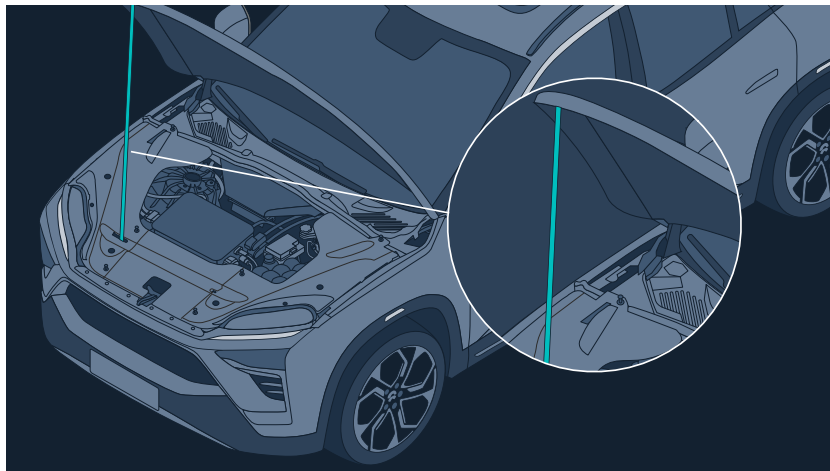
1. Open the hood handle cover in the passenger compartment (Figure 1) and pull the hood release cable to release the hood (Figure 2).



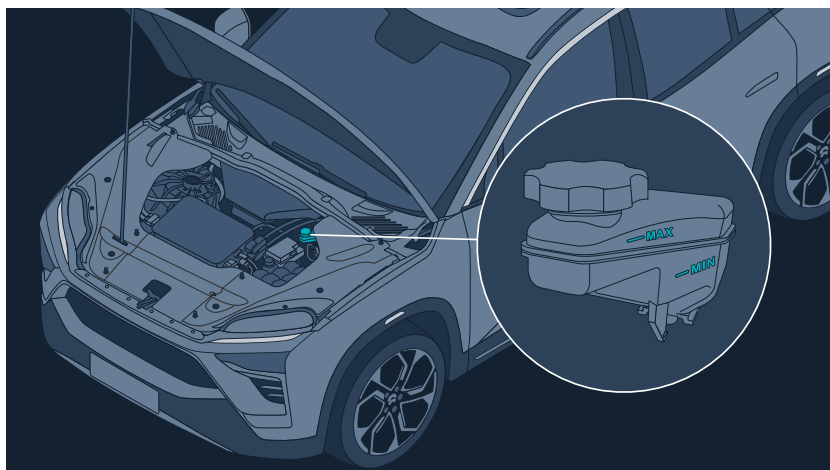
2. Toggle the hook under the hood to release it and lift the hood up.



3. Take out the hood prop rod from the clip and position it appropriately to support the hood.



4. Open the brake fluid cap and add an appropriate amount of brake fluid (above the MIN and below the MAX indicators).



5. Close the brake fluid cap tightly. When closing the hood, hold the hood with your hands and lower it to an appropriate angle. Then, push the hood down firmly until it is completely closed.

**Caution**

Do not slam or drop the hood.

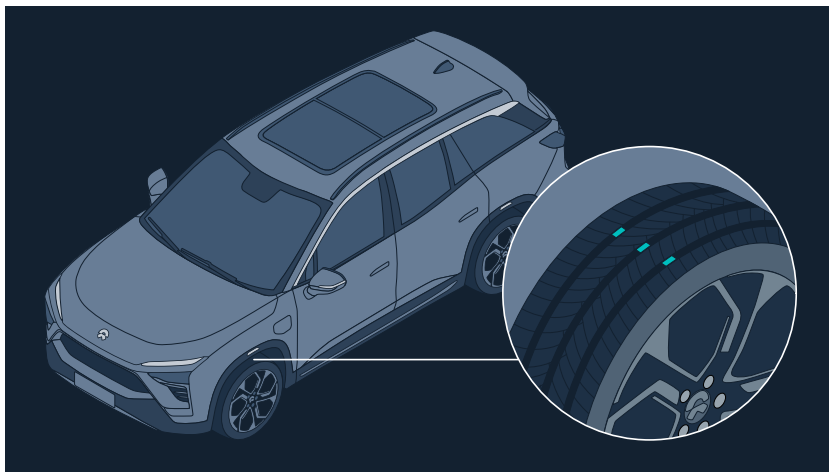
## Tire Maintenance

### Tire Inspection and Maintenance

For your driving safety, please inspect the tires regularly:

- Frequently inspect the tires for any signs of punctures, cuts, tears and bulges, and remove any foreign objects in the treads.
- If the tire valve cap is missing, replace the missing cap as soon as possible.
- Keep the tires away from engine oil, grease, or fuel oil.

Tires have wear indicators molded into the tread pattern. When the tread has been worn down to 1.6 millimeters or less, the indicators will appear at the surface of the tread pattern, which indicates that tire traction is significantly reduced. In this case, replace the tire immediately. Failure to do so may increase the risk of accidents.



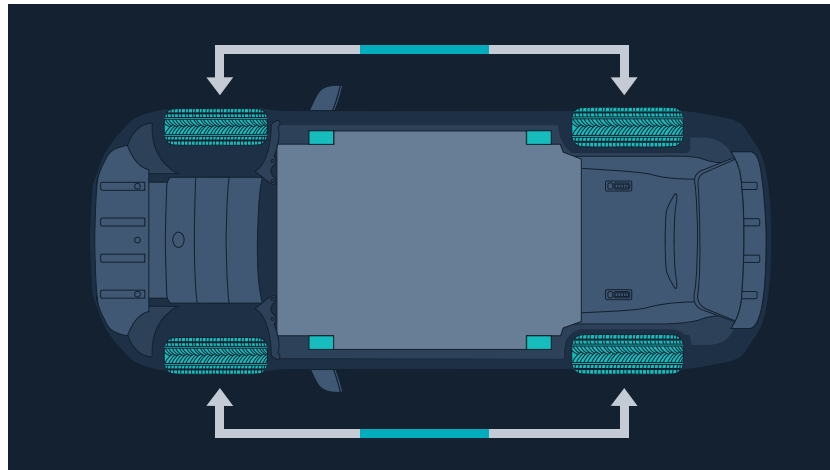
### Caution

If tire wear is uneven, we recommend that you contact NIO to have the tires checked for dynamic balancing.

In order to reduce tire wear and extend the service life of your tires, you should regularly inspect and maintain your tires according to your driving habits and road conditions:

- Every tire requires a break-in period during the first 500 kilometers. You can break them in prudently at a proper speed to extend the service life of the tires.
- When driving over a curb or a similar obstacle, you should slow down and try to drive over the curb in a direction perpendicular to it.

- Sharp cornering, excessive acceleration, and abrupt braking can increase tire wear.
- You should have the tire dynamic balance checked after every tire replacement.
- If the vehicle can't drive straight or drifts left or right, please contact NIO to have the wheel alignment checked and adjusted if necessary.
- We recommend that the tires be aligned every 10,000 kilometers in pairs.



**Winter Tires**

To achieve the optimal vehicle performance, please use the recommended winter tires in winter.

Brand	Dimension	speed symbol & load index	Pattern
Nokian	255/55R19	111R XL	Hakkapeliitta R2 SUV
	255/50R20	109R XL	Hakkapeliitta R2 SUV
	265/45R21	108R XL	Hakkapeliitta R2 SUV
	255/55R19	111R XL	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV
	255/50R20	109R XL	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV

	265/45R21	108R XL	Hakkapeliitta R3 SUV
Pirelli	255/55R19	111H	S-WNT(AO)
	255/50R20	109H XL	WNT(AO)

## Brake Pad and Disc Maintenance

### Brake Pad and Disc Inspection and Maintenance

Lightly press the brake pedal occasionally when driving on rainy or icy roads so that the heat generated by friction warms up and dries the brake pads. The same should be done when driving in extremely wet or cold weather.

Take your vehicle for a quick ride after a car wash to dry the brake discs and avoid rusting.

The wear of brake pads and discs is largely determined by your driving habits and road conditions. The driving distance may not be used to decide the degree of wear.

The high-performance braking system is used to realize the best comprehensive braking performance at various vehicle speeds and temperatures. Therefore, under certain vehicle speeds, braking force and environments (such as temperature and humidity), the braking system may make a squeaky sound.

If the instrument cluster reminds you to replace the brake pads, please contact NIO for a replacement as soon as possible.



## Air Filter Maintenance

### **Air Filter Inspection and Maintenance**

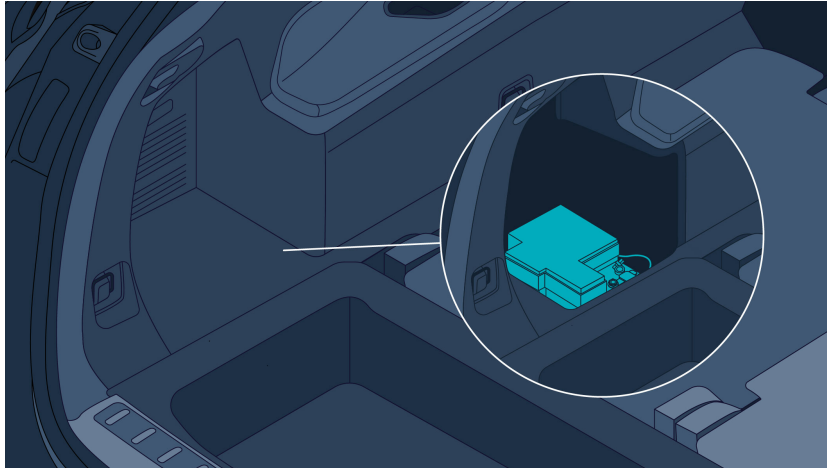
Maintain and replace the air filter according to the specified service intervals to keep the air in the cabin fresh. After replacement, enter Settings from the bottom left of the center display, and touch **Cabin Comfort > Air Filter Reminder** to reset the reminder.

Keep the grille clear of any obstructions (e.g. leaves, snow) before driving.

## Battery Maintenance

### 12V Battery Maintenance

The 12V battery is mainly used to power the starting and electrical equipment of the vehicle. It can be accessed by opening the panel on the left side of the trunk. To extend the service life of the battery, please keep a sufficient battery level.



### Warning

12V battery fluid is corrosive. If the fluid gets into the eyes or on the skin, rinse the eyes or skin with running water and seek medical attention immediately.

### Caution

- If the 12V battery is severely drained (e.g. having been left unused for a long time), please contact NIO for assistance and do not replace it yourself.
- Before leaving the vehicle, please ensure that all electric systems, such as lights and the media center, are turned off.

### Note

After disconnecting and reconnecting the 12V battery, the automatic windows, window anti-pinch and sunroof anti-pinch features will not be available.

### High Voltage Battery Maintenance and Recycling

#### ***High Voltage Battery Maintenance***

The high voltage battery is an important component for driving the vehicle. Please pay attention to the following when using it:

- If the vehicle is parked in an environment with a temperature that is too high or too low, the service life of the high voltage battery will be directly affected.

Do not park the vehicle in such an environment for a long time (more than eight hours).

- Do not park the vehicle in a environment with a high temperature and heat sources to avoid accidental fire.
- The vehicle should be parked in a dry environment. Avoid parking the vehicle in a humid environment.
- Avoid using high-power DC charging too frequently. High-power DC charging may affect the service life of the high voltage battery.
- If the vehicle will not be used for a long time, make sure the high voltage battery level is over 50% (according to the digital instrument cluster reading) and park the vehicle in a cool place to maintain the service life of the high voltage battery. We recommend you check the battery level every week and use the vehicle at least once a month.
- Please use charging equipment that meets the charging specifications and follow the instructions on the charger.
- When driving over bumps, gravel, or bumpy roads, please drive at a lower speed or avoid obstacles to avoid damage to the vehicle chassis or high voltage battery. If you hear any sound of scraping or impact at the underside of the body, please immediately contact NIO for a safety inspection of the chassis and high voltage battery pack.

### **Warning**

- The high voltage battery operates at a high voltage. Do not touch, move, or disassemble the high voltage battery or its circuit without authorization. Doing so may result in injury.
- Please be sure to charge the vehicle within 24 hours when the remaining driving range is at zero. During this time, the charging speed will be limited until the battery level reaches 50%. Failure to charge the vehicle within 72 hours may cause irreversible damage to the high voltage battery.

### ***High Voltage Battery Recycling***

Waste high voltage batteries should be properly recycled. In the process of vehicle maintenance and repair, high voltage batteries that meet the following conditions must be recycled:

1. In the process of high voltage battery repair and maintenance at NIO, the battery level and status will be checked. For batteries that should be recycled

according to relevant laws and regulations, NIO will take primary responsibility for recycling them in accordance with the market situation at such time.

2. Batteries that are in good condition but cannot continue to be used due to other reasons can be recycled for cascading use after basic repairs.
3. Batteries that are not eligible for cascading use due to serious faults or damage will be put into the recycling process.

### **Caution**

Do not casually dispose of the high voltage battery, as it can cause severe environmental damage.

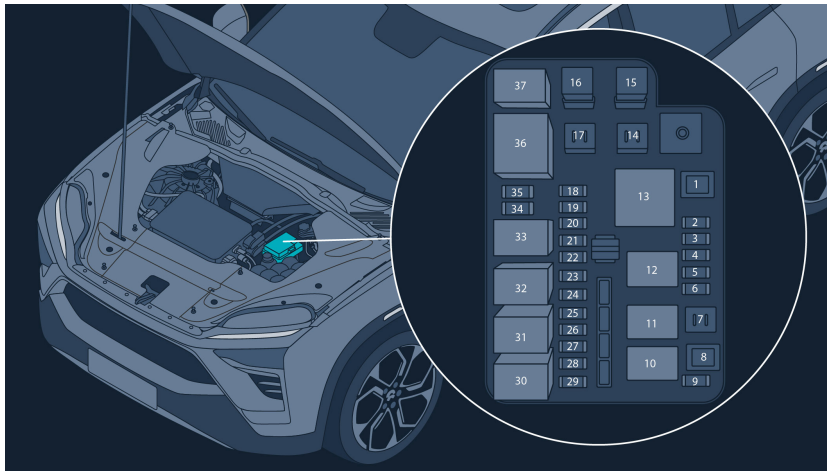
High voltage battery recycling process: The batteries will be recycled and disposed of by NIO or a third party designated by NIO.

## Fuse Replacement

### Underhood Fuse Box

#### Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



No.	Rated value	Description
1	60A	UR06 relay power supply fuse
2	10A	High voltage integrated component
3	20A	Washer pump fuse
4	15A	UR05 relay power supply fuse
5	10A	Vehicle communication controller/high voltage charging indicator fuse
6	15A	UR04 relay power supply fuse
7		(Reserved)
8		(Reserved)
9	15A	UR07 relay power supply fuse

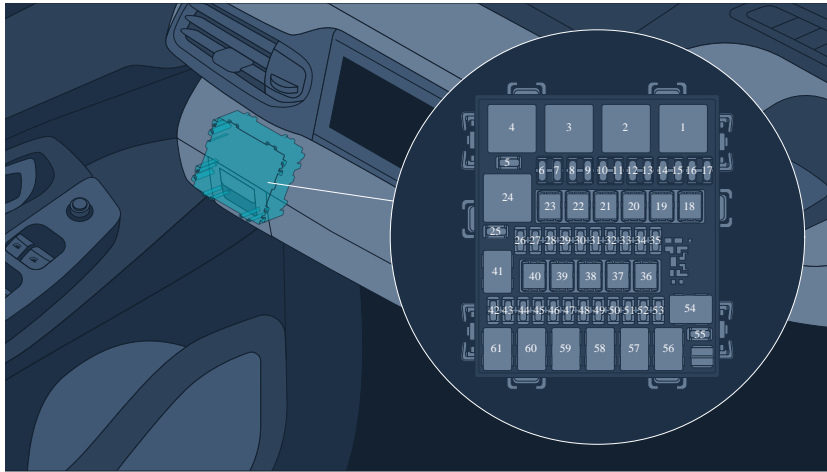
10		Front motor cooling water pump relay
11		Rear motor cooling water pump relay
12		Battery cooling water pump relay
13		Cooling fan relay
14		(Reserved)
15	40A	Brake control module (control unit) fuse
16	40A	Brake control module (motor) fuse
17		(Reserved)
18	15A	Vehicle controller (KL87) fuse
19	10A	Climate control system fuse
20	10A	UR04 coil/UR05 coil/UR06 coil/UR07 coil/fan/brake switch/active grille shutter/high voltage battery pack heating/three-way valve/four-way valve fuse
21	10A	Left high beam fuse
22	10A	Right high beam fuse
23	10A	ADAS main controller power supply 2 fuse
24	15A	UR08 relay power supply fuse
25	10A	Left low beam fuse

26	20A	Battery management system power supply fuse
27	15A	Front power control unit fuse
28	10A	Central gateway controller power supply 2 fuse
29	10A	Right low beam fuse
30		Right low beam relay
31		Left low beam relay
32		Horn relay
33		High beam relay
34	10A	High voltage power distribution box/gear shifter module fuse
35		(Reserved)
36		Main relay
37		(Reserved)

### Instrument Panel Fuse Box

#### Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



No.	Rated value	Description
1		IF02/IF29/IF26 fuse (KL15 power supply) relay
2		(Reserved) relay
3		TR03 relay power supply/ TR06 relay coil/IF01/IF25/ IF27/IF30/IF43/TF01/TF25 fuse (KL15 power supply) relay
4		(Reserved)
5		(Reserved)
6	10A	Brake booster/electric power steering-1 (KL15 power supply) fuse
7	15A	Driver seat heating/venti- lation/lumbar support/ massage module (KL15 power supply) fuse
8	10A	KL15-Trailer
9	10A	Electric parking control- ler/electric power steer- ing-2 (KL15 power supply) fuse
10	10A	IR04 relay (coil)/right front headlight/rear-view



		mirror assembly/left front headlight (KL15 power supply) fuse
11	15A	Passenger side heating/ventilation/lumbar support/massage module (KL15 power supply) fuse
12	10A	Airbag controller (KL15 power supply) fuse
13	10A	Radar/parking radar controller/central gateway controller (KL15 power supply) fuse
14	15A	Steering wheel heating (KL15 power supply) fuse
15	10A	Climate control module/front body controller/central gateway controller/vehicle controller/ECALL/DAB box/DAB adaptor (KL15 power supply)/side mirror memory feedback + fuse
16		(Reserved)
17		(Reserved)
18	30A	Electric parking controller 1 (KL30 power supply)
19		(Reserved)
20	25A	IR02 relay power supply fuse
21		(Reserved)
22	25A	Front body controller (front wipers) KL30 power supply fuse

23	40A	Sunroof/sunshade motor (KL30 power supply) fuse
24		IF28 fuse (KL15 power supply) relay
25		(Reserved)
26	30A	Front body control module 1 fuse
27	30A	Front body control module 2 fuse
28	10A	Digital instrument cluster/HUD/NOMI/eCall (KL30 power supply) fuse
29	10A	Climate control module/rear climate control panel and fragrance system (KL30 power supply) fuse
30	10A	Body control module (safe box lock power supply) /DAB box fuse
31	10A	Steering column power supply fuse
32	10A	Brake switch (KL30 power supply) fuse
33	10A	Driver's side door control switch/rain sensor/wireless charging power supply (models with air suspension) fuse
34	20A	Infotainment system console (KL30 power supply) 1 fuse
35	10A	Body controller (KL30 power supply) fuse

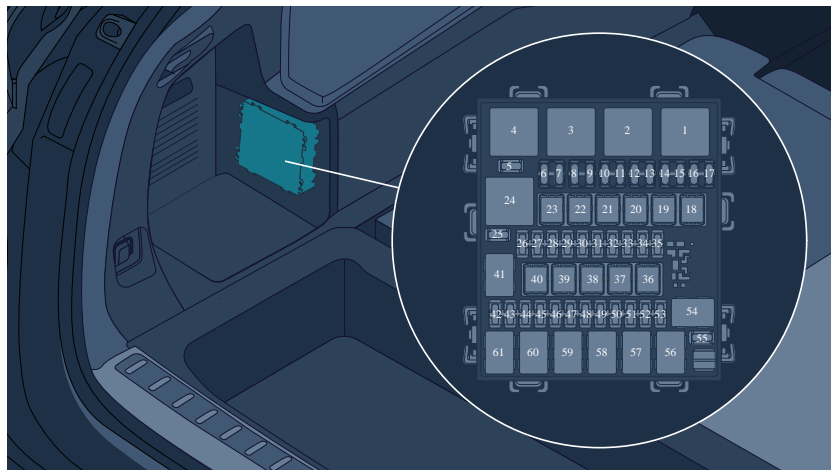
36	30A	IR04 relay switch power supply fuse
37		(Reserved)
38		(Reserved)
39	60A	Brake booster fuse
40	30A	Electric parking controller 2 (KL30 power supply)
41		Left side mirror left adjustment relay
42	10A	Climate control module (KL30 power supply) fuse
43	20A	Battery management unit (KL30 power supply) fuse
44	10A	Center display (KL30 power supply) fuse
45	10A	Electronic gear selector module (KL30 power supply) fuse
46	30A	Front body control module (central lock) fuse
47	10A	IR06/IR08/IR09 relay fuse
48	10A	ADAS main controller (KL30 power supply) fuse
49	10A	Diagnosis interface (KL30 power supply) fuse
50	10A	IR10/IR11/IR12 relay fuse
51	10A	IR07/IR13 relay fuse
52	15A	IR05 power supply fuse

53	10A	Central gateway controller (KL30 power supply) fuse
54		Side mirror unfold relay
55		(Reserved)
56		Left side mirror right/upward adjustment relay
57		Left side mirror downward adjustment relay
58		Right side mirror left adjustment relay
59		Right side mirror right/upward adjustment relay
60		Right side mirror downward adjustment relay
61		Side mirror fold relay

### Trunk Fuse Box

#### Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



No.	Rated value	Description
1		TF02/TF27 fuse power supply relay
2		KL15 power supply
3		Rear blower (KL30 power supply) relay
4		Front blower (KL30 power supply) relay
5		(Reserved)
6	10A	Wheel arch light/ ambient lighting/safe box limit switch fuse
7	15A	Left front and rear exterior door handle deploy + / retract - fuse
8	15A	Left front and rear exterior door handle deploy - / retract + fuse
9	15A	Right front and rear exterior door handle deploy - /retract + fuse
10	10A	Liftgate taillight/body taillight/sunroof switch/ vanity mirror light/ puddle light fuse
11	10A	USB hub (KL15 power supply) fuse
12	15A	Right front and rear exterior door handle deploy + /retract - fuse
13	10A	Right side mirror heating fuse

14	10A	Left side mirror heating fuse
15	10A	Second row seat USB fuse
16		(Reserved)
17		(Reserved)
18	25A	Left front/right rear window regulator motor (KL30 power supply) fuse
19	60A	TR01 relay contactor power supply fuse
20	30A	Passenger seat adjustment fuse
21	30A	Driver seat adjustment fuse
22	40A	Air suspension controller (air pump) KL30 power supply fuse
23	30A	Liftgate control module (motor) fuse
24		TF42/TF43 fuse power supply
25		(Reserved)
26	20A	Air suspension controller (KL30 power supply) fuse
27	15A	CC2 charge port motor power supply fuse
28	15A	TR07 relay power supply fuse
29	10A	Rear inverter (KL30 power supply) fuse

30	10A	Liftgate control module fuse
31	20A	Infotainment system console (KL30 power supply) 2 fuse
32	30A	TR04 relay switch power supply fuse
33	30A	TR05 relay switch power supply fuse
34	30A	Rear body controller power supply 1 fuse
35	10A	Kick sensor/TR04 coil/TR05 coil/TR08 coil/TR09 coil/TR11 coil fuse
36	30A	Amplifier control unit fuse
37	25A	TR03 relay power supply fuse
38	40A	TR11 relay contactor power supply fuse
39	30A	TR02 relay contactor power supply fuse
40	25A	Right-front/left-rear window regulator motor (KL30) fuse
41		Second row seat heating relay
42	10A	Vehicle controller power supply fuse
43	15A	Rear wiper fuse
44	15A	TR10 relay/TR12 relay fuse

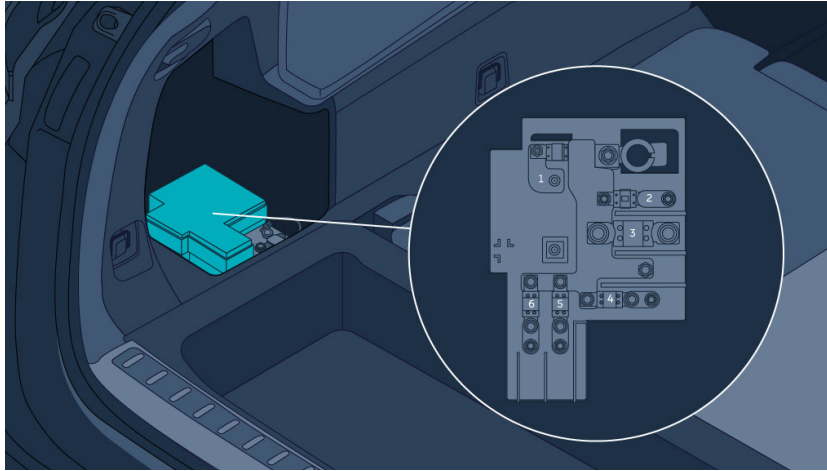
45	30A	Rear body controller power supply 2 fuse
46	25A	TR06 relay contactor power supply fuse
47	25A	TR08 relay contactor power supply fuse
48	25A	TR09 relay contactor power supply fuse
49		(Reserved)
50	10A	TR13 relay fuse
51	20A	Trailer control module power1
52	20A	Trailer control module power2
53		(Reserved)
54		TF29/TF28 fuse power supply
55		(Reserved)
56		TF26 fuse/TF30 fuse/ front 12V power socket power supply
57		Rear 12V power socket
58		Second row left seat easy entry relay
59		Rear defogger relay
60		Second row right seat easy entry relay
61		Liftgate lock relay



## Rear Pre-Fuse Box

### Caution

Do not use fuses with a nominal current higher than the rated current. Only replace the blown fuse with a fuse of the same nominal current and size.



No.	Rated value	Description
1	30A	Pyrotechnic safety switch power supply
2	125A	Electric power steering gear power supply
3	300A	DC/DC converter power supply
4	200A	Trunk fuse box power supply
5	125A	Instrument panel electrical box power supply
6	125A	Underhood electrical box power supply

## Vehicle Cleaning and Maintaining

### Cleaning and Maintaining the Exterior

Regular cleaning and waxing can protect the vehicle exterior from damage from the external environment. The frequency of cleaning and waxing depends on the frequency of use, parking conditions (whether the vehicle is parked in a garage, under a tree, or in direct sunlight), and weather conditions.

Bird droppings, insect residues, tree resins, industrial emissions, tar spots, cinders, and other deposits on the body and roof will cause damage to the paint. Such corrosion intensifies at high temperatures and in strong sunlight. Therefore, a weekly cleaning may be necessary. Wet the stains with sufficient water and then remove them.

### Warning

Do not wash the vehicle when it is in charging.

### Caution

Please use specialized cleaners or conditioners when washing or waxing the vehicle. Pay attention to the expiry date before use and keep out of reach of children.

### Manual Cleaning

When cleaning the vehicle manually, use sufficient water to wet the vehicle exterior and rinse away as many stains as possible. Use a soft sponge, cloth, or soft brush to carefully clean the vehicle from top to bottom. Use cleaners to remove stubborn stains. When the sponge or cloth gets too dirty, replace it. After cleaning the vehicle, rinse it thoroughly with clean water and wipe it with a towel. After salt spreading in winter, clean the underside of the vehicle thoroughly.

In order to protect the environment, please clean the vehicle on a specialized cleaning platform. If such equipment is not available, please choose a proper place to clean the vehicle.

### Note

- Do not wash the vehicle under direct sunlight as this may cause damage to the paint.

- When washing the vehicle with a water hose in cold weather, do not spray water directly on the door handles, charge ports, doors and sunroof. Otherwise, these moving parts may freeze in place.
- Do not use rough sponges or corrosive cleaners which may damage the paint.
- Do not use water hotter than 60°C.
- Do not use a dry cloth or sponge to clean the headlights. Clean them with water or car shampoo instead.

### ***Automatic Cleaning***

The vehicle can be cleaned in an automatic car wash, but the structure, filter, and the type of cleaners and conditioners of the car wash equipment will affect the exterior paint. If the body paint looks dull or scratched after a car wash, please inform the car wash operator immediately. If necessary, the car wash equipment should be replaced.

Before using an automatic car wash, the windows and sunroof should be closed, the auto wiper feature disabled, and the side mirrors folded. At the same time, the car wash operator should be notified that the vehicle is equipped with roof racks and a radio antenna.

### **Caution**

Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, enter the settings page from the left side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > N**.

### ***High Pressure Cleaning***

When using a pressure washer, be sure to follow the operating instructions and maintain a sufficient distance from soft materials (such as rubber hoses or sound insulation materials).

Do not use round beam nozzles or rotary nozzles. Tires must not be cleaned with round beam nozzles. Even if used from a distance and for a short time, such a nozzle may cause damage to the tires.

Do not use a high pressure cleaner to clean the vehicle certification label.

### ***Polishing and Waxing***

High-quality wax protects the vehicle paint from environmental damage and even prevents minor scratches. When water drops no longer roll off smoothly from

the clean body paint, use a layer of high-quality hard car wax on the body paint. If the vehicle is cleaned regularly with cleaners, we recommend you apply hard wax at least twice a year to protect the body paint.

Polishing is only necessary when the body paint surface has lost its gloss and cannot be restored by waxing. Do not polish plastic parts or parts with matte finish.

### ***Wiper Blades***

Wash wiper blades with lukewarm car shampoo. Do not use alcohol or cleaners that contain petroleum products.

### ***Windows and Side Mirrors***

Use glass cleaners to regularly clean the inside and outside of all windows.

Clean the inside of the rear windshield with a soft cloth by wiping transversely. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaners to avoid damaging the heating element.

Clean the side mirrors with car shampoo. Do not use abrasive cleaners to avoid damaging the mirrors.

### ***Plastic Parts***

Clean the plastic parts with common cleaning methods. For stubborn stains, only use specialized solvent-free plastic cleaners to avoid corrosion.

### ***Chrome Parts***

You can clean the chrome parts with a wet cloth first and then wipe them with a soft dry cloth. For a better effect, use chrome conditioners to clean the chrome parts. When using chrome conditioners, be sure to apply the products completely and evenly. Do not clean or wipe the chrome parts in dusty or sandy environments.

### ***Wheels***

To keep the aluminum alloy wheels in good condition, the wheels require regular maintenance. We recommend you clean them thoroughly once every two weeks to prevent abrasive particles, dirt, or salt particles from attaching to and corroding the wheels. After cleaning, treat the aluminum alloy wheels with specialized acid-free and alkali-free cleaners. Apply hard wax on the wheels once every three months. If the protective paint layer is damaged due to impact, such as from a stone, be sure to retouch the paint immediately. Do not use paint polish or other polishing materials.

Serious stains on the wheels can cause imbalance of the wheels. This will result in wheel vibrations, which will be transmitted to the steering wheel. In some cases, this can cause premature wear on the steering mechanism. Therefore, it is necessary to regularly clean stains on the wheels.

### ***Underbody Protection***

The underbody of the vehicle is specially treated to protect against chemical and mechanical damage. However, damage to the protective layer during driving is inevitable. We recommend check the underbody and the protective layer before winter and in spring on a regular basis and repair it when necessary.

### ***Parking Radars***

Be careful not to contaminate or damage the sensors on the front/rear bumpers during maintenance.

### ***Sunroof***

After using the sunroof in a heavily polluted area for a period of time, please check the sunroof and have it maintained regularly. Fully open the sunroof glass panel and check for any impurities or dirt in the drainage trays of the rails of both sides. You can use a clean soft cloth or brush to gently wipe away any impurities or dirt in the drainage trays of the sunroof rails and add an appropriate amount of lubricant if necessary.

Tilt the sunroof and clean any impurities or dirt in the drainage trays of the rails at the rear part of the sunroof. We recommend you check for and remove any impurities or dirt in the sunroof rails once a month to avoid jamming the drainage holes, which can result in leaks.

If you park your vehicle under trees, please regularly check for and remove any foreign matter on the roof to avoid objects from entering the sunroof rails, jamming the drainage holes, and causing leaks.

### **Cleaning and Maintaining the Interior**

Regularly clean the interior with cleaners or conditioners to maintain the interior appearance. Before using any cleaners, vacuum the interior first.

#### **Note**

- Some dyes (such as from dark-washed jeans or sheepskin clothing) may stain the interior materials. When this happens, clean the stained surface as soon as possible.

- Do not use strong solvents such as cleaning fluids, petrol or petroleum solvents which may damage the interior materials.
- Do not spray cleaners directly on electronic buttons, switches or parts. Wipe stains with a soft cloth dampened with cleaning fluid.
- Sharp objects may damage the fabric interior.

### ***Fabric Interior***

Only use specialized cleaners, dry foam, and a soft brush to clean the fabric materials on the doors, rear trunk, roof, and other areas.

### ***Leather Interior***

You can use a slightly wet cotton or woolen cloth, or a cleaning cloth to clean common dirt on the leather interior. You can use a cloth dipped in mild car shampoo to clean stubborn oil stains. Make sure that the leather material is not fully wet and prevent water from seeping through the stitching. Any remaining water on the leather surface should be quickly wiped off with a soft dry cloth. Stains from ballpoint pens, ink, lipsticks, shoe polish, and other substances on leather surfaces should be removed as soon as possible. We recommend you use a 100% pure polyurethane foam sponge for cleaning Nappa leather.

We recommend limiting the use of leather care products as much as possible, no more than twice a year for light-colored leather and no more than once a year for dark-colored leather.

### **Note**





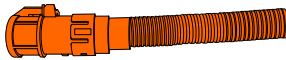

- Do not use cleaning solvents to clean the instrument panel, air bag covers, or leather interior.
- To avoid leather fading, do not leave the vehicle under strong sunlight for long periods of time. If you need to park the vehicle under strong sunlight, please cover all leather material.
- Sharp objects on clothes such as zips, rivets, and sharp buckles may leave marks or dents on the leather.
- Avoid drinking coffee or using sunscreen in vehicles with a Nappa leather interior. Remove coffee or sunscreen stains on Nappa leather with mild soapy water as soon as possible.
- Do not spray formaldehyde cleaners on leather. Doing so may leave white spots on genuine leather which are difficult to remove.

***Seat Belts***

Only use mild car shampoo to clean the seat belts. Do not remove the seat belts from the vehicle. Allow the belts to dry fully while extended.

## ES8 Information

### Warning Sign Information

No.	Name	Warning Sign	Description
1	High voltage electricity warning sign		Danger! Do not touch high voltage components.
2	High voltage components warning sign 1		High voltage components. Danger! Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment to avoid electric shock.
3	High voltage components warning sign 2		High voltage components. Danger! Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment to avoid electric shock and burns.
4	High voltage battery pack warning sign		Cautions for using the high voltage battery pack
5	High voltage cable warning sign		High voltage components are connected with orange high voltage harnesses. Do not touch high voltage components without wearing protective equipment.
6	Mutual compatibility identifiers used for charging the car		Mutual compatibility identifiers to guide you charging the car are found in the car's charging port. When selecting the charging gun, you must make sure the identi-



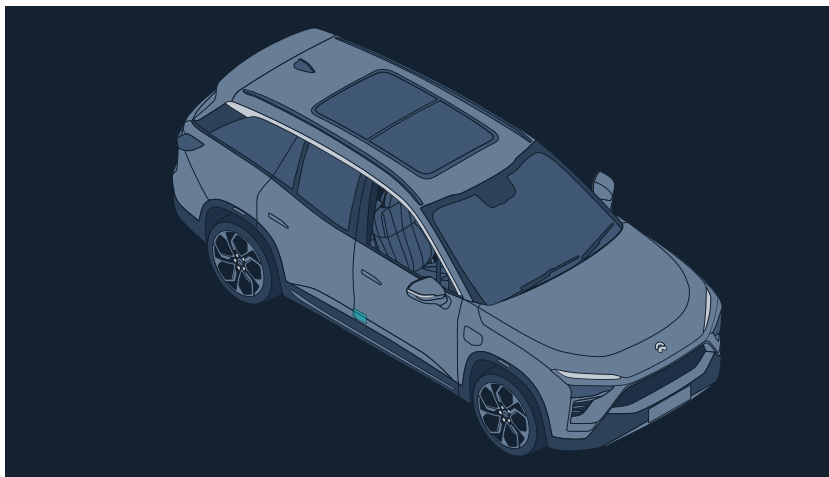
			<p>fier on the charging gun equals one of the identifiers found in the car's charging port, either C, K or L. Voltage ranges related to those identifiers are as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• C: AC <math>\leq</math> 480 V</li> <li>• K: DC 50 V to 500 V</li> <li>• L: DC 200 V to 920 V</li> </ul>
--	--	--	--

## 仪表指示灯

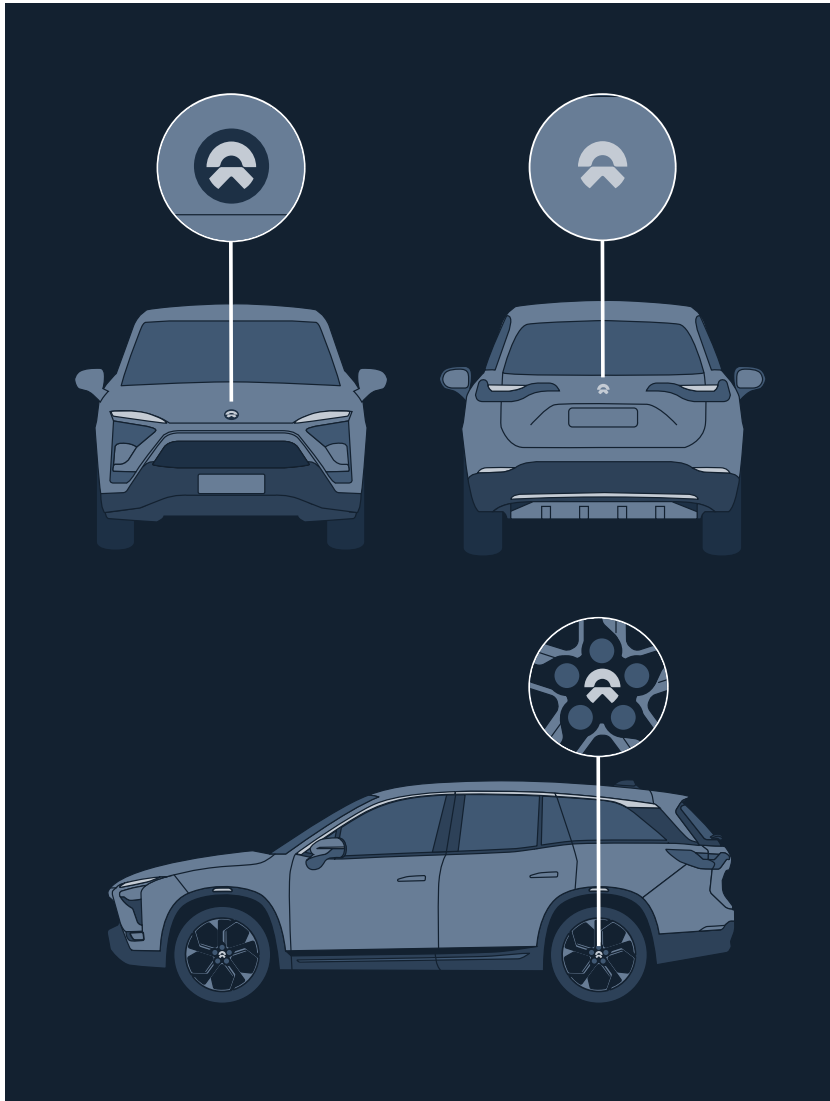
### ES8 Information

Vehicle manufacturer	NIO
Service hotline	Refer to the contact table
NIO official website	Refer to the contact table

You can find the vehicle certification label in the lower area of the right B-pillar.

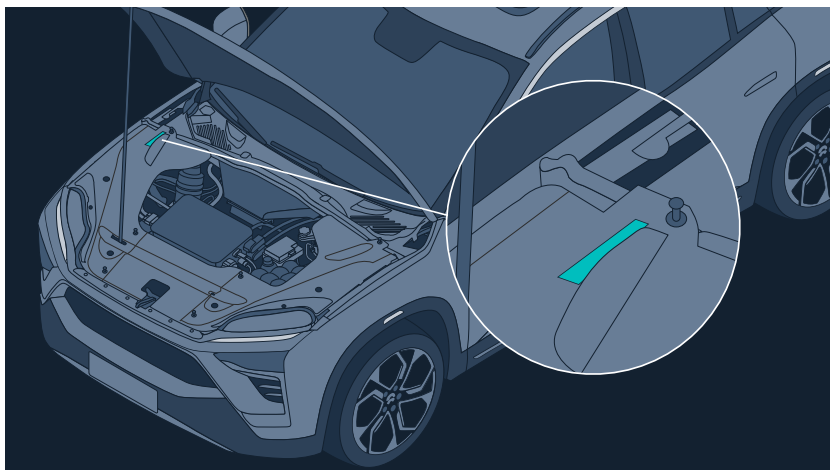


Vehicle brand label:

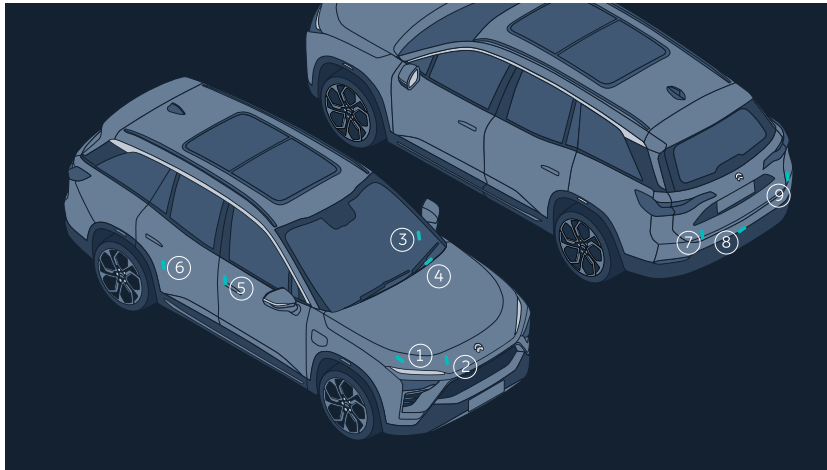


### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is stamped on the right front shock tower bracket.



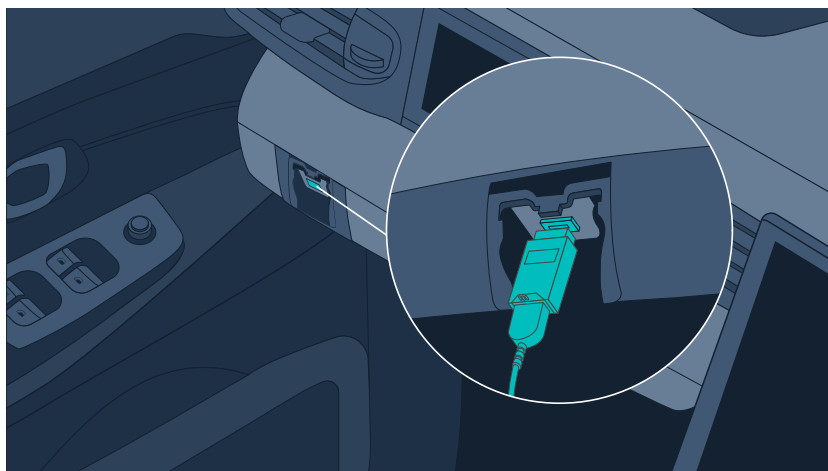
You can also find the VIN in the following locations:



1. Underside of the hood
2. Upper area at the end of the front driving motor
3. Left side of the instrument panel beam
4. Lower-left area of the front windshield
5. Lower area of the right B-pillar
6. Lower area of the right rear door frame
7. Upper area at the end of the rear motor
8. Upper side of the rear floor
9. Right side of the liftgate

You can also read the VIN from diagnostic instruments that pair with the vehicle (safety module diagnosis tool BD2):

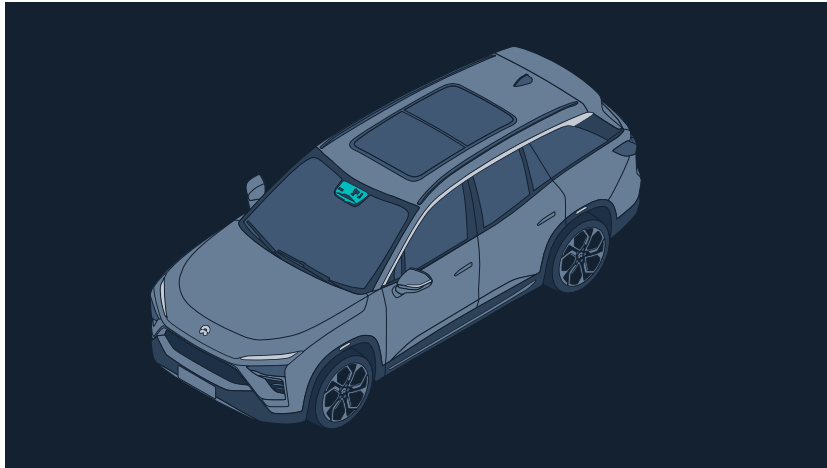
1. Connect the diagnostic instrument to the diagnostic interface of the vehicle and turn it on.



2. Start the diagnostic program and log in to the diagnostic instrument interface.

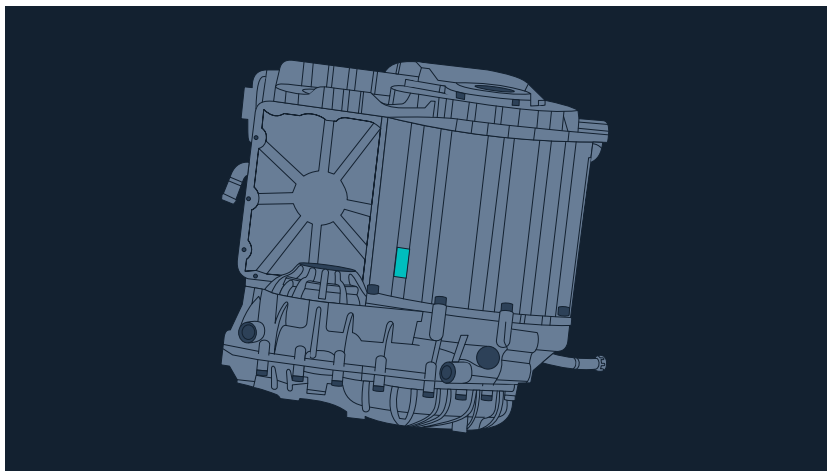
3. The diagnostic instrument automatically reads and displays the VIN on the interface of the diagnostic instrument.

There is a radio frequency identification device (RFID) at the front windshield of the vehicle.

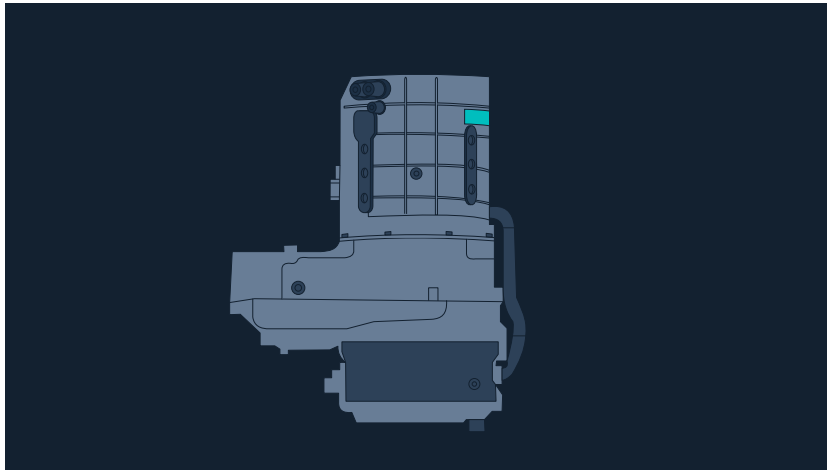


### **Driving Motor Identification Labels**

The front driving motor identification label is located on the lower side of the motor.



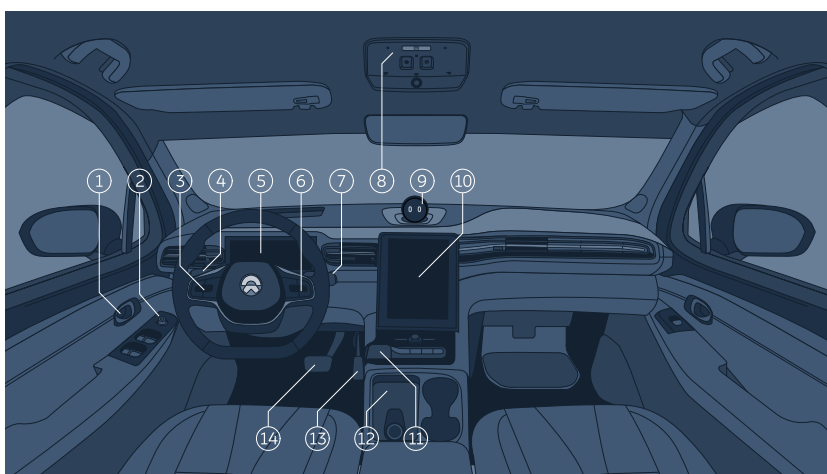
The rear driving motor identification label is located on the lower side of the motor.

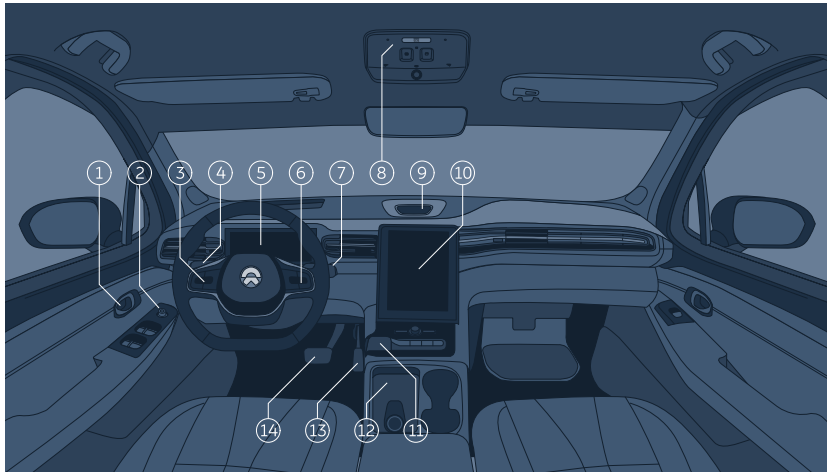


### Recommended Fluids and Capacities

Item	Product	Capacity
Brake Fluid	DOT4	0.61L
Coolant	-40°C OAT (water-ethylene glycol solution containing inhibitor)	15.5L
Refrigerant	R1234yf	1300g
Windshield Washer Fluid	Freezing point<-30°C	3L
Gearbox Oil	Castrol BOT350M3	1.3 liters (front), 1.6 liters (rear)

### Instrument Cluster and Controls





1. Interior door handles

2. Control panel for side mirrors and windows

3. Steering wheel buttons - left

4. Light control lever for turn signals and headlights

5. Digital instrument cluster

6. Steering wheel buttons - right

7. Wiper and washer control lever

8. Control panel for emergency calls, sunroof and sunshade, and reading lights

9. NOMI

10. Center display

11. Gear selector and center console control panel

12. Wireless charging pad

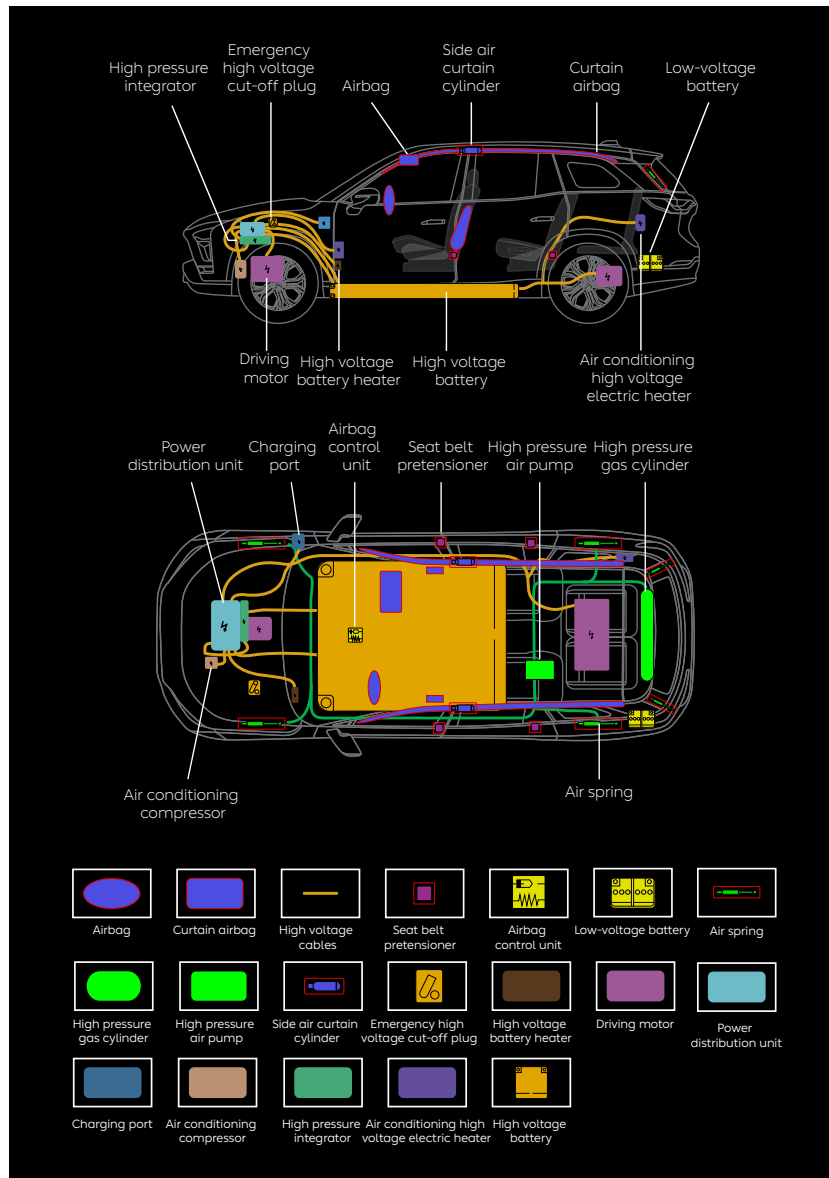
13. Accelerator pedal

14. Brake pedal

## Powertrain Information

### Warning

All high voltage connectors and high voltage cables are typically colored orange for easy identification. People who are not professional technicians should not disassemble or replace high voltage components to avoid the risk of electric shock.



### **High Voltage Battery**

ES8 is equipped with a floor-mounted 350 volt lithium-ion high voltage battery. Never breach the high voltage battery when lifting from under the vehicle. When using rescue tools, pay special attention to ensure that you do not breach the floor pan.

#### **Danger**

Before servicing or disassembling a high voltage component, you must power off the system. Make sure both the emergency switch and the 12V battery are cut off. After powering off the vehicle, put the vehicle standstill for at least five minutes before carrying out any operation.

#### **Danger**

*As the voltage of the battery pack bus reaches about 400V, in the process of removing and installing high-voltage components, it is necessary to obtain the qualification of low-voltage electrician; the operator must wear high-voltage insulating gloves and take other insulation protective measures without carrying any metal objects.*

### **Driving Motor**

The driving system powers the vehicle by converting the direct current from the high voltage battery into mechanical torque which is distributed to the four wheels. In addition, it can also recover kinetic energy to charge the high voltage battery and operate in reverse to turn the drive shafts backward. The driving system consists of two driving motors. The front motor is mounted on the front subframe, and the rear motor is mounted on the rear subframe.

### **Low voltage battery**

The 12 voltage battery operates the SRS, airbags, windows, door locks, touchscreen, and interior and exterior lights. The high voltage system charges the 12 voltage battery, and the 12 voltage battery supplies power to the high voltage contactors, allowing high voltage current to flow into and out of the high voltage battery.

The 12V battery is located behind the trim panel on the left of the trunk.

### **Airbags**

The airbag system includes front airbags and side airbags. The front airbags include front head airbags that are located in the steering wheel and on the



headliner of the passenger side. The side airbags include front side airbags (located on the outside of the front seats) and curtain airbags (located on the headliner from the A pillar to C pillar on both sides). The locations of the airbags are labeled "AIRBAG".

### ***SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS***

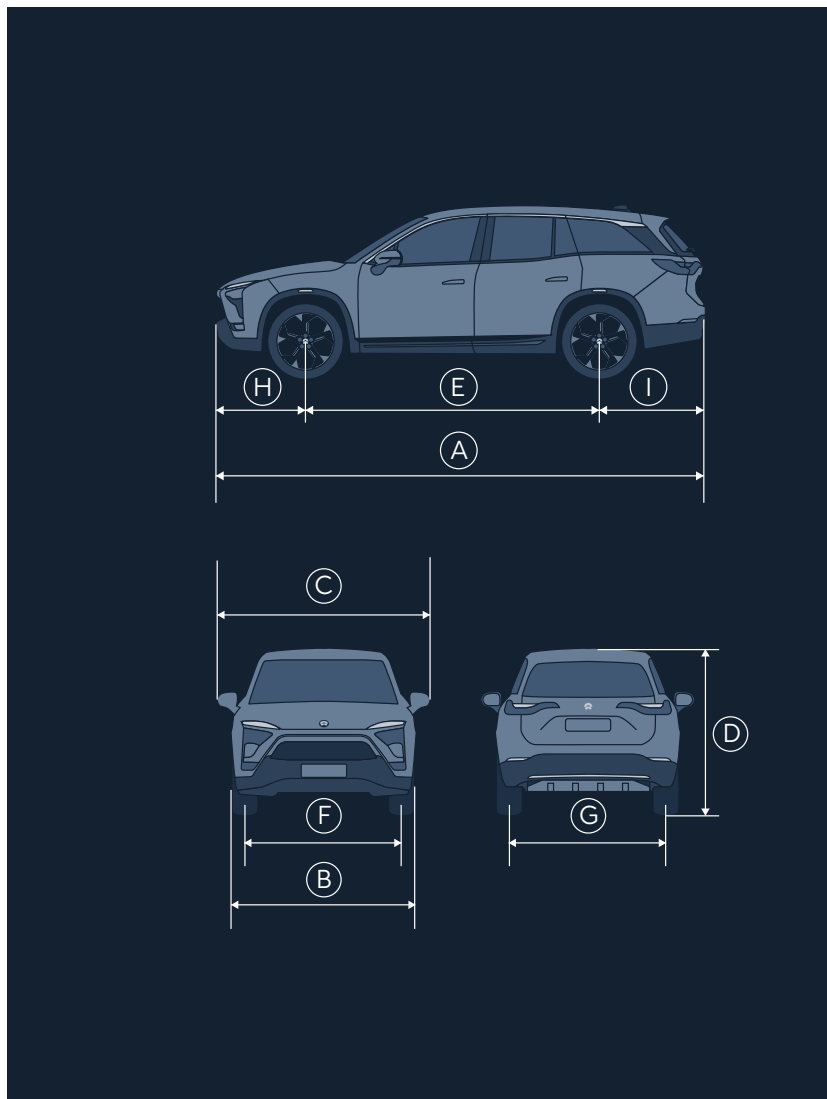
Both front and second row outboard seats as well as third row seats feature seat belts with pretensioners and force limiters (dual-stage for the front seats). The pretensioners rapidly retract and latch seat belts the instant a severe collision occurs, thereby providing increased protection to occupants. The force limiter can then prevent the seat belt from exerting too much force on the occupant and minimize belt-inflicted injury.

### ***Air Suspension High Pressure Tank***

The high-pressure air tank is mounted at the rear of the vehicle body using a rubber-wrapped bracket. The air tank generates sufficient air for the suspension system. Nominal pressure: 0-15 bar The ride height is adjusted by adjusting the air pressure of the system.

## ES8 Technical Parameters

### Vehicle Dimensions



Item	Value
Length A (mm)	5022
Width B (mm) (excluding side mirrors)	1962
Width C (mm) (including side mirrors)	2268
Height D (mm)	1756
Wheel Base E (mm)	3010
Front Track F (mm)	1668
Rear Track G (mm)	1672

Front Overhang H (mm)	922
Rear Overhang I (mm)	1090
Ground Clearance (mm)	161
Cargo Volume (L)	310
Cargo Volume - with third-row seats folded down (L)	871
Cargo Volume - with second- and third-row seats folded down (L)	1861 1901
Seats	7 6

### Mass Parameters

Item	Value
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (kg)	3,099
Gross Front Axle Weight Rating (kg)	1295
Gross Rear Axle Weight Rating (kg)	1804
Technically Permissible maximum towable mass of the towing vehicle In case of center-axle trailer(kg)	1500
Technically permissible maximum laden mass of the combination (kg)	4500
Maximum mass of unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Technically permissible maximum mass at the coupling point (kg): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• of a towing vehicle</li> <li>• of a center-axle trailer</li> </ul>	75
Trailer brake connections	Mechanical

Version	MRO [kg]	GVW [kg]	Payload when full occupancy [kg]	Payload when 2 people [kg]	Payload when 4 people [kg]	Coupling point mass [kg]	Roof capacity [kg]
75kwh-6 Seat	2460	3,099	264	564	414	75	75
75kwh-7 Seat	2475	3,099	174	549	399	75	75
100kwh-6 Seat	2480	3,099	244	544	394	75	75
100kwh-7 Seat	2495	3,099	154	529	379	75	75

The chart is calculated according to 75kg per person as the standard recommended, luggage is also calculated as 75kg.

### Motor Specifications

Item	Value	
	Front	Rear
Type	Permanent Magnet Alternating Current Motor	Alternating Current Induction Motor
Model	TZ160S001	YS240S001
Rated power/torque (kW/N·m)	60/130	60/120
Peak power/torque (kW/N·m)	160/305	240/420

### Wheel and Tire Specifications

Item	Value
Specifications	255/55R19
	255/50R20

	265/45R21
Tire Pressure (bar)	2.6(unladen) 2.8 (full loaded rear tire)
Camber Angle	-0.5±0.5°
Total Front Camber Angle	0±0.5°
Front Toe Angle	0.3±0.2°
Front Caster Angle	4.7±0.5°
Total Front Caster Angle	0±0.5°
Rear Camber Angle	-1.3±0.5°
Total Rear Camber Angle	0±0.5°
Total Rear Toe Angle	0.2±0.2°
Approach Angle	0±0.2°
Steering Wheel Angle	0±3.5°
Front Track Height (mm)	472±5
Rear Track Height (mm)	474±5
Lug Nut Torque (N·m)	220

Note: Wheel specifications are subject to the vehicle configurations.

### Braking and Suspension Specifications

Item	Value	
	Front	Rear
Brake Pad Thickness (mm)	2~9	2~11
Brake Disc Thickness (mm)	32~30	20~18

Brake Pedal Free-Play (mm)	15~25
Nominal Pressure of Air Suspension Reservoir (bar)	15

### High Voltage Battery Parameters

Item		100 kwh	75 kwh
High Voltage Battery Cell	Type	Nickel-Cobalt-Manganese Lithium-Ion Battery Cell	Nickel-Cobalt-Manganese Lithium-Ion / Lithium Iron Phosphate Battery Cell
	Nominal Voltage (V)	3.73	3.73/3.22
	Nominal Capacity (Ah)	276	237/192
High Voltage Battery	Nominal Voltage (V)	358	386
	Nominal Capacity (Ah)	280	195
	Length*Width*Height (mm)	2,062x1,539x185.6	2,062x1,539x185.6
	Number of Cells	96	118
	Weight (kg)	555	535

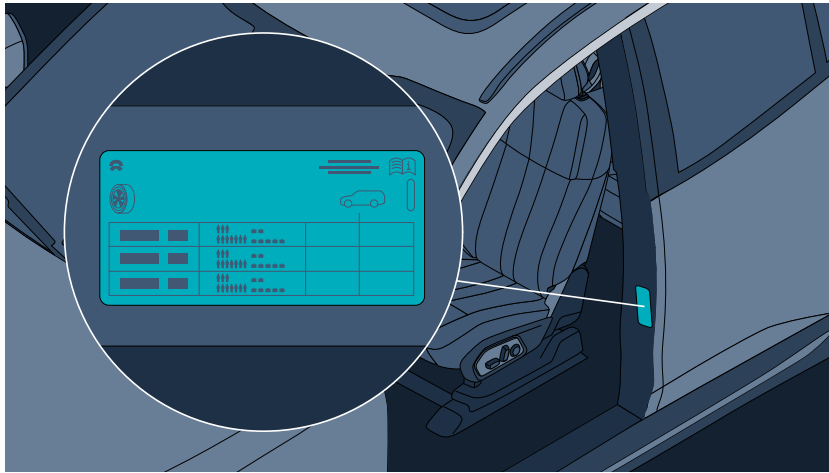
## Tire Information

### Tire Inflation

#### Warning

Using underinflated or overinflated tires will increase the risk of accident and injury.

To ensure your safety while driving, please check the tire pressure regularly. When checking the tire pressure, make sure the tires are cold (the tire temperature is the same as the ambient temperature or the vehicle has not been moved for three hours after driving). The recommended cold tire inflation pressure label is located on the frame of the driver's side door. If the tire is hot, the tire pressure is generally 0.3 bar higher than that of a cold tire.



Overinflation will affect your comfort while driving, damage tires, especially on rough roads, and cause blowouts in severe cases. This may lead to unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Underinflation will cause uneven tire wear, affect the vehicle handling, and result in abnormal energy consumption.

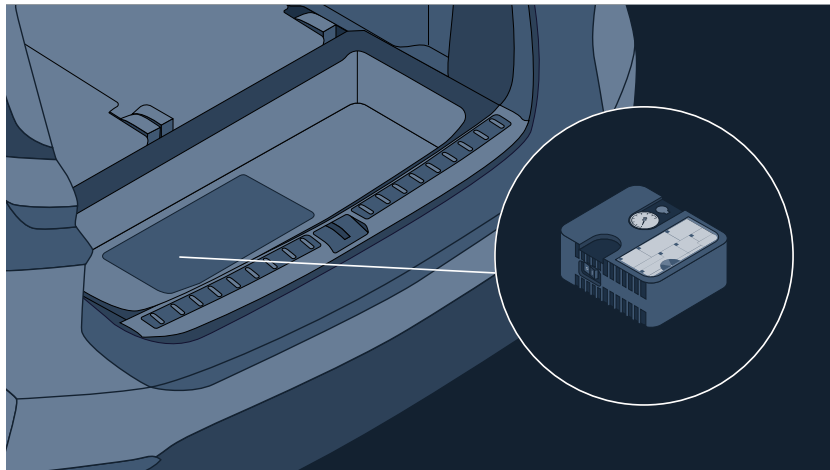
#### Note

The 21-inch tires are self-sealing tires. When the width of a tire puncture is less than five millimeters and the tire pressure shown on the center display is normal, the vehicle can still be driven under 120 km/h. If the tire is severely punctured or damaged, please contact NIO immediately for tire inspection or replacement.

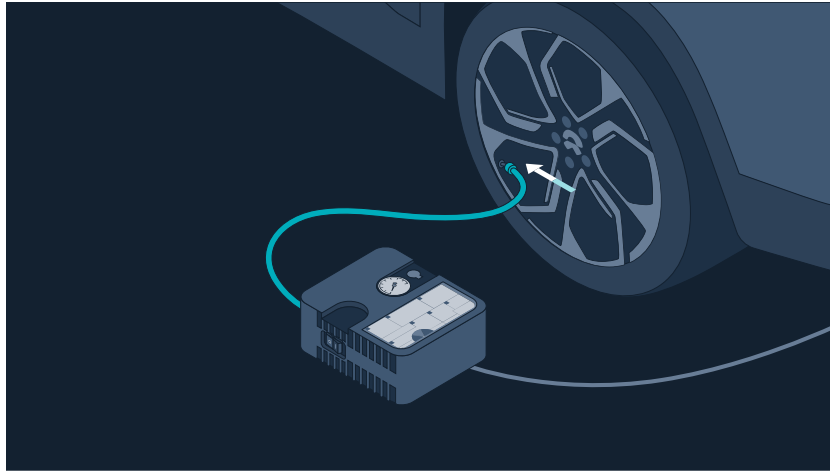
You can inflate the tires with the tire inflator in the emergency kit. To inflate a flat tire:

1. Park the vehicle on a safe road, put on the reflective vest and set up the warning triangle properly.
2. Open the emergency kit cover in the trunk to take out the tire inflator.

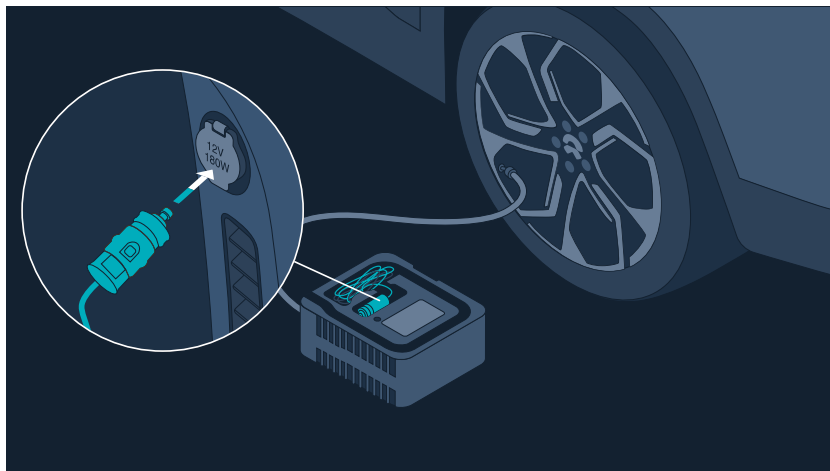




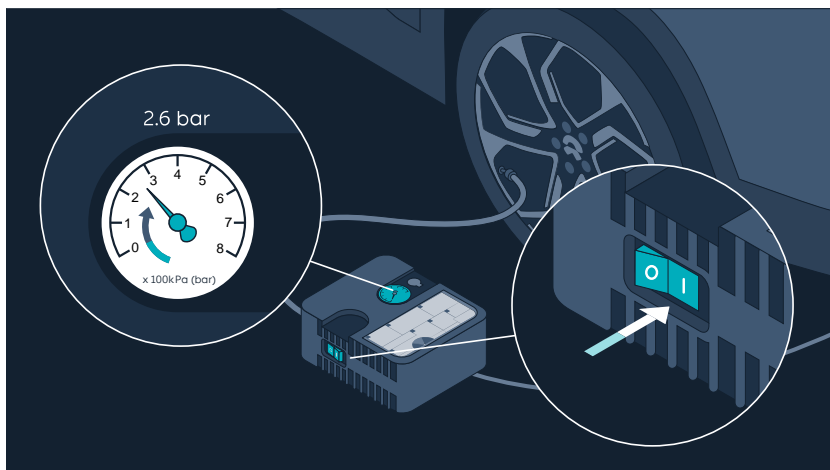
3. Connect the inflation hose on the side of the tire inflator to the valve stem on the tire.



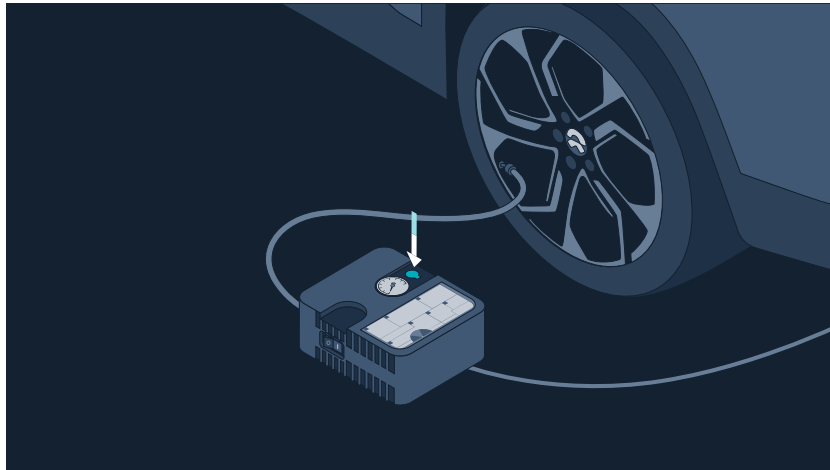
4. Connect the power plug of the tire inflator to the 12V power socket in the vehicle.



5. Make sure the vehicle is powered on, turn on the power switch of the tire inflator, and inflate the tire. When the tire pressure reaches 2.6 bar, turn off the tire inflator manually and disconnect it from the power socket.






- If the tire is overinflated, press the pressure relief valve on the inflater.



- After completing inflation, disconnect the inflater from the vehicle and stow it in the emergency kit.

### Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The ES8 is equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System. If one or more tires have an abnormal pressure or temperature, the instrument cluster will light up the tire pressure indicator  and display the position of the faulty tire. It will also remind you to stop driving and check the tire as soon as possible, and inflate or deflate the tire to the normal range.

If a tire has an abnormal tire pressure or is deflating rapidly, the instrument cluster will light up the tire pressure indicator  and the system will emit a beep to remind you to check the tire pressure. If the system functions abnormally or the tire temperature is above the rated range, the indicator will flash for 75 seconds and then stay solid , and the system will emit a beep to remind you. In this case, park the car in a safe place as soon as possible and contact NIO.

You can check the current tire pressures by touching **My ES8 > Health** on the center display. If the current tire pressure is shown as "--", this means the system hasn't obtained a valid tire pressure reading, and you can check the tire pressure again after driving over 25 km/h for more than 10 minutes. If a tire is underinflated, over temperature, or has any other abnormality detected by the system, the center display will light up the position of the faulty tire and display the detailed fault information.

The tire pressure monitoring system is based on the tire temperature and atmospheric temperature. In some circumstances, you may need to inflate the tire to a slightly higher pressure in order to clear the low tire pressure information.

### **Tire Chains**

The ES8 does not come with tire chains, but you can purchase them yourself. Please pay attention to the following points when using tire chains:

- Improper tire chains can damage the tires, wheels, and brake system of the vehicle. Please carefully check the specifications of the original equipment (OE) tires and the relevant instructions provided by the tire chain manufacturer. Only the 20-inch original equipment (OE) tires are suitable for tire chains. Tire chains are not recommended on other tires. We recommend Maggigroup TRAK SUV 4X4 and Konig K-Summit XXL size K67 for ES8.
- Do not drive over 50 km/h or the speed limit specified by the tire chain manufacturer (whichever is lower).
- Drive carefully and slowly to avoid bumps, potholes, sharp turns, or wheel lock-up, which may impair the functionality of or cause damage to the vehicle.
- To avoid tire damage and excessive tread wear, tire chains must be removed when driving on roads without snow.

## Emergency Measures

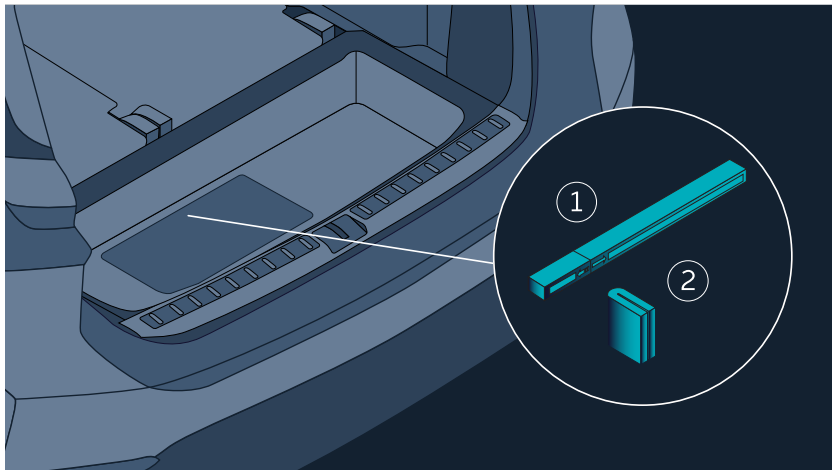
### Setting Up the Warning Triangle

In case of an emergency, please slowly and steadily drive the vehicle to a safe area, press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and shift into PARK. Then, you should turn on the hazard warning lights by pressing the button on the center console to warn other vehicles approaching from behind.



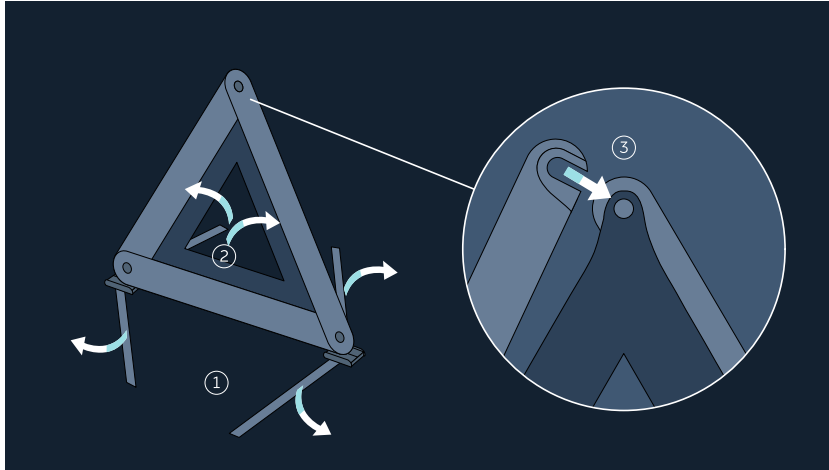
1. PARK button
2. Hazard warning light button

Open the cargo cover inside the trunk and take out the warning triangle and reflective vest from the emergency kit. You should put on the reflective vest first, and then place the warning triangle at around 50 meters to 100 meters behind the vehicle (at least 150 meters behind the vehicle on the highway; add an additional 100 meters at night; 200 meters behind the vehicle in case of rain or fog).



1. Warning triangle
2. Reflective vest

Instructions for setting up the warning triangle:



1. Deploy the bracket under the triangle.
2. Unfold the two sides of the triangle.
3. Fasten the buckle on top of the triangle.

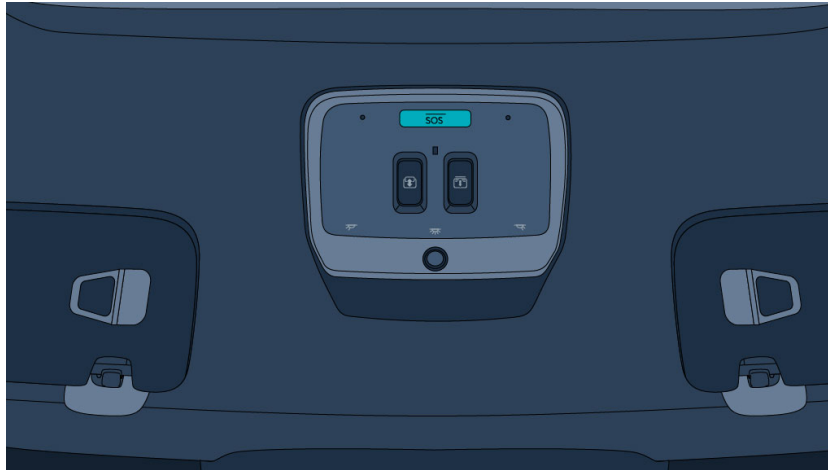
### Contacting NIO

In case of accidents such as collisions, floods, and battery fires, contact NIO immediately after setting up the warning triangle and wait for the rescue team.

### Warning

In the event of a battery fire risk, the vehicle will automatically cut off power and the instrument cluster and center display will display a warning message. Make sure the surrounding area is safe and promptly leave the vehicle to call for help.

- When your vehicle is connected to the Internet, you can press the SOS button on the roof console (press and hold once or press twice) to call for rescue. You can cancel the call within eight seconds. The backlight of the SOS button indicates the status of the emergency call: solid green indicates the emergency call function is normal; flashing green indicates an emergency call is in progress; solid red indicates the emergency call function failed and you must contact NIO immediately.



### Note

When the vehicle is connected to the Internet, it will automatically make an emergency call if an accident occurs and the airbag inflates.

## ***The 112-Based E-Call In-Vehicle System***

### ***Overview***

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is mandatory for new vehicle models in all EU countries. In the event of a severe accident, the eCall system can connect you to an appropriate PASP (Public Safety Answering Point) via an audio link automatically if the vehicle safety system is triggered, or manually if you press the SOS button on the roof console.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically when the activation level for seatbelt tensioner or airbags is reached in the event of a severe accident. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be activated manually, if needed. To activate the eCall manually, press the SOS button on the roof console for over 250 milliseconds and release the button within 10 seconds. The manual trigger is designed in such a way as to avoid mis-operation. To terminate the calling, press and release the SOS button again within five seconds after it is pressed the first time.

In the event of a critical system malfunction, the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may be impaired. The backlight of the SOS button indicates the status of the emergency call. Solid green indicates the eCall system functions normally; flashing green indicates an emergency call is in progress; flashing red indicates the eCall system has a minor fault but can still be activated; solid red indicates



the eCall system has a major fault and cannot be activated. In this case, you can find the fault notification on the center display, and contact NIO if needed.

### ***Data processing***

The processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is in line with the personal data protection rules stipulated in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, is based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3). The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency call made to the single European emergency number 112 in emergency situations within the meaning of Article 5(2) of Regulation (EU) 2015/758.

### ***Types of data and its recipients***

The 112-based E-Call in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:

- Vehicle Identification Number
- Vehicle type (passenger vehicle)
- Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen)
- Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel. The recent vehicle locations are selected by random so as to ensure that the IVS is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking.
- Estimated number of occupants onboard
- Log file of E-Call activation of the system and its timestamp

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points of the area where the car is located. The data may be shared with other parties such as police stations, fire stations, hospitals limited for emergency aid purpose.

### ***Arrangements for data processing***

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that:

- Data stored in the system is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- The system is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.

- Data stored in the system is automatically and continuously removed.
- The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as to keep the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- The log of activity data in the system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency call and in any case no longer than 13 hours after an emergency call is triggered.

With regard to the arrangements for exercising data subjects' rights as well as the contact service responsible for handling access requests, please kindly contact NIO for support. For contact details, please refer to our Connected Vehicle Privacy Notice or contact details in this manual. NIO GmbH

Data Protection

Montgelasstrasse 14

81679 Munich

Germany

privacy.eu@nio.io

00 8000 999 6699 (EU) / 800 24 789 (Norway)

### **Tire Repair**

#### **Warning**

- Do not drive with a punctured tire, as it may lead to a tire blowout and endanger your safety.
- Tire sealant can irritate the eyes and skin. Keep out of reach of children.

#### **Caution**

- Please check the expiry date marked on the container before using tire sealant.
- If the width of the puncture on a 20-inch tire is below 6 mm, we recommend that you remove the foreign object and repair the tire with tire sealant. If the width of the puncture is over 6 mm or the tire is severely damaged, please safely stop the vehicle and contact NIO immediately for tire replacement.

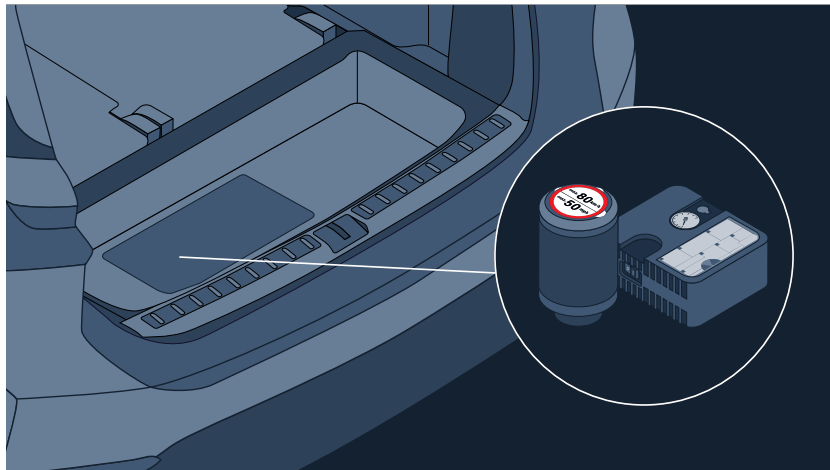
- If the tire is repaired without removing the foreign object, it will cause an abnormal noise while driving and may result in a tire leak over long distances.

### Note

- The 21-inch tires are self-sealing tires. When the width of a tire puncture is less than five millimeters and the tire pressure shown on the center display is normal, the vehicle can still be driven under 120 km/h. Once punctured, the self-sealing tire cannot be used for a long period of time. If the tire is severely punctured or damaged, please contact NIO immediately for tire inspection or replacement.
- Please adjust the puncture to the top of the tire when repairing it.
- Tire sealant can only be used to repair the tread and shoulder areas.

Park the vehicle safely on a flat and solid road as far away from traffic as possible and shift into PARK. After putting on the reflective vest, setting up the warning triangle and turning on the hazard warning lights, you can start repairing 19-inch and 20-inch tires with the tire sealant and tire inflator in the emergency kit:

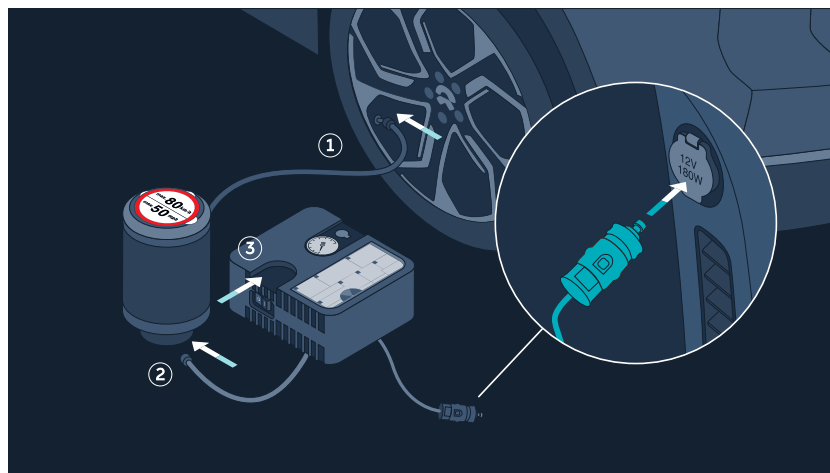
1. Park the vehicle on a safe road and set up the warning triangle in an appropriate location.
2. Open the emergency kit in the trunk and take out the tire sealant canister and the tire inflator.



3. Remove the speed limit label from the tire sealant canister and place it on the steering wheel to remind yourself not to drive over 80 km/h.



4. Connect the tire sealant canister to the wheels, remove the tire valve cap, and connect the tire sealant hose to the valve (1). Take out the inflation hose on the side of the tire inflator and connect it to the tire sealant canister inlet valve (2). Turn the tire sealant canister upside down and slide it into the slot on the tire inflator (3).

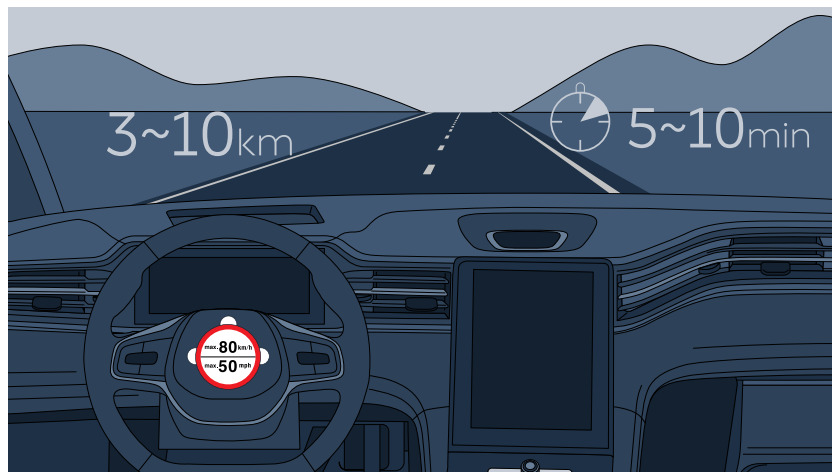
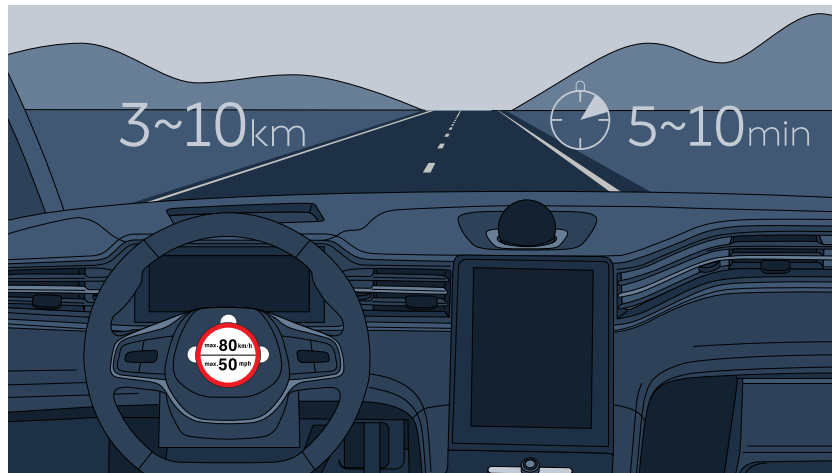


5. Connect the power plug of the tire inflator to the 12V power socket in the vehicle.
6. Make sure the vehicle is powered on, turn on the tire inflator and start to inject tire sealant into the tire. Observe the pressure gauge, and turn it off when the pointer reaches  $\geq 2.2$  bar (which will take around five to 10 minutes). Turn off the tire inflator and disconnect the power plug from the 12V power socket.

**Note**

When the tire inflator begins operating, the pressure gauge will initially display a high pressure up to six bar, after which the pressure will drop to a normal range.

7. Remove the inflation hose of the tire inflator from the tire valve and stow it in the emergency kit.
8. Drive the vehicle 3 to 10 km (or about five to ten minutes) at under 80 km/h to evenly spread the tire sealant and plug the puncture.



9. Park the vehicle on a safe road, set up the warning triangle, and check the tire pressure readings on the center display. Continue driving if the tire pressure is  $\geq 2.2$  bar. Inflate the tire to  $\geq 2.2$  bar if the tire is under-inflated and drive the vehicle at a speed no higher than 80 km/h for 3 to 10 km (or around 5 to ten minutes). Check the tire pressure again. If the tire pressure is still below 2.2 bar which means the tire is severely damaged or the tire sealant cannot seal the tire, park the vehicle in a safe place and contact NIO immediately.

**Caution**

- If the tire pressure gauge is unable to reach the designated zone within 12 minutes after repair, the tire is severely damaged. Please stop driving the vehicle, and contact NIO.
- Tire sealant is only a temporary solution for emergencies and the vehicle can be driven for up to 200 kilometers at most. Please take the vehicle to the nearest repair shop for tire repair or replacement.
- After fixing a tire with the tire sealant, please contact NIO to have the tire inflator hose assembly replaced.

**Jump Starting the Vehicle**

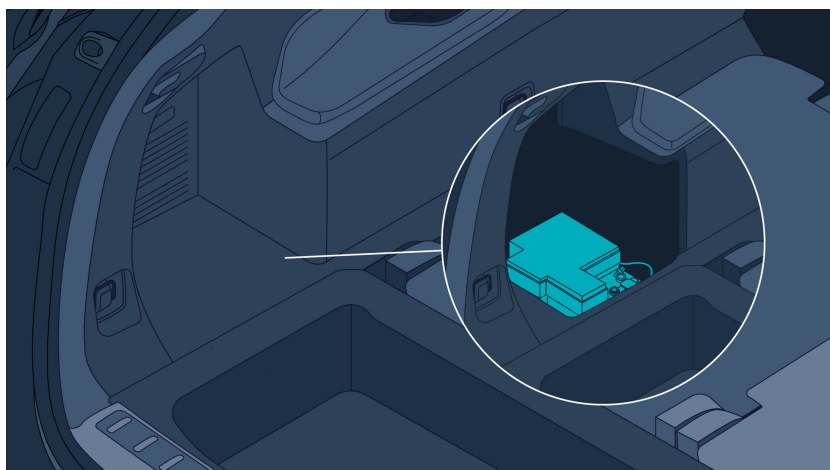
When the vehicle cannot start because the 12V battery is drained, you can jump start the vehicle by connecting the jumper cables to the 12V battery of another vehicle.

**Caution**

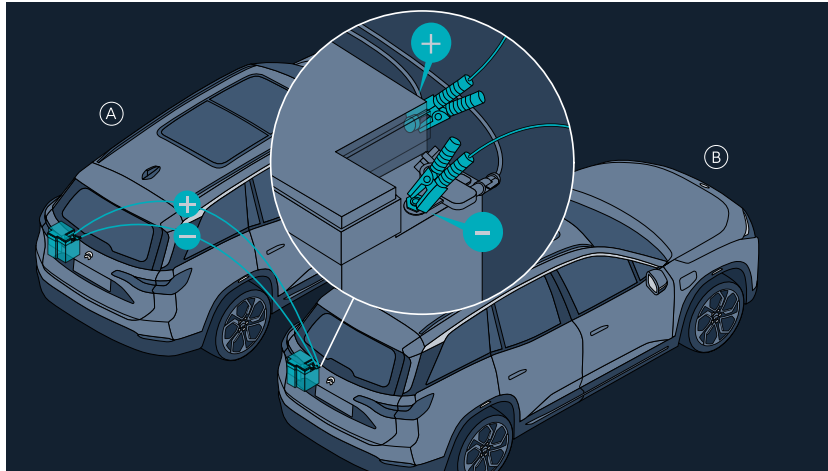
- When jump starting a vehicle, make sure the two vehicles are not in contact with each other. Otherwise, the current generated when the positive terminals of the two vehicles are connected will damage the vehicle.
- Connect the positive terminals first, and then the negative terminals.

To avoid short circuits or other damage, we recommend you observe the following procedure when you jump start the vehicle:

1. Put the vehicle in PARK, cut off the power supply of the 12V battery, make sure the jumper cables are correctly connected to the vehicle electrical system, and remove the cover of the 12V battery on Vehicle A.



2. Connect one end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal on the 12V battery on Vehicle A.



3. Remove the cover of the 12V battery on Vehicle B and connect the other end of the red cable to the positive (+) terminal on the 12V battery of Vehicle B.
4. Connect one end of the black cable to the negative (-) terminal on the 12V battery of Vehicle B.
5. Connect the other end of the black cable to a proper earthing point of the 12V battery on Vehicle A.
6. Start Vehicle B and let it run for a few minutes. Then, start Vehicle A to check whether it can start up normally.
7. After Vehicle A starts up normally, power off Vehicle B, remove the jumper cables in the opposite order they were connected, and stow all equipment.

### Emergency Unlocking From the Outside

When the vehicle cannot be unlocked by conventional methods (such as a smart key fob, keyless entry, NIO app, or NFC), you can use the emergency key to unlock the driver's side door, which will simultaneously unlock all other doors.

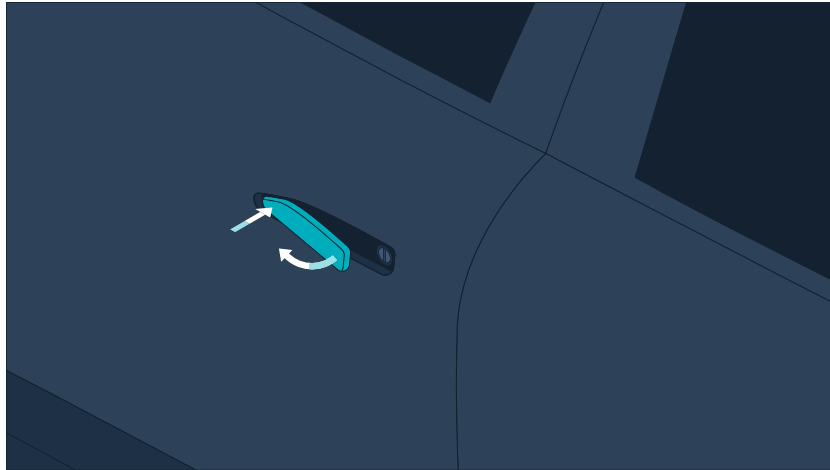
#### Caution

Do not leave the emergency key in your vehicle. Please keep it safe in case of emergency.

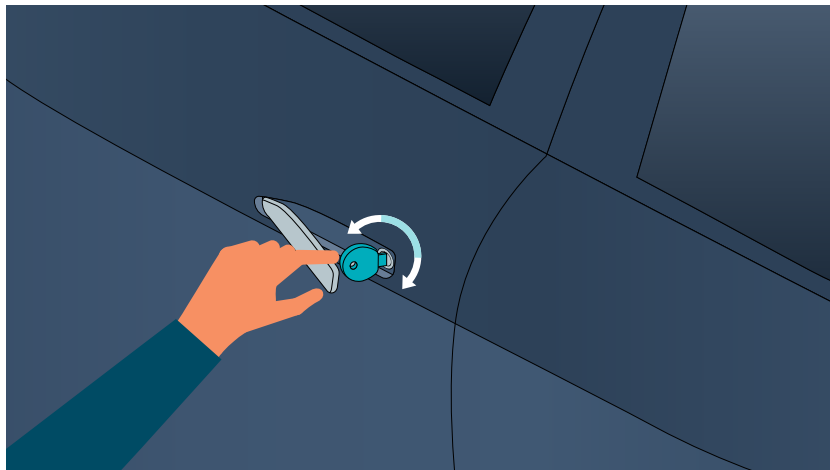
To use the emergency key:

1. Push the front end of the exterior handle on the driver's door.





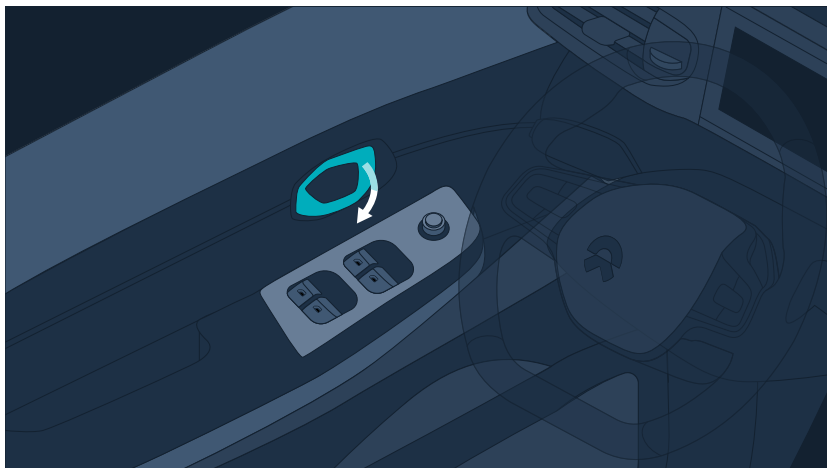
2. Pull the door handle and insert the emergency key into the lock. Rotate the key counterclockwise to lock the driver's door.



3. To lock the driver's door, rotate the key counterclockwise.

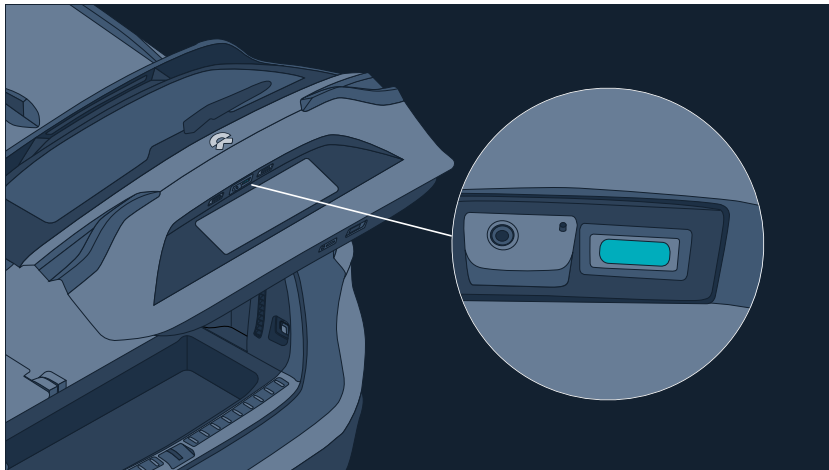
### **Emergency Unlocking From the Inside**

In case of emergency, you can pull the interior door handle twice to open the corresponding door.



**Caution**

- If the 12V battery is drained, you can only unlock the driver's door using the emergency key. Other doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the corresponding interior door handle twice.
- When the Child Lock is on, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside and can only be opened from the outside when the vehicle is unlocked.

**Liftgate Button**

When you are carrying a smart key fob, you can open the liftgate by gently pressing the button on the liftgate handle.

While the liftgate is opening, press and hold the button to automatically save the current liftgate height.

**Caution**

Before opening the liftgate, ensure that it is clear of objects such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the liftgate may suddenly close on its own.

## Roadside Assistance

### Replacing Tires and Wheels

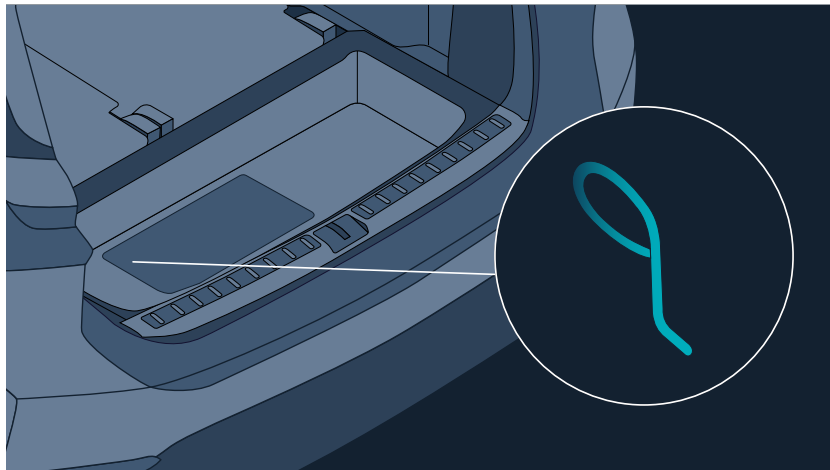
If a tire cannot be repaired with tire sealant due to a severe leak, park the vehicle safely on a flat and solid road as far away from traffic as possible and shift into PARK. Put on the reflective vest, set up the warning triangle, turn on the hazard warning lights, and contact NIO for tire replacement.

### Warning

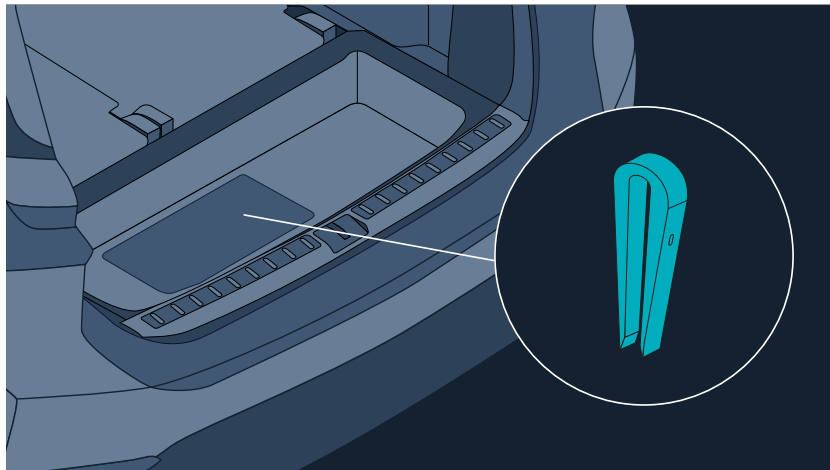
- When replacing a tire, the new tire must comply with the specifications of the original one. Using a tire with different specifications may affect the vehicle's handling and result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Never get underneath the vehicle when it is lifted on a jack as this may cause severe injury or even death.
- Do not lift the vehicle when people are inside.
- Do not place any object above or underneath the jack when it is lifting the vehicle.

Follow the instructions to replace the tire:

1. Prepare a jack and a spare tire of the correct specifications.
2. Place a stopper in front of the tire diagonal to the flat tire to prevent the vehicle from slipping.
3. Enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display and tap **Driving > Jack Mode** to maintain the suspension at the current height and avoid height changes during tire replacement.
4. Remove the wheel hub cap with the removal tool in the emergency kit and then turn the lug wrench counterclockwise to loosen the lug nuts.



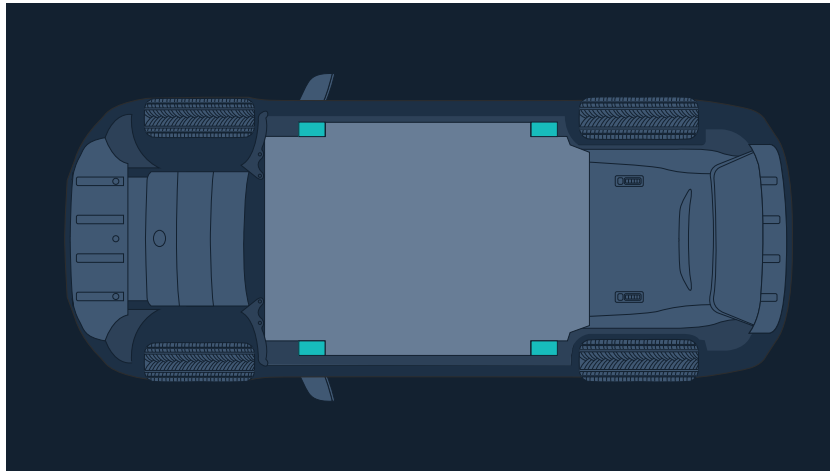
Remove the lug cap with the removal tool in the emergency kit and then turn the lug wrench counterclockwise to loosen the lug nuts.



**Caution**

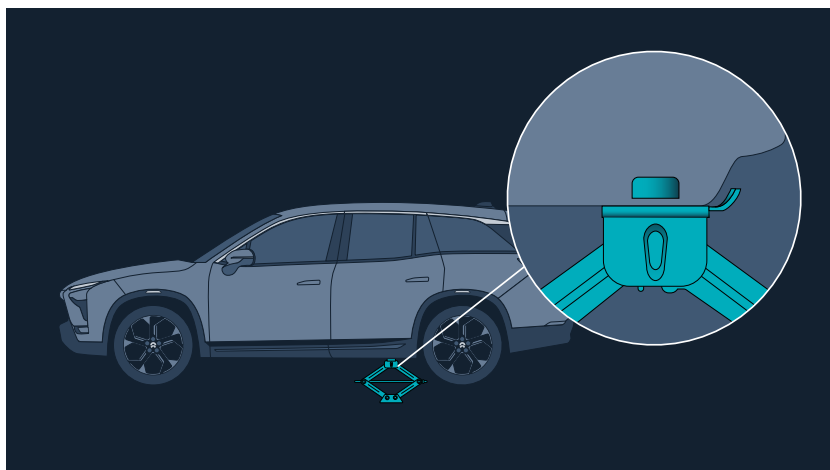
Tire rims have a special protective coating. When removing or installing lug nuts, tires or rims, take reasonable precautions to protect the rim's surface from accidental scratches caused by hard or sharp objects.

5. Position the jack at the correct jacking point.

**Warning**

Make sure the jack is positioned correctly under the jack point. Failure to do so may damage the vehicle, or the vehicle may slip off the jack and cause injury.

6. Jack up the vehicle until the flat tire is sufficiently above the ground. When lifting the vehicle, ensure the jack is properly positioned.



7. Remove the lug nuts and change the flat tire. When mounting the new tire, ensure the lug nuts are aligned with the mounting holes and the metal surface of the rim is in proper contact with the mounting surface.

8. After installing the lug nuts, use the jack to lower the vehicle to the ground and exit the Jack Mode on the center display. Tighten all the lug nuts clockwise with the lug wrench. Then, use a torque wrench to tighten the lug nuts to the specified torque.
9. Check the tire pressure after replacement. If necessary, inflate the tires to the rated range, and then replace the tire valve cap.
10. Properly stow all the tools, the jack, and the flat tire.

### **Personal Protective Equipment**

The powertrain system is powered by the high voltage battery. Severe collisions and impacts may cause electrical leakage or electrolyte leakage. Therefore, rescue operations should be carried out by professionals who must wear personal protective equipment.

### **Warning**

Remove all metal objects (such necklaces and watches) before carrying out any operation. Failure to do so may increase the risk of electric shock.

### ***Electrical Protection***

Wear the following protective equipment to avoid high voltage electric shocks:

- Rubber insulating gloves (over 500V insulation resistance)
- Goggles
- Rubber insulating boots
- Insulated tools

### ***Chemical Protection***

In case of electrolyte leakage, wear the following protective equipment to prevent skin and facial injuries:

- Protective face shield
- Chemical-resistant gloves

### **High Voltage Cutoff**

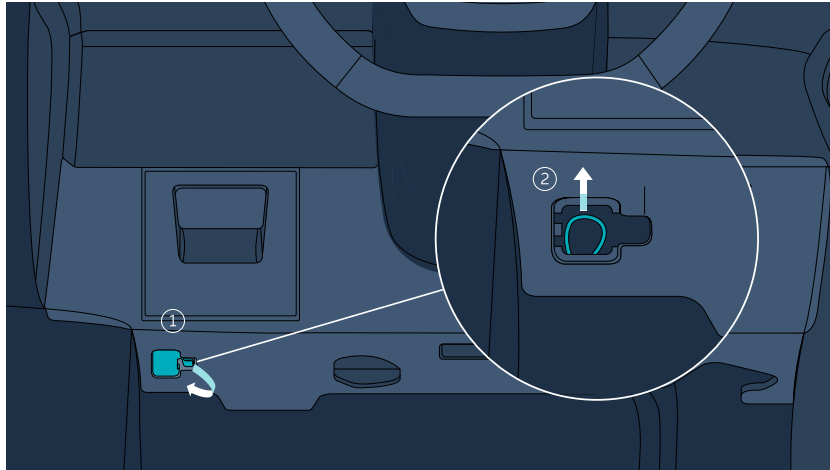
To cut off the high voltage circuit, disconnect the emergency high voltage cutoff plug (located under the hood and near the coolant reservoir), and then



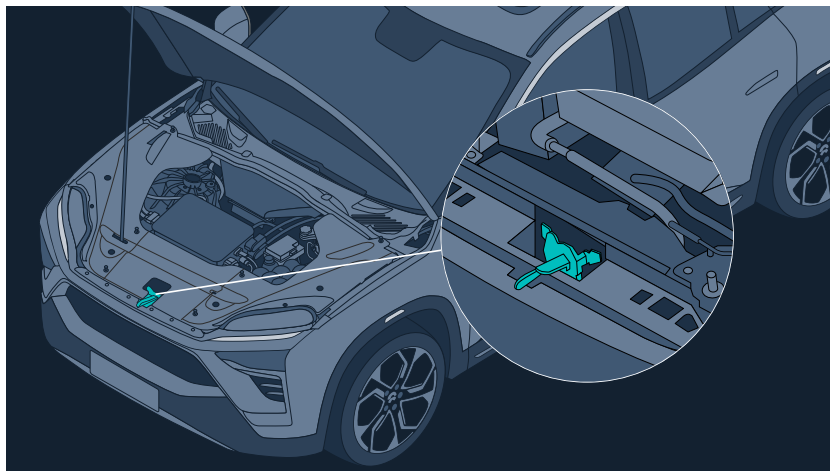
disconnect the cable connected to the negative terminal of the 12V battery (located in the left area of the trunk).

To cut off the high voltage circuit:

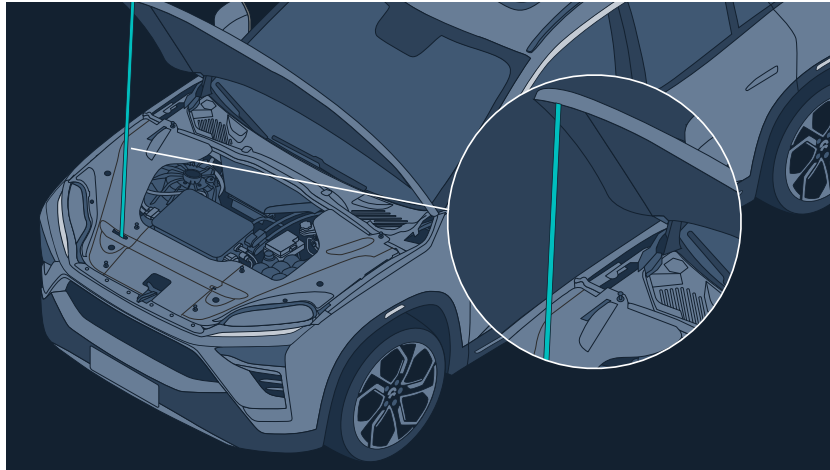
1. Open the hood handle cover in the cabin (Figure 1) and pull the hood release cable to unlatch the hood (Figure 2).



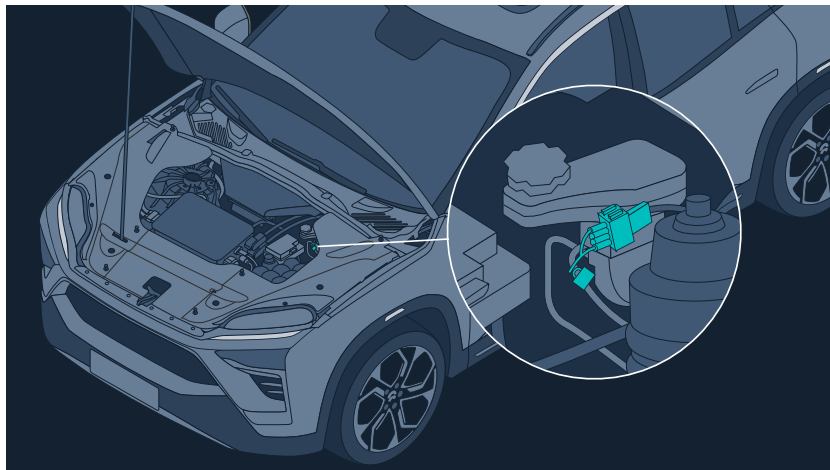
2. Toggle the hook under the hood to release it and lift the hood up.



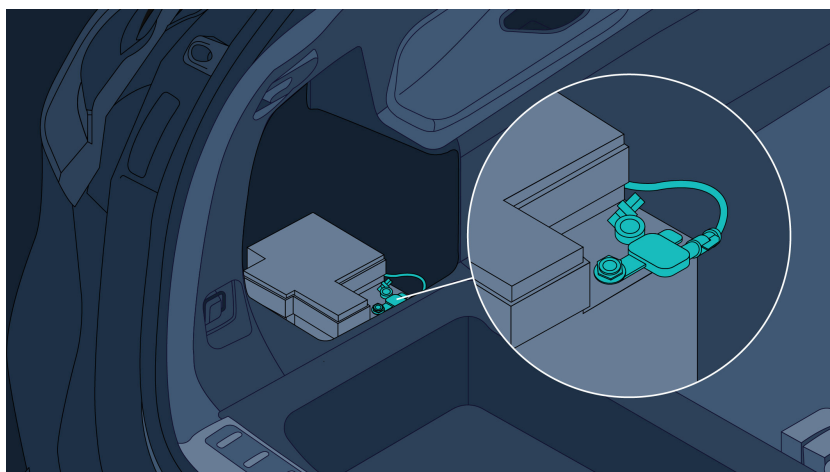
3. Take out the hood prop rod from the clip and position it appropriately to support the hood.



4. Disconnect the emergency high voltage cutoff plug to cut off the high voltage circuit. Remove the plug and stow it appropriately.



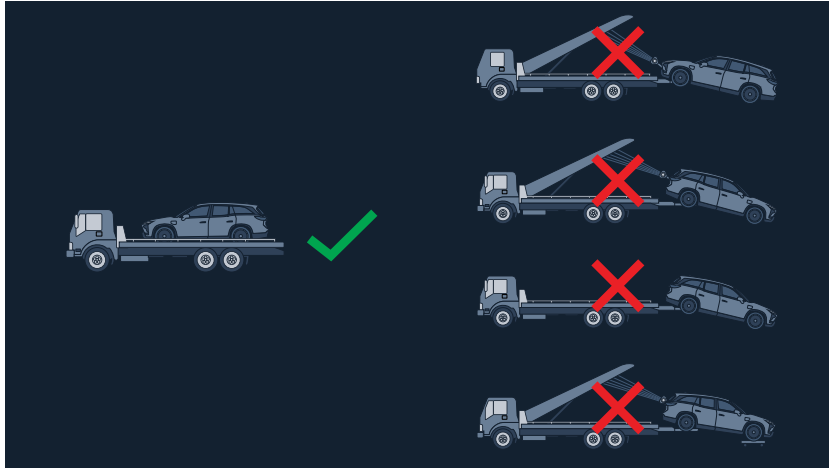
5. Remove the 12V battery cover on the left side of the trunk and disconnect the cable connected to the negative terminal of the battery. Wrap the cable with a protective layer to avoid conduction due to accidental contact.



## Transporting the Vehicle

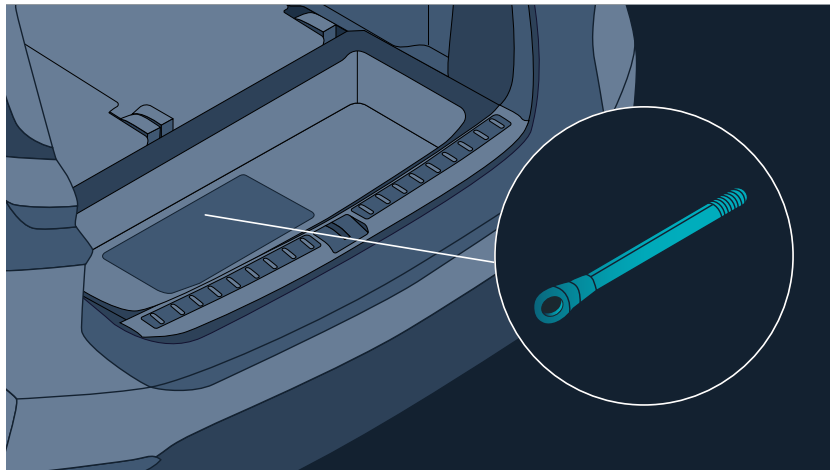
### Caution

Do not tow your vehicle when the tires are touching the ground and do not tow the vehicle directly with tow chains.

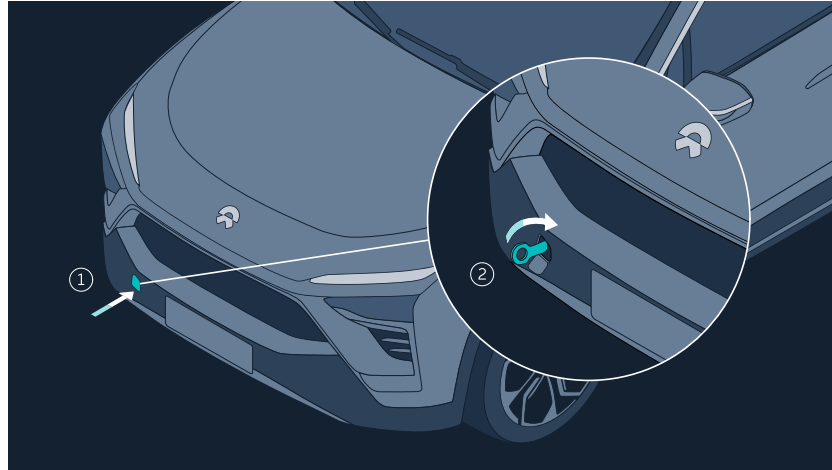


When necessary, transport the vehicle with a flatbed truck.

1. Take out the tow bar from the emergency kit in the trunk.



2. Release the tow bar cover by pressing firmly on the lower end of the cover (Figure 1). Fully insert the tow bar into the opening and rotate it until securely fastened (Figure 2). The tow bar at the rear is installed in the same way as the front.



3. Keep the vehicle in PARK, press the brake pedal, enter the Settings page from the leftmost side of the control bar at the bottom of the center display, and tap **Driving > N**. The vehicle will release the parking brake and enter the N mode (to prevent sliding, use the wheel stopper accordingly).
4. Before towing, power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning lights to ensure that the whole vehicle is locked and no occupant is in the vehicle.
5. Attach the tow chain to the tow bar and slowly tow the vehicle to the flatbed truck.
6. After pulling the vehicle onto the flatbed truck, use the wheel stopper and straps to secure the tires onto the truck.
7. Before transporting the vehicle, exit the N mode on the center display and tap **Driving > Jack Mode** to maintain the suspension at the current ride height and avoid height changes during transportation.

### Caution

- The vehicle can only be towed from the site when there are no safety risks in doing so. If the high voltage battery is deformed, leaking or emitting smoke, address the risk posed by the high voltage battery first.
- Try restarting the 12V battery if Tow/Wash Mode cannot be turned on normally. If the park brake cannot be released, use a tow dolly or a trailer to transport the vehicle a short distance.

- Do not slam on the brake pedal or accelerator pedal when exiting Tow/Wash Mode on the center display.

## Accident Rescue

### Rescuing the Vehicle in Water

#### Caution

When driving, do not submerge the vehicle in deep water for a long period of time. Otherwise, the vehicle's high voltage components may be damaged.

If the vehicle body and chassis are not damaged, there will not be any additional risks of electric shock. However, the rescue of a submerged vehicle should be carried out by professionals who must wear personal protective equipment. During rescue operations, first pull the vehicle out of the water and then cut off the high voltage circuit.

### Rescuing Vehicle Fire

#### Warning

- In the case of a vehicle fire, do not directly touch any part of the vehicle. All rescue operations should be performed by professionals who must wear appropriate personal protective equipment.
- The gas stored in the side curtain airbag cylinder and the high pressure air suspension tank may expand and explode under high temperatures. Please act with caution to avoid injury.

If the vehicle fire doesn't involve the high voltage battery, you can use the fire extinguisher to put out the fire.

If the vehicle fire is caused by the high voltage battery or the high voltage battery is overheated, deformed, cracked, or damaged in the fire, use a large amount of water or foam extinguishing agent mixed with water (F-500 EA is recommended) to cool down the high voltage battery. After the battery is completely cooled down (which may take up to 24 hours), monitor it for one more hour to ensure the battery does not heat up again. Then, drive the vehicle to an open and flat area and set up a 15-meter safety zone to keep people away from the vehicle.

#### Warning

Be aware that a high voltage battery may re-ignite even after it is cooled down. Particular attention should be paid when transporting the battery.

## Rescue With Battery Leak

### Warning

If leakage from a high voltage battery is caused due to an impact, the rescue should be performed by professionals who must wear protective face shields and chemical-resistant gloves. Never make direct contact with the fluids.

When the high voltage battery leaks, it may generate heat or even cause a fire. Cool down the high voltage battery first and then clean up the fluids.

- If the leak is not severe, use a liquid absorbing pad to clean up the fluids and then place the used pad in a closed container or use a professional incineration process to dispose of the fluids.
- If the leak is severe, dispose of the fluids following the disposal guidelines for hazardous chemical waste. Pour calcium gluconate solution over the leaked fluids and use gas collection and control devices to dispose of leaked gases.

### Caution

If any fluids accidentally get on the skin, remove the contaminated clothes, and rinse the skin with soap under running water for 15 minutes until all chemical residues are removed. Seek medical attention immediately if the irritation or discomfort doesn't improve.

## Vehicle Extrication

### Warning

When professional rescuers perform cutting operations, they must use appropriate tools such as a hydraulic cutter and wear appropriate personal protective equipment to avoid serious injury.

The vehicle pillars use aluminum castings to better protect the occupants in case of an impact. Use appropriate tools to cut the pillars during rescue. Do not cut any high temperature or high voltage areas on the vehicle, such as airbag components and high voltage components, as indicated by the red areas below.



